



UPGRADE SPECIALIST IN ANOTHER WORLD

BOOK 06

Endless Sea Of Clouds

EPUB CREATION BY LISA HAYES

Upgrade Specialist in Another World

(异界之装备强化专家)

by

Endless Sea Of Clouds

(茫茫云海)

Synopsis

Just as a gamer found an overpowered skill book called ‘Item Upgrade’ in the hottest virtual reality role-playing game on Earth, something happened to the game’s system, causing his soul to leave his body and go to another dimension. Common sense dictates that he would be born anew then become the greatest overlord of this world by making use of his advanced knowledge. Not in this case! He was already dead. Only some fragments of his soul and that skill book managed to get into that dimension and merge with an ordinary common youngster called Bai Yunfei.

This was the enormous Tianhun continent, where humans could be said to have no limits. There was a group of humans here who could cultivate the power of their own souls then control their bodies, the natural elements and even other people’s souls with that power! These special beings were called — soul cultivators. Come witness how the several fragments of the dead inter-dimensional traveler’s soul and that skill book, which was not governed by the laws of this plane, were going to help Bai Yunfei become a legendary soul cultivator and craftsman!

Copyright

All rights reserved.

English Translation by Deceptioning @ [Wuxiaworld](#)

ePub conversion by Lisa Hayes @ [Hasseno Blog](#)

This is a free eBook. You are free to give it away (in unmodified form) to whomever you wish.

No part of this eBook may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the author.

This book is a work of fiction. Names, characters, places, and incidents either are products of the author's imagination or are used fictitiously. Any resemblance to actual persons, living or dead, events, or locales is entirely coincidental.

Chapter 501: Retreat (Fourth)

Yao Tong's sword came to a stop just a brief three inches away from Bai Yunfei's head. The Cataclysmic Seal had stopped it!

Now that the sword was stopped, Bai Yunfei brought his right hand upwards to knock the golden sword away from his forehead. When the sword was knocked away, Bai Yunfei struck with his Fire-tipped Spear!

Yao Tong twisted to the side, evading the spear thrust with his strange foot and body movements. The spear barely managed to graze past his waist, but not enough to cause any damage.

He took advantage of the spear failing to land its mark to get closer to the spear. Taking a half step closer to Bai Yunfei, Yao Tong's sword hand twisted a good a hundred and thirty degrees to bring his sword down onto Bai Yunfei's neck!

In response, Bai Yunfei evaded the attack with the Flash Steps to retreat so that the sword missed his chin by just inches. Retreating another meter, Bai Yunfei stepped forward again to strike out with his spear!

His unpredictable action had caught Yao Tong off guard, but not enough to get injured. He had failed to account for Bai Yunfei being able to dodge so fast, but as the spear grew close to his chest, Yao Tong stepped back and had his left hand come up in front of his chest. In the next moment, a golden shield appeared in it, protecting his front.

This wasn't a shield created from elemental energy, but a soul skill of his!

The golden shield looked almost real with the runes and lines on its surface. Even when the spear tip touched the shield, there was a loud metallic gong!

But the spear wasn't an easy item to block! The tip of the spear

embedded itself into the shield for a brief moment, and then....

“Boom!!”

The golden shield immediately collapsed as the explosion effect of the spear was activated, and the burst of fire trapped Yao Tong in it!

Yao Tong’s surprised stare was the first he shown since the start of the battle. The spear’s explosion effect had been tremendously large, and the shockwave was strong enough to slam into his body and bring his blood a degree hotter almost.

Because the elemental fire around him prevented him from retreating, Yao Tong knew something strange was happening. Looking up, he saw Bai Yunfei in the air with his right fist raised, and a blade of fire ten meters long coming down at him!

Alarmed, Yao Tong raised his longsword up and transmitted his soulforce into it, turning the golden light from the sword into solid form to block the Flame Winged Dagger.

“Boom!!”

Once again, Yao Tong was engulfed in a fireball, but there was a fan-shaped beam of energy that shot through the fire to try and strike down Bai Yunfei.

“It’s you!!”

Yao Tong’s surprised voice called out from the fire. From the fires, the eyes of Yao Tong stared in shock at Bai Yunfei.

The fire explosion and the Flame Winged Dagger. He remembered seeing these moves used on him before!

It was a very long time ago outside Stonegroove City, the very same person that surprised him long ago!

At that time, Bai Yunfei had only been a trifling Soul Sprite. He was nothing like the Soul Exalt standing in front of him today, thus why Yao Tong was so surprised!

But Bai Yunfei wouldn't give him any time to reminisce about the old times. Taking advantage of his shock, Bai Yunfei threw three Burstfire Daggers at him.

Yao Tong blocked the three daggers, blocking even the explosions that accompanied them. But when he peered over his sword, Yao Tong saw a fireball twenty meters large come at him!

"Hmph!" He sneered. Chopping downwards, a golden beam of energy shot forth from the sword to cut the fireball in half, allowing the two sides to sail harmlessly by him.

But the moment the fireballs exploded on the ground, a single 'giant stone' came flying through at him!

The Cataclysmic Seal!

Not willing to block this one, Yao Tong moved to the side. But as if responding with his movements, the Cataclysmic Seal swelled in size as it flew towards him!

Again, Yao Tong was surprised. Narrowing his eyes, he lifted his left hand in front of him. Golden light swarmed his entire body, and then his aura....began to increase! From a late-stage Soul Exalt to a peak late-stage Soul Exalt!

A beam of golden light shot into the air—it was Yao Tong, flying into the air fast enough to dodge the Cataclysmic Seal.

Bai Yunfei sucked in a sharp breath of air—the enemy had a technique to boost his strength as well!

Watching as Yao Tong flew into the sky like a shining star, Bai Yunfei narrowed his eyes.

Biting his lip, he forced his aura to start to increase as well!

Berserk Mode!

Now as strong as a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, Bai Yunfei's eyes burned brightly. Kicking off against the ground with such force that a crater was formed, he shot into the skies after Yao Tong!

There was a beam of golden light, and then a beam of fire as they clashed against each other in the skies!

.....

On the ground, Xiao Qi and Xiao Lan were both currently hard at work fighting against the golden swift.

The golden swift was basically a never stopping beam of golden light. Flying left and right, it was impossible to see its body clearly, and even with Xiao Qi's crowd tactics, it was unable to hit the other bird. Only with its Wind and Lightning Feathers was Xiao Qi able to keep up with the swift, and the blue-eyes wyrm was basically unable to keep up. Roaring incessantly, it flailed its tail wildly, but never once hitting the swift.

.....

Now that he and Yao Tong were both fighting at levels as strong as peak late-stage Soul Exalts, the battle in the sky was far more fierce than what it was on the ground. Explosions happened one after another, and elemental energy sparked across the skies. Already, a good portion of the forest was destroyed by the fallout, and there were craters all over the ground.

Bai Yunfei could only maintain the Berserk Mode for ten minutes, but Yao Tong would surely only be able to maintain his strength for so long as well. Each combatant were attacking and defending harshly in hopes of finishing the battle quickly.

As the battle persisted, Bai Yunfei found himself growing more and more surprised. Yao Tong was stronger than he imagined, and it wasn't at all like what a normal peak late-stage Soul Exalt should be like. The man had also a decent amount of soul armaments; that golden longsword of his was definitely a low-heaven tier soul armament at the very least, and he had also armor, wrist guards, and other accessories as soul armaments!

Likewise, Yao Tong was just as surprised as Bai Yunfei. Four

minutes had already passed without him being able to harm Bai Yunfei. On the other hand, Bai Yunfei had already landed a blow onto his left shoulder.

Again, the Cataclysmic Seal flew at Yao Tong, causing him to look in brief panic at what he should do. Raising his longsword and diverting his soulforce to it, Yao Tong's soulforce started to flow strangely as the sword started to shine.

He was getting ready yet another soul skill!

Bai Yunfei's face grew grim as he recognized the warning signs. Taking a split-moment to think, Bai Yunfei decided then and there on his own course of action. Putting away his Fire-tipped Spear, he went through a series of hand seals to use one of his strongest moves—the Fused Dual Dragon Burst!

Yao Tong's eyes narrowed at what Bai Yunfei was doing, his forehead sweating from behind the mask. He could sense that whatever Bai Yunfei was doing, but it was just as strong as the soul skill he was doing! No....it was stronger!

If the two hit each other, it was possible that they would both be injured almost devastatingly!

But Bai Yunfei had his Cataclysmic Seal, so Yao Tong would be the one that'd be hurt most!

Realizing how that would turn out for him, fear flickered in Yao Tong's eyes for the very first time. Conflicted, Yao Tong argued to himself if he should stay and fight, or stop and run.

In the end, his aura dissipated, and then he....fled!

He wasn't moving to dodge Bai Yunfei's attack, he was simply running away!

On the other side, the golden swift had received a message from Yao Tong. Trilling once in response, it took off in the opposite direction of the two soulbeasts and quickly disappeared over the horizon.

The two chose to....abandon the fight and run!

Chapter 502: Xing Qiuhong's Space Ring (Fifth)

Bai Yunfei was taken back by Yao Tong's decision to flee, but he was happy to see it. Dropping his arms, he dispelled the Dual Dragon Burst to look at the fleeing figure of Yao Tong. He didn't dare drop his guard, instead, he looked around just in case something else might jump out at him.

A minute later, Bai Yunfei couldn't sense anything with his elevated soulsense capabilities. Yao Tong had truly run away. Without sensing anyone else there to fight him, Bai Yunfei sighed and dispelled the Berserk Mode to drop back to his normal state.

He fell from the skies, his feet staggering a little as he stepped onto firm ground. Pale in the face, Bai Yunfei dropped on his butt and sat down. Using the Violet Soul Ring, he replenished his soulforce with the stockpiled amount in it.

Xiao Qi and Xiao Lan ran up to Bai Yunfei. Neither of the two soulbeasts were harmed, so they stood guard by Bai Yunfei just in case there was anyone that might come up to attack.

Yao Tong would definitely be the strongest enemy Bai Yunfei faced to date. Despite being a late-stage Soul Exalt, the way Yao Tong fought had been spectacular and dangerous--many times more than the other peak late-stage Soul Exalts Bai Yunfei fought.

"Just who is this guy...." Bai Yunfei asked himself as he meditated.

.....

At the same time, in a place far far away.

Under the night sky, a single person walked slowly under the trees. He wore a black robe and had a golden mask on his face. On his shoulder was a golden swift.

It was Yao Tong.

He chose to walk on solid ground rather than through the step through the skies.

If not for the mask, anyone would've been able to see how pale and exhausted the man looked.

The technique he used to improve his strength was mysterious and powerful with how the backlash from using it was a lot softer than most. But it couldn't compare to Bai Yunfei's Dual Flame Arts. He had already canceled out his technique before Bai Yunfei and was currently dealing with a backlash far stronger than what Bai Yunfei was experiencing.

Not once did the man think that Bai Yunfei would be this strong. What should've been in the bag had turned into a battle he was forced to flee from.

If the battle continued, it would've become dangerous for him.

For something he wasn't even sure was there, Yao Tong had nearly lost his life. That wasn't a fair trade, Yao Tong thought, and had thus not went through with it.

"Forget it, that piece of information wasn't reliable. Something like that wouldn't appear so easily in this world, and the Xing haven't done anything with it for three years, so this makes less sense. I bet Xing Shuangqing didn't give it to his family....perhaps even news that Xing Shuangqing having it was a false one...."

The thought Yao Tong had seemed to make sense to him the more he thought about it.

"I've hide with the Xing for more than half a year ago, and not a thing to show for it. Even Wu Han was killed. This entire trip has been a huge waste of time and energy." He sighed. "His death has nothing to do with me, though. The news I have have to be brought back and reported that it was a false lead...."

Suddenly, Yao Tong's foot paused in the air as he felt something.

Hiding himself into the bushes, Yao Tong hid his aura and didn't move a muscle.

About ten seconds later, a figure in white flew overhead.

It disappeared off into the distance, and several minutes later, Yao Tong came back out from the bushes to look at the direction the other person disappeared to.

"It's him....he must've been the other person back in the Xing. So even the Beast Taming School has received the same information? They sent a Soul King to investigate too...." Yao Tong hesitated, "He's moving quickly, so that other person most likely won't escape in time....Xing QiuHong's space ring will become his then, and the things inside...."

He grew silent for a moment, "Forget it....what good is it if I even had it? Me stealing it away from a Soul King is impossible, best to give it up."

No longer caring about the matter, Yao Tong continued on his journey.

.....

It didn't take long for Bai Yunfei to recover his soulforce, it at least, was a lot faster than the wounds he had recovering. Not long after, his soulforce was completely back to the levels before he had fought in that battle.

Exhaling, Bai Yunfei opened his eyes.

Eyes twinkling now, Bai Yunfei touched the space ring he had in his hand, it was Xing QiuHong's ring.

"Why did that person want this ring? What treasure is inside this....?" Bai Yunfei asked himself, a little excited at what he might find out.

He sent his soulsense into it.

After a while, Bai Yunfei narrowed his eyes in suspicion and

confusion.

There were soul armaments, soulgems, primal stones, but in small amounts. There was nothing Bai Yunfei found in being 'special' in there.

Thinking more about it, Bai Yunfei waved his hand, pulling a silver longsword out.

Equipment Grade: Mid Earth

Elemental Affinity: Wind

Attack: 830

Equipment Effect: Consume Soulforce in order to enable flight.

Upgrade Requirement: 100 Soulpoints

This was the flying soul armament of Xing QiuHong. It was an ordinary one, and not too different to Bai Yunfei's Tempest Sword.

Looking over it, Bai Yunfei pulled out a golden greatsword next.

Equipment Grade: Mid Earth

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Requirement: 105 Soulpoints

It was a mid-earth tier soul armament, probably the personal weapon of Xing QiuHong. But that weapon too, had nothing special about it, leaving Bai Yunfei to put it away.

There weren't any other soul armaments in it, confusing him. As a lord, amount of treasure he had was pretty pitiful.

In truth, all of the precious soul armaments and such were back at the compound, and not in the space ring.

Not many primal stones and soulgems were had here, and their quality wasn't much to talk about. At most, they'd be used to help him heal his wounds faster.

Aside from that, there were clothes, coins, and other ordinary goods.

Bai Yunfei looked disappointed.

Such a mighty person this was, with people after his space ring, and yet, only to have this little?

“If I’d known earlier, I’d have given it to that man and spare the fight...” Bai Yunfei sighed.

“No one else should be chasing me now, right?”

He looked around, his mind slightly peaceful at the night air around him. Just as he was about to rest, Bai Yunfei’s eyes flew wide open with surprise and anger. Flying to his feet, he cried, “Heaven f*cking damn it! There’s someone else!? When will this all end!!”

No sooner did he cry out did a burst of light come flying in his direction. At a closer look, Bai Yunfei’s eyes widened in fright.

“He’s flying, that’s a Soul King!”

His face grew unsightly after that.

Practically a few moments later, a figure in white came to a stop not too far away from Bai Yunfei and looked down upon him.

“Hand over Xing QiuHong’s space ring and I’ll leave your corpse in one piece!”

Chapter 503: Battling a Soul King! (Sixth)

Bai Yunfei had thought Yao Tong was arrogant enough when he came, but now there was this guy who was even more arrogant than him!

‘Leave your corpse in one piece!!’

In other words, Bai Yunfei was marked for death, the only difference was that his corpse would be prettier to look at....

What a harsh Soul King!

Bai Yunfei leveled a stare back at the man, his face grim, but his mouth closed. He really wanted to say, ‘if I give you the ring, may I leave?’, but that wasn’t possible. In front of a Soul King, Bai Yunfei hadn’t the right to ‘bargain’ with him.

His eyes flickered again as his decision came to him. He had to fight for his life!

Bai Yunfei had a good chance if he fought a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, but not against a Soul King.

Even if it was an early-stage Soul King.

He couldn’t run away though. Escaping wasn’t even an option. He could only fight for his life and hope for a chance to escape at some point in it....

Determined, Bai Yunfei glared at the Soul King, a fearsome gleam in his eyes. Because both of his fireseeds had been in his body to help him recuperate, Bai Yunfei was able to immediately explode with power.

‘Coil’ form, activate!

Two more sources of soulforce exploded as well as Xiao Qi and Xiao Lan prepared themselves for combat.

Xiao Qi’s eyes radiated with anger and determination, but Xiao Lan’s eyes had a tint of fear in them.

Even without the Soul King in front of them exerting his presence, the two soulbeasts were already cowed.

.....

This white-robed man was the one who had exterminated the entire house of Xing, Huang Lin.

The fourth elder of the Beast Taming School and early-stage Soul King.

He was surprised to see Bai Yunfei choose to fight. But the surprise made way for a sneer—a mere Soul Exalt wanting to fight? He was but an ant in front of a Soul King.

“How futile. Prepare yourself for an agonizing death then!”

He sneered. Waving his right hand, Huang Lin sent a swarm of bees out from his left side, and then a six-tailed purple and black cat from his right.

And then in front of him, a snowy-white canine the size of a large tiger appeared from a flash of white!

The entrance of the three soulbeasts were immediately recognized by Bai Yunfei. Even in the middle of his powering up, he knew which soulbeasts they were!

“Early-stage class five venomous black bees!

“Peak late-stage class six amethyst multi-tailed cat!

“Early-stage class seven.....permafrost mastiff!!”

Their classifications and strengths were cried out immediately before Bai Yunfei followed it up with another line, “The Beast Taming School!”

“You’ve a sharp eye. You must come from a powerful background, then? What a shame that you’ll be dying here today....”

Bai Yunfei was astounded when he realized he was up against a

Beast Taming School, but then, another light flashed across his eyes!

The Beast Taming School....! If it was against the Beast Taming School, he had a chance!

Heart pounding in his chest, Bai Yunfei began to formulate a plan while making sure his opponent wouldn't be able to see his excitement.

When the three soulbeasts came out from their space rings, Huang Lin waved his hand, commanding the three to fly forth.

He didn't want to squander any time and kill Bai Yunfei as soon as possible.

The first to fly forth was the permafrost mastiff. With its snowy-white body and crimson-red eyes, it disappeared into a streak of white light with only a small point of red to be seen. It didn't need any sort of tactics other than a direct one. Its jaws flew open as it approached Bai Yunfei, ready to snap down and bite his body in half.

Following behind it was the amethyst multi-tailed cat. Screeching loudly, it disappeared into a bolt of purple light behind the permafrost mastiff to attack Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm.

The venomous black bees were flying behind the other two, buzzing as they moved as one.

As danger drew close, Bai Yunfei launched his own attacks without hesitation. In fact, he was already in motion when Huang Lin was just starting to command the soulbeasts!

The soulforce in his body exploded in intensity again, bringing him to the levels of a peak late-stage Soul Exalt!

Berserk Mode, activate!

Under Huang Lin's surprised stare, Bai Yunfei disappeared in a blur as well to meet the permafrost mastiff head on with a burst of

fire!

Dual Dragon Burst!!

His first opening move was to use his strongest move. The Dual Dragon Burst while in Berserk Mode!

The two fiery dragons exploded forth from Bai Yunfei's fists, converging around the mastiff while Huang Lin looked on in disbelief. From what he could sense, this attack was on the level of....a Soul King!

“Impossible!!”

Before the attack could land, Huang Lin ordered the mastiff to leap to the side. It had to abandon its attack in order to evade. There was another screech as the multi-tailed cat leapt to the side as well, due to its trajectory towards Xiao Qi making it also a potential target of the two dragons.

But unfortunately, the swarm of black bees weren't as 'fortunate' as other two to dodge....

The swarm of bees had tried to move out of the way along with the mastiff and cat, even splitting the swarm in two in order to evade. But how could it evade such a powerful attack from Bai Yunfei? Drawing the distance between his arms aside, Bai Yunfei had the two dragons split apart and 'swallow' the swarms whole!

“Bzzz! Sssss.....”

A collective sound of intense buzzing and sizzling was heard as the two dragons engulfed the bees. And in no time at all, the entirety of the swarm was reduced to ashes!

Absolutely furious at this, Huang Lin didn't have time to issue another command when....the two dragons suddenly came at him from both sides!

“Boom!!!”

There was an ear-deafening explosion when the two dragons

converged onto Huang Lin. The beast tamer had been fast enough to extend both arms in opposite directions, erecting a green-colored barrier before he could be engulfed.

Bai Yunfei hadn't been surprised to see the Dual Dragon Bursts completely destroy the swarm of bees, as that had been his intention. Bringing both hands back to his side, he had the Cataclysmic Seal erect the strongest barrier he could afford to have around him.

In the next moment, the mastiff came flying at him from the right side after it dodged the dragons. Staring down Bai Yunfei with its red eyes, it brought its giant paw up—elemental ice covering its claws to make it even sharper—and then swung down onto the elemental earth barrier!

“Boom!!”

It took only half a second for Bai Yunfei's strongest defense to....shatter completely!

Now that the barrier was gone, the mastiff opened its jaws wide to snap down on the defenseless Bai Yunfei!

Chapter 504: Struggle! (Seventh)

Unable to offer up any defense or evasion maneuvers, Bai Yunfei was powerless to stop the mastiff from landing a bite onto his waist!

The mastiff's sharp teeth dug into Bai Yunfei's armor, and then pierced through it into his flesh!

“Ahh!!!!”

Howling in pain and anger, Bai Yunfei raised his gloved right hand and lashed out a punch onto the mastiff's head!

Eighty-one Fold Fist Force!!

Putting as much strength as he could into the blow, Bai Yunfei smashed it onto the class seven soulbeast's head. The punch connected with a sickening thud, and then Bai Yunfei felt the pressure on his waist lighten a bit!

Stepping away from the mastiff, Bai Yunfei's face paled from the pain he felt. On his waist, two horrifying rows of holes peppered it, blood leaking out from each of the holes. From the biggest of them, Bai Yunfei's internal organs could almost be seen!!

“Boom!!”

A tremendous explosion rung out at the same time from Huang Lin's position. Having forced his elemental wind around him like a maelstrom of energy, the beast tamer had managed to overwhelm the two dragons pressing against him, and then in one final show, he forced them to dissipate!

His face was extremely sinister-looking, but other than that, he was unharmed!

Furious at the ordeal he just went through, Huang Lin sent a withering glare towards Bai Yunfei. He was fearful of how Bai Yunfei had such powerful strength, but also furious that he had

been forced back by a Soul Exalt! The loss of his venomous black bee swarm was tremendous, and even dismembering Bai Yunfei from limb to limb as he was alive wouldn't be enough to make up for the loss!

“You will die!!”

Absolutely furious, Huang Lin pointed a single finger at him. Elemental wind gathered at the point of this finger at extremely high concentrated levels, and then, with a roar, he fired an arrow of elemental wind ten meters thick towards Bai Yunfei!

If hit with this, there wouldn't even be a single piece of Bai Yunfei left!

Bai Yunfei immediately gave up thinking about the horrifying wounds on his waist now. Bringing the Cataclysmic Seal forwards, he had it grow to two hundred meters in length to stand in front of him!

“Boom!!”

The wind arrow smashed into the Cataclysmic Seal with a sound that seemed to shake even the skies themselves. Under the explosion, the Cataclysmic Seal was forced back twenty meters! It shivered briefly before returning to its regular size. And, as if it was completely without power, it fell down to the ground with a plop!!

As soon as it fell, Bai Yunfei felt his soulforce suddenly decrease by roughly forty percent, and his mind immediately grew dizzy as a result!

But he couldn't faint! Before his vision could grow completely black, Bai Yunfei bit at his tongue, freely drawing blood and snapping him out of it! He couldn't use the Cataclysmic Seal right now, and even worse....the mastiff was coming at him again!

Since he couldn't use the Cataclysmic Seal, that meant he had nothing to protect him from the mastiff's claw!

In this perilous situation, Bai Yunfei opted to....not move a muscle!

As if struck into a daze, Bai Yunfei just stared at the mastiff, his eyes revealing the craze in them as the mastiff approached!

Was he really in a daze?

Of course not!

He was waiting. Waiting for the most optimal moment to turn the tables on the situation!

“Not yet! Have to wait! I have...I have to wait!”

Eyes practically bloodshot, Bai Yunfei waited anxiously as the mastiff came closer to it. He was concentrating so hard that time had practically stood still for him, and the mastiff was merely inching towards him.

Then when the mastiff was no more than half a meter away, Bai Yunfei’s eyes flew open—

“Now!!”

Stepping back a step to widen the distance, Bai Yunfei lifted his right hand up towards the mastiff!

His actions looked as if he was trying to sacrifice his own right arm to the mastiff’s mouth!

His right arm was practically in the middle of the mastiff’s mouth when a brilliant gleam of prismatic light erupted from the bracelet on it. Expanding in size, the bracelet flew over the mastiff’s head and clamped down on its neck!

The Beast Taming Ring!!

“I did it!”

Bai Yunfei’s eyes gleamed with success as he watched the Beast Taming Ring shrunk over the mastiff’s neck!

Its jaws were already closing in on Bai Yunfei’s arm, and before

he could jerk it back, the fangs of the mastiff were already touching his skin!

“Stop!!!”

Bai Yunfei roared, pushing as much soulforce as he could into that one command for the Beast Taming Ring to enforce!

The Beast Taming Ring lit up brilliantly, stopping the mastiff's jaw from clamping down just as the fangs were just about to pierce through Bai Yunfei's skin!

Seizing the opportunity to jerk his arm back, Bai Yunfei leapt several meters back in cold-sweat, his eyes boring holes at the mastiff with how hard he was staring.

The layer of fire around his body disappeared as he gave up trying to protect himself. Right now, he was sending all his concentration into the mastiff's mindspace!

After being stopped the first time, the mastiff was about to give chase after Bai Yunfei when its body froze and shivered again. In its crimson-red eyes, there was the signs of a struggle!

.....

“What?!’

The moment when the Beast Taming Ring clamped onto the mastiff's neck, Huang Lin was only just recovering from his attack on the Cataclysmic Seal. The strange energy he felt coming from the mastiff surprised him greatly!

“Wha—what's happening!”

Pain started to stab into his mind as he felt his control over the mastiff suddenly start to go out of control! It was as if a secondary presence within the mastiff was vying for control over it like he was doing!

There wasn't a single person in this world that wouldn't be surprised by this situation, especially a beast tamer. Even a Soul

King would fall into a state of shock at this!

He realized what was going on when he looked at Bai Yunfei, it was his fault!

Completely disregarding the question how Bai Yunfei was even accomplishing this, Huang Lin pulled in his soulforce to try and push out this 'external' force from the mastiff!

With great deliberation, Bai Yunfei unleashed all of his stored up energy to seize the advantage in this battle of wills. The mindspace of the permafrost mastiff had become the new battlefield, and Huang Lin and Bai Yunfei were fighting silently against each other with their mental strength as the deciding factor!

As an early-stage Soul King, Huang Lin's mental fortitude was magnitudes higher than Bai Yunfei. Even if Bai Yunfei had the first advantage, Huang Lin could easily catch up to Bai Yunfei and then force the other into a disadvantage!

The permafrost mastiff paused where it stood, the struggle in its eyes growing more and more. Its body shivered non-stop as it started to lose control, elemental ice freezing the air around it with increasing strength!

"Chirp!!!!"

As Bai Yunfei begun to feel himself be pushed back in the battle of wills, a furious chirp cried out before a third presence invaded the mastiff's mindsplace!

Chapter 505: Cutting a Soul King! (Eighth)

Xiao Qi!!

Right in an extremely pivotal moment, Xiao Qi's will invaded the mastiff's mindspace, fighting against Huang Lin's will valiantly, reigniting the battle like a reincarnated phoenix!

Not even a hundred seconds had gone by since the start of this battle. Bai Yunfei had used the Dual Dragon Burst to start the battle, but Xiao Qi had been unable to help him. The amethyst multi-tailed cat managed to dodge the Dual Dragon Burst and forced Xiao Qi to fight with the blue-eyes wyrm against it after that.

The cat was a peak late-stage class six soulbeast, but with its completely reckless fighting style, the soulbeast was a hard enemy to fight, and Xiao Qi hadn't the time to help Bai Yunfei even when he was attacked by the mastiff.

But when Bai Yunfei used the Beast Taming Ring and began to fight Huang Lin for control, Xiao Qi saw its chance. Thanks to the bond it had with Bai Yunfei, Xiao Qi knew how Bai Yunfei was faring and had no other choice but to help.

This was a battle of will and mental strength and not a battle of physical prowess. Extending its wings, Xiao Qi flew up and away from the battlefield and sent its will into the mastiff's mindspace through the Beast Taming Ring to help Bai Yunfei fight Huang Lin.

But that meant the pressure on the blue-eyes wyrm had doubled. Roaring, it sent another tail swipe at the cat.

Now with Xiao Qi there to help, their combined strengths forced Huang Lin to falter.

And for once, there was a sign of pain on his face!

A Soul King he might be, but adding Xiao Qi into the mix in the mastiff's mindspace was enough to put even him in danger!

Actually....he felt himself slowly losing against their strengths!

If he had the time to send his soulsense out, then he would've realized that his control over the mastiff was eroding away! Losing control over a soulbeast meant losing a great deal of a beast tamer's fighting strength. And if Huang Lin lost control over the mastiff, it might be possible for the enemy to use the mastiff on him....

A hint of fear flickered across his eyes at that thought.

But he didn't even know if he'd be able to win this fight or not. He could perhaps wait for the multi-tailed cat to deal with the blue-eyes wyrm and have it attack Bai Yunfei and Xiao Qi. That way, the two of them would be easily killable since they were focused on the battle of wills.

Or else wise, he could give up the struggle to control the mastiff and use his strength to kill the others quickly before wrestling back control over the mastiff again.

His mind raced to make the decision, each option sounding no better and no worse than the other. He didn't want to make a hasty decision, as it was his life on the line, and Huang Lin was afraid that he wouldn't be able to recover if he made the wrong decision.

Huang Lin felt disgraced. He was a high and mighty Soul King and elder of the Beast Taming School.

And yet, here was a whelping Soul Exalt fighting against him on equal grounds, and even pushing him back....

Huang Lin wasn't the only person to feel panicked. The amount of resistance from the Soul King was proving to be a lot more than Bai Yunfei expected. Compared to the time he had with Xing Yuan's thunderfire wolf, this attempt was ten times harder.

But the most urging issue was the fact that he couldn't maintain this for long!!

The superior willpower of Huang Lin allowed him time to think, but Bai Yunfei hadn't that same luxury! Bai Yunfei was relying on

the Berserk Mode to give him a boost in willpower, and his limits were definite in comparison. Huang Lin didn't even need to retaliate to have Bai Yunfei succumb to the time constraints and be killed straight after!

The deadlock continued for two minutes more when Bai Yunfei made his choice. Sending a command to Xiao Qi, he immediately....pulled himself out from the mastiff's mindsphere!

Having not expected that, Huang Lin gave a start. Bai Yunfei's retreat meant only Xiao Qi was left to fight Huang Lin, and Xiao Qi itself wasn't a match for him!

Despite his surprise, Huang Lin wasn't beating himself over it. He capitalized on this development by pushing Xiao Qi's will back, and within ten seconds, he had already regained most of the lost ground and was nearly about to inflict damage to Xiao Qi's soul itself!

Bai Yunfei's retreat wasn't something that was unintended, though. Back in the real world, Bai Yunfei's eyes glinted with opportunity. His right hand held the Fire-tipped Spear tightly before he wound it backwards.

Then with all his strength, he sent it flying forwards!

He was....using the Fire-tipped Spear like an arrow! To spear Huang Lin through!

His action had proved dangerous to his body, as the wound on his waist began to splurt blood in massive amounts. Still completely unconcerned about it, Bai Yunfei turned back to the mastiff as soon as the spear was thrown to send his soulsense back into the mastiff!

It was with a sneer that Huang Lin watched the spear come at him. Did Bai Yunfei really think that an attack like that would hurt him!? How laughable!!

Him dodging the spear would mean having to lose concentration

for a moment, and that was precious concentration that needed to be put towards the battle for dominance over the mastiff!

Huang Lin ‘knew’ straight away what Bai Yunfei was planning. Sneering to himself, he waved his right hand, erecting a ten-meter thick barrier of elemental wind to protect him!

Huang Lin was entirely confident that this barrier could stop even a heaven tier soul armament!

Xiao Qi’s willpower was almost thoroughly crushed in the mastiff’s mindscape. Bai Yunfei’s temporary leave had been long enough for Huang Lin to make a great push, and even Bai Yunfei’s second push wouldn’t be enough to make up for that. It wouldn’t be long before victory was Huang Lin, and with that victory, he’d be able to inflict damages to the souls of both Bai Yunfei and Xiao Qi!

Then with the mastiff, he’d be able to kill them!

But what Huang Lin didn’t see was the calculative grin on Bai Yunfei’s face!

Trailing fire as it flew onwards, the Fire-tipped Spear took only a second or two before it reached Huang Lin’s barrier in the attempt to stab through him!

The spear struck against the ten-meter thick barrier, but instead of bouncing off like Huang Lin expected, something else had happened!

The spear continued through the barrier--not even stopping at all in recognition of the barrier to sail through it!

The barrier hadn’t even touched the spear, let alone stop it!

This was....the +13 additional effect of the spear! The ability to ignore elemental defenses!!

“Impossible!!!”

Huang Lin’s confidence was nowhere to be found. In its place,

shock filled his eyes as he watched helplessly as the spear stabbed into him!

Even with his strength as a Soul King, evading a surprise attack like this was impossible for him. The most he could do was move by just the slightest of centimeters to evade a mortal wound.

“Pcht!!”

There was the sound of flesh being stabbed and burned as the Fire-tipped Spear....stabbed into Huang Lin’s left shoulder and then out from his back. It had pierced straight through him!

Elemental fire swarmed his body from the spear, burning at both his internal organs and seemingly even his soul!

Unfortunately for Bai Yunfei, the explosion effect hadn’t activated. If it did, then the Soul King would’ve died then and there!

Still, the damage was done. Huang Lin was so stunned that he temporarily forgot about the mastiff and the mental battle, paving the way for Bai Yunfei to seize the advantage in the mindspace!

“Gah!”

Feeling as his will was pushed back, Huang Lin’s face went from white to deathly white before he puked out a mouthful of blood!

But it wasn’t over yet!

“Chirp!!!”

Having lost his concentration and awareness with this combo, Huang Lin almost failed to hear the chirping of Xiao Qi. Looking up at the bird, he saw five blades of nothingness sail towards him to slice him!

“These are....spatial tears! No!!!” Huang Lin roared to himself.

Despair clenched at Huang Lin’s face when he realized what these attacks were.

Elemental wind swarmed around his body as much as he could so that it shined as bright as a sun. He was trying to hide within the light, as he couldn't do anything else in what might be his final moments!

But the five blades of nothingness tore through the light like the scythe of the death god. Eating away at the light, one of the blades made its way onto Huang Lin's chest, and then through it!

Chapter 506: Improvement in Strength (Ninth)

The five Spatial Edges tore through Huang Lin and disappeared with the night. On the inverse, the elemental wind that had been cut by the Spatial Edges exploded!

“Boom! Boom! Boom!!”

A series of explosions was heard as the elemental wind exploded all around, illuminating the night so bright that it looked like daytime for a moment before disappearing....

Then Huang Lin’s aura disappeared shortly afterwards.

The Soul King had died!!

Not much of his body was left after the Spatial Edge was through with him, and the rest of his body had been caught up in the explosion of the elemental wind.

“Roar!!”

There was a roar from the blue-eyes wyrm behind them. Scars adorned its body, and many of its scales were torn off from its body. Every so often, a spark of purple lightning shot off from its body and wounds, some places even showing some smoke rising from them....

A fierce glare was in the blue-eyes wyrm’s eyes as it snapped its jaws onto a suddenly immobile target!

This target was the peak late-stage class six amethyst multi-tailed cat!

The moment when Huang Lin died, its control over the cat was lost. So without any other commands to move the cat, the cat grew still like a statue and stopped moving.

Having not realized why it stopped, the blue-eyes wyrm

capitalized on the chance by risking it all to attack! With a roar of absolute fury and gloom, it launched itself at the cat with its jaws wide open.

Before Bai Yunfei could do anything, the wyrm was already biting onto the cat. There was a cry from the cat, and then after that, its aura disappeared....

Bai Yunfei sighed. He couldn't blame the blue-eyes wyrm for this. He hadn't the time to care for the wyrm at the moment anyways and sat down to try and recuperate his wounds.

The Cataclysmic Seal flew towards him, encasing him with its earth barrier.

At his command, the permafrost mastiff stepped towards Bai Yunfei before standing guard to protect him from anything.

The Berserk Mode was dispelled, and his soulforce now coming back thanks to the Violet Soul Ring and the Dual Flame Arts....

In time, Bai Yunfei was fully recovered with soulforce and could now focus on the wounds he had.

The wound on his waist wasn't fatal for him, but to the ordinary person, they would've died a very long time ago. With the mangled flesh and blood that dripped from it, the wound looked extremely terrifying, but the internal organs was still perfectly fine. Most of his blood had been staunched due to his soulforce, as the armor he wore was helpless in keeping it in. With this soulforce, he was able to increase his healing rate.

Meanwhile he was healing, Xiao Qi furled its wings inwards to float in the air. Colors from four different elements streamed from the world around into it, feeding and strengthening Xiao Qi's soulforce....

After killing the multi-tailed cat, the blue-eyes wyrm didn't wait for it to swallow its soulgem into its stomach! This was something it did many times back in the Soulbeast Forest and was practically

second nature.

After swallowing the soulgem, the blue-eyes wyrm's entire body was surrounded by elemental water and cocooned it in.

For a while, a strange silence descended onto the area with only three sources of light serving as the only source of illumination as it pulsated.

.....

Time slowly went by with the moon slowly setting back down for the sun to slowly rise back up...

Bai Yunfei was the first to 'wake'.

His face was no longer pale, and his face wasn't as fatigued as before. The wound on his waist was gone, and only small blood clots clung to where there once were holes. Bai Yunfei was fully and completely back to normal.

Shaking his arms, Bai Yunfei cracked his neck with a satisfying pop. Inspecting his entire person, Bai Yunfei smiled when he saw nothing amiss.

In the span of one night, his strength increased by a great amount. The battle of life-or-death had indeed been a very enlightening experience for him to learn from.

After he finished his own investigations, he looked to Xiao Qi and then to the blue-eyes wyrm with a strange eye.

He knew that Xiao Qi had killed a Soul King, and the blue-eyes wyrm had swallowed the soulgem of a peak late-stage class six soulbeast. This meant that the two soulbeasts should by all rights gain a lot of strength—a lot more than before at least.

"Will they....breakthrough maybe?" Bai Yunfei's eyes shined expectantly.

"Chirp!!"

A happy chirp echoed through the skies as Xiao Qi unfurled its

wings, spreading four different elements into the world. Letting loose a long trill, it sucked back in the elements into its body, revealing its strength....as a late-stage class six!

There would of course be a great length of process made by Xiao Qi after killing a Soul King. It was a late-stage class six now! And at a closer look, it seemed like Xiao Qi was very close to the peak late-stage level too!

This was....a great improvement!

“Roarr!!!”

There was a third source of commotion as a draconic roar sounded through the heavens as the blue-eyes wyrm finished up as well.

Its roar was happy and filled with excitement at its achievement.

Peak late-stage class six!

It was now just a small step away from becoming a class seven!

A year ago, it had only been a little early-stage class six soulbeast. Its chance of becoming a class seven soulbeast was oh-so close, and it was excited to get there!

If....just if it could make that one step, it'd reach a realm where many soulbeasts could only dream for!

It could never forget what it saw in the Soulbeast Forest. The hair-raising battle where a group of unbelievable powers met. Their strength, their powers, and their auras, it was all utterly awe-inspiring....

The wyrm hadn't been smart back then and could only follow its instinctual directive to get stronger.

But now that it was granted an intellect that rivalled even humanity, it thirsted for that realm like a man dying of thirst in a desert.

The blue-eyes wyrm had always been a soulbeast of the water

affinity, but the black color in its elemental water was stronger than before. There was another element growing stronger within the elemental water....

Roaring carefully, the blue-eyes wyrm sucked in the energy around it so that the light grew compressed.

Chapter 507: Equipment Grade: Low Divine! (Tenth)

Today was a nice and sunny day in a seemingly small town.

In the second story of an ordinary inn.

Bai Yunfei sat down next a table where a pile of random objects and things were laid about.

.....

The city he was in was a great distance away from Ventia City. After killing Huang Lin, Bai Yunfei didn't wish to stick around and left on his sword to travel for two full days and nights without rest.

He was afraid of sticking around. What if a mid-stage Soul King came around. What would he say?

'Hand over Xing Qiuhong's space ring and I'll let you choose how you want to die.'?

So he traveled nonstop without even looking at the space ring of Huang Lin. It was only when he arrived in this small town that he made a pit stop to rest.

This way, there'd most likely be no one that'd come after him....

.....

It was midday when he arrived in town. He came to the small inn he was in now for a good meal, and after he reserved a room, he could finally rest.

There were three soulbeasts in the room. Xiao Qi, Xiao Lan, and a small white 'dog' that stood in the center of the room and moved and talked slowly.

It looked quite cute with how its long white hair covered its eyes. But in actuality, this was the early-stage class seven permafrost mastiff.

It was this size now due to Bai Yunfei's order so it could be like Xiao Qi's and the blue-eyes wyrm's size.

Bai Yunfei could control the actions of the class seven mastiff, which meant he could study it a bit with the Beast Taming Ring, but there were more important things to study.

At last, Bai Yunfei could rest. The first matter to address wasn't Huang Lin's space ring but....Xing QiuHong's.

Yao Tong's insistence for it made Bai Yunfei suspicious. He didn't see anything the first time, but he still remained suspicious. After the Soul King came knocking and demanding, Bai Yunfei decided then and there was definitely 'treasure' in the ring and decided to look again.

This time, he looked through the items one by one to carefully inspect each one.

Even the most ordinary of items were placed on the table and inspected.

He figured that this so-called 'treasure' wouldn't necessarily have to be a high level soul armament or amazing technique. It didn't even have to be an object and could be just....information, for example.

Stuff like that could be hidden within the 'ordinary' things. Like a sheet of paper, or a slip of metal....

.....

Equipment Grade: High

Elemental Affinity: None

Defense: 80

Upgrade Requirement: 35 Soulpoints

Bai Yunfei took out a golden-colored robe, inspecting it for its stats as per usual. He looked through the robes, seeing nothing that might resemble words or something hidden in it anywhere.

Without seeing anything, he put it away and then took out a golden belt next.

Equipment Grade: High

Elemental Affinity: None

Defense: 90

Upgrade Requirement: 37 Soulpoints

There was nothing special about this either. He put it away.

.....

The items on the table were growing less and less as Bai Yunfei started to finish up his investigations without anything bearing fruit.

He was starting to feel disappointed. He sighed.

It would appear Huang Lin and Yao Tong were both mistaken. There was nothing in Xing QiuHong's space ring, and certainly not treasure.

Feeling his excitement fall bit by bit, Bai Yunfei forced himself to continue looking. There were only ten things left now, and Bai Yunfei felt quite discouraged.

“Eh? This is a....handkerchief? Or a towel?”

After another useless robe, Bai Yunfei saw a gray ‘cloth’.

It was a little big for a handkerchief and a little small for towel. What in the world was Xing QiuHong doing with this....

He frowned, but he looked at the cloth nonetheless.

But the moment he touched the cloth, Bai Yunfei's expression froze on his face as if struck by an illusion.

He wouldn't snap back to reality for another five seconds. He looked down in disbelief at the ‘cloth’ in his hands.

“T--th-this....” Bai Yunfei stammered, feeling himself at quite a loss. This ‘object’ captivated him, “what is this!?”

The reason for his loss of composure was due to the stats of the cloth.

Bai Yunfei breathed in and out twice, his eyes staring closely at the cloth before he looked at the stats again.

[100% SEALED] Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Defense: 600

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

This. This was the stats of the cloth!!

“Divine?! Divine tier!!!” Bai Yunfei felt like he was dreaming. “What kind of equipment is this....I’ve never seen it before!”

He originally believed he knew all about equipment grades by now, from ‘ordinary’ to ‘heaven’. That was all there was to their grades. He had seen many low-heaven tier soul armaments, no mid-heaven, and only one high-heaven tier, the Nephrite Throne.

But right now, there was a never-before-seen ‘divine-tier’, thus his shock.

“And....three equipment effects!! Each effect is already ridiculous just by itself!!” Bai Yunfei could feel his heart pounding against his ribcage loudly, his shock hard to hide from even the soulbeasts. “What a ridiculous effect! How could there be such an equipment effect like this?!”

These three effects targeted the soul, the very root of how soul cultivators could act and grow stronger by! Needless to say, just the second effect alone where one’s ‘200% increase in healing from damage done to the soul’ would make any soul cultivator go crazy for!

Bai Yunfei closed his eyes, exhaling slowly. After a long time when he felt like he had calmed down enough, he reopened his eyes. The excitement in his eyes was replaced with a look of suspicion.

“But....’sealed’. What does that mean?” He asked himself, “What does it mean when an effect is ‘sealed’? Does that mean it can’t be used? How does that even work?”

From what he could tell from his vision given to him by the Upgrade Technique, there was nothing different to this piece of cloth, and even for someone as experienced as he was, he couldn’t find any clues.

This was probably due to it being ‘sealed’.

He was still confused. “And only 600 defense? That’s the same as a high-earth tier, this doesn’t really make sense. How is it so low....is it because it’s ‘sealed’? And to upgrade it requires 500 soulpoints! That’s....”

He remembered Na Lanyin’s mid-heaven earth tier soul armament. It had only required 260 soulpoints to require, but this low-divine soul armament needed 500!

“Does this mean ‘divine’ is higher than ‘heaven’?! There’s something even higher than ‘heaven tier’?!”

His eyes sparkled as his mind made the connections, “Divine tier....divine tier....divine soul armaments....are like Regalia!!”

Chapter 508: Unraveling the Seal

Bai Yunfei thought about the Nephrite Throne being one of the ‘Ten Great Regalia’. The Nephrite Throne was a high-heaven tier soul armament, but this item in front of him was even stronger than that....did that mean this was also one of the Ten Great Regalia?!

“Is....is it possible?” Bai Yunfei asked himself as he stared at the cloth, his eyes shining brightly with the possibility, “It might just be one....”

His lips cracked into a smile along with the smug look in his eyes.

Treasure! This was really a treasure! A treasure that couldn’t be any more of a treasure if it tried....

Even if eighteen more people from the Xing came for it, Bai Yunfei would fight for it. It was that worth it.

“But this can’t be considered a ‘treasure’ right now....its sealed, but every lock has a key. As long as I can unseal the seal, then it’ll become a true regalia. But what do I need to unseal this?”

This crucial question came to him. With the cloth sealed, this ‘regalia’ was nothing more than an ordinary piece of cloth.

“Well, I can always study this later. The more important thing is see what happens when I upgrade it.”

The idea of upgrading made him excited. He had never upgraded a ‘regalia’ before.

Holding it in his left hand, Bai Yunfei placed his right hand on top of it, staring grimly at it.

“Upgrade!”

Five hundred points of soulforce was sucked away from him; the amount of soulforce taken from him was by no means ignorable.

Upgrade Successful

[95% SEALED] Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Upgrade Level: +1

Defense: 800

Additional Defense: 100

Soul Compatibility: 1%

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

Bai Yunfei's eyes flew open. This was a pleasant surprise!

"95% sealed!! Then....does that mean upgrading can unseal it?!"

The result of this had been a surprisingly profitable venture. The seal on the cloth could be unraveled by means of upgrading!

Even more surprising—its defenses had been sealed as well! Another 200 points of defense had been added with just one upgrade!

"Upgrading only broke 5% of its seal, but it added 200 points of defense and then another 100 additional points of defense. Hm....if I just upgrade it even more...." Bai Yunfei muttered to himself, feeling his heart start to pound hard against his ribcage.

It wasn't from fatigue, but from his excitement.

Almost impatiently, Bai Yunfei continued to upgrade....

With Bai Yunfei's current strength and equipment, he had roughly ten thousand points of soulforce almost. So by the time he hit +10, Bai Yunfei was feeling out of breath and soulforce (He had failed several times in the process).

Finally....

Upgrade Successful

[25% SEALED] Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Upgrade Level: +10

Defense: 6000

Additional Defense: 2500

Soul Compatibility: 10%

Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to completely deflect a spirit-based attack.

Cooldown of 10 minutes.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

He wasn't all too excited though when he got it to +10. "It's still not unsealed after being upgraded ten times? 25% left.....I only managed to unseal the first effect, the second and third are still sealed.....

"But that +10 additional effect is still really strong!! This....deserves to be called an additional effect of a divine tier soul armament if it can reflect attacks....

"And the defense....is at 8500 in total now! Doesn't this mean to say that even a mid-heaven tier soul armament wouldn't be enough to break through its defense? That's.....crazy."

Bai Yunfei didn't doubt the strength of this item. This equipment was for sure a 'regalia'!!

There had been a change that happened to the cloth when Bai Yunfei was upgrading it, though.

It used to be as big as a large handkerchief, but with each successful upgrade—or maybe it was better to say with each successful unsealing attempt—it grew....even smaller!

The way it grew smaller wasn't equal either. Only two sides of it grew smaller while the other two sides lengthened, meaning that

the cloth went from a handkerchief to a ‘cloth strip’....

Bai Yunfei was skeptical about this. How was he supposed to wear or put it on?? Was it something he had to tie around his face, like a mask? Or something that wraps around the arm? Or maybe it was a type of belly warmer?

The defensive properties of the item could be applied when worn forever, but the equipment and additional effects required the equipment being worn properly in order to be used.

Now that he was at this stage of upgrading, Bai Yunfei had a hint of what it could be. “Guessing from its shape, this is a....scarf?!”

It wasn’t the type of scarf that could cover the entire head, but a strip that could at least cover the forehead.

Bai Yunfei didn’t want to wear the scarf immediately. Instead of that, he took out a relatively large white piece of stone after a moment’s debate.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: None

Equipment Effect 1: Allow the successful upgrade of any equipment +11 and under once.

Equipment Effect 2: Increase the tier of an equipment when crafting by one (Low Heaven tier being the highest).

Cannot be upgraded.

This was the +11 Guaranteed Upgrade Stone!

“+10 Upgrades means there’s only 25% of the seal left. If I keep upgrading, I should be able to unseal it.” Bai Yunfei muttered. He still wanted to continue upgrading, even if there wasn’t the matter of the seal. It was obviously very worth it to use the precious upgrade stones on something like a regalia.

Bai Yunfei placed the two items together and prepared himself for the upgrade. Preparation and a steady hand was the best way to

improve his upgrading chances, or so he learned after his experimentation. All those times spent studying the principles behind upgrading hadn't been wasted, and Bai Yunfei had a good chance about this.

“Upgrade.”

The upgrade stone turned to dust at his thought. It fell from his hands and into the cloth.

Upgrade Successful

[15% SEALED] Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Upgrade Level: +11

Defense: 8000

Additional Defense: 4000

Soul Compatibility: 15%

Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

[SEALED] Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to completely deflect a spirit-based attack.

Cooldown of 10 minutes.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

Bai Yunfei opened his eyes three seconds later, his eyes shining with understanding at the item in his hand.

“Only 15% of that seal left, and the second equipment effect has been unsealed. Now....”

A second later, Bai Yunfei took out basketball sized white stone from his space ring.

This was the only +12 Guaranteed Upgrade Stone he had!

“Upgrade!”

Chapter 509: Soul Sentinel Scarf, a Regalia With a Soul!

.....

By using a +12 Guaranteed Upgrade Stone, Bai Yunfei was able to bring the upgrade level of this regalia to +12.

Like his previous upgrading success, Bai Yunfei didn't open his eyes straight away this time. Instead, he sat there, eyes shut and calm as he concentrated. It wasn't until another minute passed when he opened his eyes, a new look of understanding in them.

A new crucial aspect of the Upgrade Technique had been made known to him, and he was all the more closer to yet another breakthrough in his understanding.

With this new understanding in place, Bai Yunfei's eyes landed upon the equipment in his right hand.

Like before, the equipment shrunk in size again so that it was as wide as two fingers almost, and half a meter in length to form a scarf.

Author Note: I wanted to say a head belt, but that doesn't sound pleasant at all, so it is called scarf, please understand, readers.

“Just as I thought, the seal is completely gone!!” Waves of excitement rushed through Bai Yunfei’s body, his mouth was unable to stop itself from twitching upwards in glee.

“Eleven thousand points of defense, and ten thousand points of additional defense....” He was pleased as punch with this. If not for the stats being right there in front of him to see, Bai Yunfei wouldn’t thought that there was one zero extra.

Twenty-one thousand total points of defense....

If he thought back to Na Lanyin’s mid-heaven tier tortoiseshell and its four thousand points of defense, this piece of cloth in front

of him made that tortoiseshell seem like a piece of crap....

Was there even a soul armament that could break through this??

Unfortunately for Bai Yunfei, this was just a scarf. If it were his soul armor or bracer, he'd be completely unstoppable. A mere two-finger sized scarf was only big enough to wrap around his forehead.

But now if someone wanted to try and stab him through the forehead with a spear, Bai Yunfei didn't have to worry about that anymore.

The seal was completely gone, the three equipment effects free to use, and the new +12 additional effect was....extremely strong!

A flat increase of two hundred percent in spirit-based attacks would make Bai Yunfei unstoppable to anyone at the same level of strength. Unfortunately for him, there wasn't really a way for him to test out the effects of the spirit related attacks unless another Soul King attacked him with one.

After looking at the cloth for a little longer, Bai Yunfei noticed that it didn't look very special. In fact, it looked exactly like an ordinary gray strip of cloth. Bai Yunfei knew better than that. He didn't even have to use the Upgrade Technique to know it was special when he held it.

When Bai Yunfei tried to put his soulforce into it, the scarf started to glow a faint blue light.

“Eh? I see words!”

To Bai Yunfei's surprise, a series of stroke lights were emerging from the scarf, revealing two words on it in blue!

Soul Sentinel!!

“Soul sentinel?” Bai Yunfei said, “Is this the name of it?”

Soul Sentinel. Sentinel not as in the meaning to watch and control another's soul, but to protect it!

All three effects of the scarf had to do with the soul, and each of them had to do with protecting the soul. So that was clearly the meaning behind ‘Soul Sentinel’.

“In that case, why don’t I call you the ‘Soul Sentinel Scarf’?” Bai smiled as he named the scarf in his hand.

“Bzzz!!”

All of a sudden, the scarf started to buzz noisily with sound when it was named!

Perhaps it was because it was unsealed, or perhaps it was because it was ‘summoned’, but there was something within the scarf that was being awakened!!

“Wha—” Bai Yunfei gasped. Not sure what was going on, he sent a sliver of his soul into the scarf.

In the next moment, his eyes flew wide open as his soulsense came rebounding back as if zapped by electricity. This was completely unprecedented for him!

Within this scarf, Bai Yunfei could sense a ‘soul’!

A ‘soul’ was living within this scarf!

.....

The scarf shined continuously with a blue light, but Bai Yunfei was too afraid to make a second attempt to send his soulsense in. This blue light, Bai Yunfei thought, surely had to be from the presence within the scarf.

If Bai Yunfei wasn’t wrong, the blue light coming from the scarf was pulsating slightly, like a heart beat of one’s soul or something....

If not for fear of doing the possible danger, Bai Yunfei probably would’ve dropped the scarf already.

The pulsations came to a slow calm eventually as the soul finally finished waking. Bai Yunfei couldn’t tell if anything else was

changing.

Still unsure of what to do, Bai Yunfei gritted his teeth. Carefully sending another probe of soulsense, he had it go into the scarf once again.

This time, the strange sensation he felt the first time happened again, and then he felt himself get sucked into a ‘mindspace’!

With that, Bai Yunfei was absolutely sure that the scarf housed a ‘soul’ in it! But this soul was extremely chaotic and had no ‘sentience’ to it.

That was still very shocking to Bai Yunfei. He had never seen this before....and yet something new and strange was coming to life in front of him!

The soul within the scarf seemed to notice Bai Yunfei the moment it entered the mindsphere. Then, a soft feeling energy from the soul came up all around him!

Scaring Bai Yunfei, he was about to pull his soulsense back when he realized that this energy didn’t have any hostile feel to it at all. In fact, it looked ‘happy’ and ‘clingy’ even, when it saw him.

Surprised yet again, Bai Yunfei allowed for the energy to wrap over his soulsense.

Even if this was dangerous, the sliver of soulsense Bai Yunfei put in wouldn’t be enough to harm his soul.

The moment when the energy wrapped around Bai Yunfei’s soulsense, it started to twist and coil faster and faster. And before Bai Yunfei could even understand what was going on, Bai Yunfei’s face paled at the next sensation that hit him!

A sliver of his soul had been taken from him!

It wasn’t his soulsense that was taken. It was a part of his soul, the very core of his being!!

This sliver of his soul followed the soulsense Bai Yunfei had into

the scarf, and then joined with that ‘soul’ living within it!

Light shone brighter than before as soon as the two entities combined. A series of complicated runes and script flew across the surface of the scarf as if Bai Yunfei’s soul had been the key to its activation. After the entirety of the scarf had its runes lit up, the markings then faded away and returned back to normal.

From a sliver of his soul being taken to the runes disappearing, everything took place within a matter of a second before finishing.

Bai Yunfei came to realize after that that losing a sliver of his soul didn’t really hurt. It was a strange sensation, like if a part of him was now placed in the scarf.

And just faintly, Bai Yunfei could feel that one sliver of his soul transforming into a pattern of some sort in the scarf....

Another strange sensation popped up into Bai Yunfei’s mind next as he stood there. All of a sudden, Bai Yunfei had the feeling that there was an extremely close bond between him and the scarf....

By now, the things he could sense from the scarf was extremely clear to Bai Yunfei. Within the scarf was a ‘soul’, but it wasn’t capable of thinking or having awareness like any other living being. It was just a ‘spirit’ with instinct.

A regalia that had a....spirit!!

Chapter 510: The Second Lifebound Armament! (End of Book 4)

A living weapon!!

A new term popped into Bai Yunfei's mind.

He didn't know whether or not if his master Zi Jin had told him, or if the transmigrator's memories had come across this situation before.

Bai Yunfei had no idea what this world would even 'call' this, but he himself had an inkling of what he could describe it to be.

A living soul armament.

He had never heard of it before, let alone knowing if such a thing existed or not. Master Zi Jin had never said anything of the sort, but that was perhaps because Zi Jin wasn't strong enough to come across things like those.

When he looked at the Soul Sentinel Scarf, Bai Yunfei had a feeling of apprehension. Something wasn't right. There was a new feeling to this scarf than before. A feeling of familiarity....but he just couldn't figure out what.

Without even knowing it, Bai Yunfei's mind conjured up the stats of the Soul Sentinel Scarf again.

Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Upgrade Level: +12

Defense: 11000

Additional Defense: 10000

Soul Compatibility: 100%

Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to completely deflect a spirit-based attack.

Cooldown of 10 minutes.

+12 Additional Effect: 200% Increase in spirit-based attacks.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

Yeah, nothing changed. Nothing exce—
“100% Soul compatibility!!!” Bai Yunfei did a double-take, staring incredulously at the scarf in his hand.

What in the world?

It clicked then. This strange sensation he was having—he felt it somewhere before.

This was the exact feeling he felt towards the Cataclysmic Seal!!

A 100% soul compatibility meant.....a lifebound armament!!

But how was this possible! The scarf had only 15% when it was unsealed, meaning it wasn’t even at the level of a soulbound armament. How could it suddenly shoot up to 100% and become a lifebound armament!

From what his master Zi Jin told him before, lifebound armaments were extremely hard to find and get. But here he was today, this Soul Sentinel Scarf mysteriously becoming one for him!

“Is it because of the soul in there?” That was Bai Yunfei’s only guess that made sense. It was the only factor that Bai Yunfei could possibly think would matter.

The way how the Soul Sentinel Scarf became his lifebound armament differed greatly with how the Cataclysmic Seal became his lifebound armament.

While true that the Cataclysmic Seal had housed a bit of Bai Yunfei’s soul before, that was when his soul and brick had fused with one another. In comparison, the Soul Sentinel Scard had forcibly taken a sliver of his soul and ‘imprinted’ it onto the scarf. In a way, it felt like that soul had been used to sign a ‘contract’ of sorts.

Even more differently, his soul wasn't in the Cataclysmic Seal.

But in the end, the Soul Sentinel Scarf was still his lifebound armament now. There weren't any bad side effects so far, and Bai Yunfei was disinclined to look to see if there were any problems. Right now, he felt far too out of his depth to be looking into this field of study. If he became stronger and more knowledgeable, the answers he was seeking would naturally come to him.

.....

What Bai Yunfei didn't know was that there was already a precedent of this on the Tianhun continent. In the world of soul cultivators, they called this act the Regalia's Pledge!

Just like Bai Yunfei had guessed, the Soul Sentinel Scarf was one of the Ten Great Regalia!

Aside from the weakest and the strongest, there were no ranking of regalia on their strengths or weaknesses in between.

The Nephrite Throne was the tenth Regalia and as well as the 'weakest' of them. The only reason why it was counted among the Ten Great Regalia was solely due to its unique effect. It wasn't a true 'regalia', as Bai Yunfei could see when he looked at its grade being only a high-heaven.

There was one thing the Nephrite Throne lacked that all the other Regalia did not. It was a 'Regalia' without a spirit.

The reason why the other Regalis were considered Regalias was because of the fact they....had spirit within them!!

Without a spirit living within the Regalia, the Regalia could not be as powerful as it was. It would not be able to go beyond the limits of a heaven tier.

In order for a Regalia's spirit to truly show its strength, the spirit would have to swear fealty to its owner. To swear a Pledge and work for that master!

From antiquity to modern times, the amount of people with these Regalia have been few. And those who had a Regalia Pledged with them were even rarer!

The Regalia's Pledge was meant to be an extremely difficult task, but Bai Yunfei had managed to do so as easily as lifting his hand. The reason behind that was due to the state the Soul Sentinel Scarf had been—the sealed state it was once in.

.....

The Ten Great Regalia appeared more than two millennia ago when Wu Tianhun unified the continent under his rule. Following that, those Regalia with no historical affiliation were disseminated through the continent while those that did remained with.

Throughout the annals of history, the appearance of a Regalia would send waves through the continent, opening it to bloodshed and massacre as people fought for it.

So it was surprising to see a Regalia just fall into Bai Yunfei's hand without a sound.

No one would've seen this coming. Not Bai Yunfei, not Huang Lin from the Beast Taming School, not Yao Tong, and not the head of the Xing, Xing QiuHong....

If the one who first got managed to grab hold of this Regalia before sending it home, Xing Shuangqing, was still alive, he would've vomited three liters of blood if he heard about this.

Four years ago, Xing Shuangqing was one of the few that decided to scout out a certain dangerous spot of land and came across the corpse of a once very strong person. From the state of being that corpse was in, they all surmised that it had been hundreds of years since the person died, but there had been a Regalia on him!

The entire group flew into a rage at that. Turning the entire area over to look for any traces of the Regalia, the group soon fell to internal strife and broke apart. Within the confusion, Xing

Shuangqing was thought to have written down the coordinates of where the Regalia was on a piece of cloth and fled.

It was common in this world to have people kill others for treasure, especially soul cultivators. With more than half their group already dead due to their internal strife, the remaining survivors didn't bother to tell the world of this development and instead chose to chase after the one with the 'treasure map', Xing Shuangqing.

It was at some point during his escape that Xing Shuangqing coincidentally came across Xing Qiugu and entrusted the 'treasure map' to him. Then, without being able to hide or run from his pursuers anymore, Xing Shuangqing finally met his demise....

None of his pursuers accounted for Xing Qiugu coming into the picture. Xing Shuangqing hadn't run back towards the direction of his Xing, so none of his pursuers took them into mind.

In turn, Xing Qiugu entrusted the item over to Xing QiuHong after he returned. At that time, Xing QiuHong had been overjoyed to have a treasure map on his hands. But no matter how hard he tried, he simply couldn't divine the secrets behind the 'treasure map' and thought many a times that his father had been mistaken. Xing QiuHong knew the crime that was to own a treasure, and what calamity would befall his family should it be known to the outside world. So Xing QiuHong obfuscated any information regarding the map and told very little people within the house about it.

For several years, the Beast Taming School and Soul Refining School had also been looking for clues of this Regalia. With their informational network like spiderwebs, the both of them managed to piece their way towards the Xing. Even though the 'credibility' of their information was less than even 'one percent', neither of the two could hardly afford not to look. Many false and true rumors like this spread through the continent many times before....

So the Soul Refining School dispatched Wu Han and Yao Tong, and the Beast Taming School sent Huang Lin to verify the clues.

Neither of the two sides predicted Bai Yunfei to appear. From him killing Wu Han, to the experts of the Xing, then Xing QiuHong himself, taking his ring, beating back Yao Tong, and then killing even Huang Lin!

But the biggest surprise was that the so-called ‘treasure map’ was in fact the Regalia itself!!

Needless to say, no one expected that....

.....

Ignoring the many questions he had, Bai Yunfei opted to tie the scarf over his forehead.

The gray scarf didn’t look special, and neither did it make him look like some kind of hero, but it did at least make him look a little more focused.

From the mysterious sensation he felt from the scarf, Bai Yunfei knew the second and third effects of the scarf was starting to activate. Most effects normally needed to be manually activated, but these two were passive ones and was constantly active.

His soul wasn’t harmed, to his own knowledge of the second effect anyways. He didn’t understand what the third effect meant by ‘soul stabilization rate’ either, but that could come later.

Now that everything was done, Bai Yunfei smiled and then took out a second space ring into his hand.

This was the space ring of Huang Lin....

.....

Prior to Bai Yunfei’s departure from the Crafting School, his master Zi Jin had told him to go to the capital as soon as his training in the Soulbeast Forest was over. He had a letter for Bai Yunfei to give to a friend of his within the capital....

The next day, Bai Yunfei left the small town to head south.
His destination: the national capital of the continent, the Capital!

End of Book Four

At last, I've finished yet another book to this story. As per usual, I (Endless Clouds), will take tomorrow off and reorganize my thoughts on how to start the next Book.

After two years of training, Bai Yunfei has gotten a lot stronger. He will be going to the Capital, a place where all the strong and geniuses gather. What will happen next? Until next time.....

Book 5 - Turmoil in the Capital

Chapter 511: A Sudden Event Outside the Capital

The Heavenly Capital Province stood at the center of the fifty-six provinces of the Tianhun Empire. It was the largest and most prosperous province, and standing at the center of this province was the imperial city, the Capital.

The being with the highest authority within the Tianhun Empire lived within the Capital. The Capital had no lord mayor for obvious reasons since it was the Emperor that oversaw the government of it.

Officials and high-ranking members of the Capital could always be found here. And aside from having the most commoners there, the Capital boasted the most soul cultivators in one area.

Even Soul Ancestors had to watch their steps when they walked into the capital. Countless people of unimaginable strength lived here, and the amount of Soul Kings here alone numbered above the hundreds.

Not many people would go beyond the province of their own birth, let alone three provinces beyond that. The Tianhun Empire was tremendously large, but there were many that dreamed of traveling to see the Capital.

.....

Year 2014 of the Tianhun Calendar. The twentieth day of the eighth month.

The sun was finally starting to rise, and the moon starting to fall.

To the north of the Capital, a white streak of light traversed across the skies like a shooting star to travel to the south as quickly as possible.

At a closer look, a white mastiff could be seen in the white light,

speeding across the skies in a blaze of glory and strength.

If an experienced soul cultivator were to look up and see it, they'd realize that this was a very rare soulbeast, a permafrost mastiff.

And this permafrost mastiff wasn't traveling through the main means of transportation Soul Exalts could do—using elemental energy as platforms to remain in the sky—this mastiff was....flying! Flying without using these platforms! The only reason it was using its four legs was to further increase its velocity through the sky.

It was a class seven soulbeast!!

And even more surprising was the fact that there was a person on top of the permafrost mastiff!

It was being used as a mount!

Not a single soul cultivator wouldn't create a stir at this sight.

It was night time, but the mastiff didn't need to bother about the main roads or even about any other travelers since it was flying.

.....

The one on top of the permafrost mastiff's back was naturally Bai Yunfei. And standing behind him was the miniaturized blue-eyes wyrm, and on his right shoulder was Xiao Qi.

After traveling for half a year, Bai Yunfei had finally made it from the Northern Ridge Province to the Capital in the Heavenly Capital Province.

Bai Yunfei had maintained his training on the way here. He partook in the local customs and terrain when he can, and learned plenty from what he saw.

The reason why he was using the permafrost mastiff to fly now was because of their close proximity to the Capital. They've been traveling nonstop for the last few hours or so now because Bai

Yunfei wanted to find a nice inn in the Capital and rest well for the night.

There were still fifty kilometers left to go to the Capital, but that distance was nothing for the class seven permafrost mastiff.

Bai Yunfei hadn't changed much in half a year. Many soul cultivators found their physical appearances held in stasis when they reached twenty-five. They'd be able to maintain this age for some time, making it hard for others to determine their true age. In short, while one looked like they were twenty-five or twenty-six, it was very much possible that they were in fact thirty to forty years old.

Bai Yunfei hadn't seen any major improvements to his strength either. Even after half a year, Bai Yunfei was still a mid-stage Soul Exalt, but there was still improvements nonetheless. Becoming a late-stage Soul Exalt wasn't too far away. The blue-eyes wyrm was still a peak late-stage class six, but Xiao Qi had a bit of improvement and was now also a peak late-stage class six just like the wyrm, shocking everyone.

There was also the permafrost mastiff Bai Yunfei got from the fourth elder of the Beast Taming School, Huang Lin. Now that he had control over it, Bai Yunfei had to admit it was a great addition to his strength.

Many obstacles and troubles popped up in Bai Yunfei's path the last half year. But with the permafrost mastiff, Bai Yunfei was able to resolve these conflicts with barely any effort.

This was only made possible through the Beast Taming Ring, which Bai Yunfei used to control it. He'd often have Xiao Qi and Xiao Lan try to talk with it, but those never helped much. Not even a peep of a reaction was had from the soulbeast puppet, and the only thing it was capable of doing was obeying commands. Bai Yunfei opted not to try and change anything, especially the slave seal in its body like he did with the thunderfire wolf.

Life felt peaceful to Bai Yunfei. He had nothing to worry about, and no grudges to be afraid of. He could focus freely on his training, living, and traveling to his greatest satisfaction.

Aside from delivering the letter his master entrusted to him, Bai Yunfei didn't have much he wanted to do in the Capital but look around and see what it was like.

Well. If he was there, he wanted to go see one youth. A youth that he owed a favor to from long time ago.

.....

“I should be there soon, right?” Bai Yunfei asked. Thanks to his above-average eyesight, Bai Yunfei was already starting to see the distant outline of a city beyond the horizon.

“Boom!!!”

Suddenly, a faint explosion echoed into the air, surprising him.

Gingerly, Bai Yunfei commanded the mastiff to come to a stop in the air.

The sound he heard just a moment ago had been a little weird. Seemingly, he thought, it felt as though it was supposed to be a lot louder, but something had muffled it.

If not for his above-average perception, Bai Yunfei probably wouldn't have felt it.

“How strange....it's so close by, but why couldn't I feel it?” Bai Yunfei asked. Trying his best to wonder what it was, Bai Yunfei gave up after a while and hurried onwards.

“Hold on!” He came to a stop again to look to his right. “That was a wave of elemental energy!”

He felt a new instance happen again, this time, the feeling was unmistakable!

“Something's up....” Bai Yunfei smiled. He was curious now, he wanted to see what was going on.

Closing his eyes, Bai Yunfei focused. He was trying to figure out where it was coming from. “Over there!”

He turned his head to a nearby mountain to his right.

Thanks to the night, it was very dark still, and the mountain didn’t look like there was anything was happening. It looked for the very most part like a normal mountain. But Bai Yunfei knew that the strange energy he was feeling was coming from there!

Turning the mastiff, Bai Yunfei had it go towards the mountain. He was sure to hide his presence, and the other soulbeasts did the same.

He came to a stop a little over a hundred meters up the mountain. Looking around, Bai Yunfei didn’t see anything strange. But from what he could tell, there was something going on behind the mountain!

The permafrost mastiff slowly inched towards the mountain peak, but when it was about to reach around it, something....changed!

In one swift moment, Bai Yunfei felt the Charm Bracelet around his wrist and the Soul Sentinel Scarf on his forehead shine softly before a strange energy entered his body!

Then at the same time, the entire scenery around him started to twist!!

Bai Yunfei was dazed. Realizing what was going on, Bai Yunfei said aloud, “This is....an illusion!!”

Chapter 512: A Battle Hidden Behind the Illusionary Barrier!

The activation of his Soul Sentinel Scarf was all it took for Bai Yunfei to realize that he was being hit with a spirit-based attack! And with the Charm Bracelet activating, that specified what kind of spirit-based attack it was.

It was an....an illusion!

Bai Yunfei came across a situation like this once before half a year ago. There had been an early-stage Soul Exalt with a rare affinity for illusions and a class five soulbeast with an affinity for illusions as well. Together, they were able to put Bai Yunfei in an illusion where the 'environment' was an insidious and frightful hell where it felt like Bai Yunfei's chest was being stabbed again and again. But with his Soul Sentinel Scarf and Charm Bracelet, the sensations weren't as strong, and the illusion was easily shattered.

Right now, it felt like the world around him was warping in on itself like a false piece of reality. The illusion was unable to ensnare him in it, and now that it was being broken, the reality of the world was showing through it!!

Bai Yunfei had to admit, he was surprised. He hadn't expected the illusion to be found out and broken so quickly, even if it wasn't a very strong illusion (to him). Slightly at ease, Bai Yunfei had the mastiff come down.

They touched onto the ground, but it wasn't until Bai Yunfei made sure it was 'real' ground they touched until Bai Yunfei felt relieved. Thanks to the combined efforts of the Soul Sentinel Scarf and Charm Bracelet, the effects of the illusion was much weaker to Bai Yunfei. He could see what the illusion was trying to show him wasn't all that much different to reality. For example, a giant boulder that was warping a bit in the illusion was there in reality as well.

No. It seemed as though this illusion wasn't trying to 'change' something, but to 'hide' something....

The pulses of elemental energy was getting more and more obvious to Bai Yunfei's senses. As he carefully treaded forward, Bai Yunfei made sure to ready his soulforce just in case he had to fight.

Little by little, Bai Yunfei made his way deeper in. It wasn't until he came to about twenty steps later that he came to an invisible 'barrier'. A barrier that could be passed through to enter a special 'area'.

An 'area' that was completely invisible from the outside area.

"Boom!!"

There was a muffled explosion from beyond the barrier. A large wave of orange light erupted from beyond, but then it broke up the moment it hit the barrier.

From there, Bai Yunfei felt at least ten different sources of soulforce!

There were soul cultivators! Battling! At least a dozen of them!

This was a sight to be surprised about!

Crouching to the ground, Bai Yunfei hid his soulforce even more to try and determine what was going on beyond the barrier.

About a kilometer from the other side, there was an intense battle taking place on the flatlands.

In this battlefield, there were three figures surrounded by at least ten enemies, and on the ground, there were almost another ten corpses!

Bai Yunfei had to suppress a gasp, these people were....late-stage Soul Exalts! The three people surrounded were late-stage Soul Exalts, and the people attacking them were also late-stage Soul Exalts—some of them were even peak late-stage Soul Exalts!

Bai Yunfei had never seen a battle like this before!

There were another three people about a hundred steps to the side closer to Bai Yunfei. One of the three persons had their arms and legs bound together from his spot on the ground, and there were another two standing above him. From their clothes, Bai Yunfei surmised these two people were from the same group the other three people were.

That was what Bai Yunfei saw.

It was with great relief that Bai Yunfei realized no one had noticed him here yet. With how chaotic the influx of energy was, Bai Yunfei's soulforce was obfuscated, and the soulforce of the three soulbeasts were low enough to be considered invisible. So that left Bai Yunfei free to pay attention to the battle without fear of detection.

Bai Yunfei swept his eyes across the battlefield, taking in everything that could be seen, and gawking as his eyes registered what those things were.

The battle taking place was tremendous and conspicuous without a doubt. But when he was on the other side of the barrier a minute ago, he hadn't sensed a thing almost!

It was because of the 'illusion barrier'. The strength of the illusion was enough to hide everything within a kilometer radius of this mountain.

Bai Yunfei could tell that this barrier was obscuring the area within this dome, hiding it from the eyes and senses of any outsider.

And the reason why he felt like everything was 'fine' and 'normal' before was solely because of the effects of this illusion barrier.

And not only was it hiding the visual reality from the outside, it was masking up the outflux of soulforce and elemental energy!

Bai Yunfei hadn't even heard of an illusionary construct capable

of something like this before.

The ones who were powerful and knowledgeable enough to place down an illusionary barrier like this had to be the people currently surrounding the other three. And with them having late-stage and peak late-stage Soul Exalts, a feat like this wasn't all too impossible....

Still awed by what he was in, Bai Yunfei made sure to take a look at the battle still going on farther away.

Aside from the two people guarding the other person, there were twelve people fighting the three. Of those twelve, seven of them were late-stage Soul Exalts while the other five were peak late-stage Soul Exalts.

But even against such a powerful force like this, the three late-stage Soul Exalts weren't losing. They were in fact holding their own quite well!

From what Bai Yunfei could see, the three people fighting were all quite young. The tallest of the three was shining furiously with orange light, meaning he had an affinity for earth. He held a long [zhanmadao](#), and with the orange light covering his entire person, he looked like a stone giant. Roaring loudly as he swung his weapon around, the man was able to create gulches in the ground with each swing and intimidate his enemies from getting too close to him. And with his armor providing a substantial amount of defense, the man looked all but impervious to damage.

To his right was a young man bathed in green and blue light; this one held an affinity for both wind and water! And from how fluidly the man was swapping between the two elements to attack, this person was a genius in bi-elemental usage.

This one had no weapon in his hand, choosing to use his hands for close combat. His footwork was strange with how he seemed to flow from place to place like a drunkard. With each time he leaned his body to dodge an attack, his arms would fly out in surprising

ways to hit his enemies. And with this way of attack, he was completely able to fight the four people surrounding him without getting hurt!

The third person wore white robes was being protected by the two fighters. He had no elemental energy radiating from his body, but there was a strange flow of energy coming from him, so that none of his three enemies dared to get close to him.

Every so often, the two people protecting him looked over at him, as if afraid of any danger befalling him.

It was clear to see these twelve people were fighting not to kill their opponents, but to capture them like the one back there. Elsewise, the three wouldn't be able to fight for as long as they did.

But then, the man with the zhanmadao suddenly roared loudly before stabbing his weapon into the ground!

Chapter 513: Lending a Hand

“Boom!!!”

The moment the giant zhanmadao stabbed into the ground, the orange light from the blade disseminated into the ground in waves, trembling and fracturing it as it spread in every direction around it!

The elemental earth from the blade spread through the ground shortly before erupting from it to form a barrier of blades to surround the enemies!

In order to evade being hit, the twelve Soul Exalts leapt into the air.

It was then that the young man in white flew into motion. His soulforce erupted from his body as he swung his right hand, a folding fan suddenly appearing in it. Now armed, the young man swung his fan several times at the airborne enemies!

What came out from the fan wasn’t wind, but....blades as black as night!

At least twenty of these black blades flew through the air, each of them traveling silently through the air!

The timing of his attacks had been extremely precise. It was as though he and the earth-affinity soul cultivator had planned this beforehand, and without trouble, the twenty blades traveled silently towards the enemies!

None of the twelve looked terrified by the blades, though they each immediately summoned elemental energy to their feet to form platforms. Kicking off from it, they were each able to fly off in a different direction to evade.

Their reactions were fast, but not unexpected by the young man in white, who sent another leading volley.

There were several shouts of pain as several of the blades connected. Many of the people had dodged, but there were four that weren't so lucky!

Of the four, three of them were cut at the waist. One of them—a peak late-stage Soul Exalt—had both his legs cut off at the knees!

It was only a single move, but the young man's strength was terrifying!

But it was too soon for the remaining people to feel safe. Taking advantage of their airborne status, the two other young men with the one in white lashed out, striking at the ones closest to them.

The earth affinity soul cultivator roared, bringing his giant sword up into the air. With the blade being extended another ten meters by his soulforce, he swung it down, sending a wave of elemental earth at the nearest one, cutting the person in two from head to toe!

Likewise, the Soul Exalt with a dual affinity for water and wind lashed out, a fist slamming into the throat of one enemy. Eyes bulging out in abject fear, the man hit by the punch flew backwards and back down to the ground where he didn't get back up.

“Ah!” There was another shout as the man in white slashed out his fan again, sending a black wave of energy at the legless Soul Exalt. This time, the Soul Exalt wasn't able to avoid being cut in half again.

In just a matter of moments, the dozen enemies was reduced to six!!

The three rendezvous together when they each killed another one of their enemies, the one in white in the middle. Each of the three looked tired it seemed, their energy nearing their limits now.

But there were still two late-stage and four peak late-stage Soul Exalts left! The exhaustion of the three only encouraged the

remaining six in attacking. And without pause, the six flew at them again for a new assault!

The three youths were utterly spent. Their defenses were done half-heartedly, and if nothing were to change the predicament they were in soon, it would probably be another two minutes before they would fall and be captured.

.....

Bai Yunfei's eyes widened when he saw the black energy come out from the youth in white. "That's....that's the Spatial Edge! He's a space-affinity soul cultivator!!"

Of all things, Bai Yunfei wasn't expecting to come across a soul cultivator with the extremely rare space element!

It was then that the man in white whirled around in the direction of Bai Yunfei, allowing him to get a good glance at the youth's face.

In the moment he saw, Bai Yunfei's eyes registered the person's facial appearances, widening in surprise as he did. "It's him!!"

The remaining six were nearly upon the three men now.

Bai Yunfei's eyes shined uncertainty for a moment as he debated what to do. Then, a second later, he flew out like an arrow with his body ablaze with red light!

"Roar!!!"

The earth-shaking roar that erupted in the area startled all those fighting up ahead. From the three youths to the six people on the other side, they all paused to look at the source of it.

And since Bai Yunfei no longer cared about hiding his soulforce, he was the first to pique all nine combatants' attention

But the one who roared wasn't Bai Yunfei, it was the one that was even faster than he was. The permafrost mastiff!

The class seven soulbeast had revealed itself, staring down everyone within the area with its crimson-red eyes and bringing

down a domineering amount of presence onto the area. With a class seven soulbeast here, everyone suddenly looked despondent.

But the reason behind their despondence wasn't because of them fearing their lack of strength, it was because of a....mental attack!!

Under Bai Yunfei's command, the permafrost mastiff unleashed an unique attack of a class seven soulbeast, a mental attack!

Due to the amount of enemies there, the attack used wasn't very strong. But even despite that, the six Soul Exalts paled in the face as the attack took effect on them, their fear sapping away at their bodies and their soulforce starting to shake—some of them starting to lose even control of it.

Using the permafrost mastiff to take care of this fight was the fastest way to resolve this problem!

The next thing the six Soul Exalts registered in their eyes was a streak of white as it blurred by. With a bang, the white light came to a stop right besides the three youths, a decently-sized crater where it stood. When the smoke cleared up, it was revealed to be the permafrost mastiff standing there, a headless corpse in its jaws—it had killed the strongest Soul Exalt there!

Before the peak late-stage Soul Exalt could even react, the permafrost mastiff had died to its claws and jaws!

“Chirp!!”

A bolt of violet and green followed behind the mastiff before five separate blades of space tore through the area and towards five different enemies.

“Ah! Ah! Ah!”

Three blood-curdling shrieks were heard next. The group of five hadn't even had time to properly register how one of them had died to the mastiff before another three of them were struck dead by the Spatial Edges!

All that remained were two peak late-stage Soul Exalts. Managing to avoid death by dodging the Spatial Edges, the two immediately took off in a quick retreat!

Their courage had been shattered! Before Bai Yunfei could even properly appear and take part in the battle, four more of the six had been killed, and the remaining two were fleeing for their lives!

“Pcht!!”

The moment when the person on the right turned to run, a crimson-red spear had run through him!

“Boom!!” The peak late-stage Soul Exalt hadn’t even realized he had been stabbed through the chest when the spear unleashed an explosion and scattered his body into pieces!

“Roar!!”

Another furious roar was heard as the blue-eyes wyrm lashed out at the same moment the Spatial Edges were fired from Xiao Qi. Transforming in a blaze of blue light as it flew into the air, the now giant-sized wyrm went after not the last survivor, but....the ground towards the two late-stage Soul Exalts keeping watch over the immobile person!

There was a mighty crash as the blue-eyes wyrm came down onto the two Soul Exalts. Having been distracted by the mental attack of the permafrost mastiff, the two Soul Exalts had failed to realize the wyrm was above them and died as a result!

That left only one last peak late-stage Soul Exalt left. Shooting off to the left, he moved towards the direction of the illusionary barrier in his attempt to flee.

His eyes were filled with joy as he approached the barrier. But then, a blur appeared right in front of him as the permafrost mastiff came to greet him face-to-face.

And without any further resistance, the mastiff brought its paw down onto the man’s chest and pushed him down.

“Bang!!”

The man smashed against the ground, creating a crater as he did. Blood splashed out from his mouth from the impact, but the man was very much alive.

Bai Yunfei had commanded the permafrost mastiff to capture him alive for interrogation.

.....

In less than a minute, the eight enemies were all dead or dealt with!

Bai Yunfei nodded to himself in satisfaction at the still alive person in the crater. Turning around, he walked towards the three dumbfounded youths.

He looked to the one in white robes first, a cordial smile on his lips as he spoke, “We meet again, Zheng Kai....”

Chapter 514: Meeting Zheng Kai

A very long time ago in Talus City, Bai Yunfei was only an ordinary young boy when he came across what was his very first instance of danger and crisis. There had been a young man from the Capital who helped him out then. The young man had only said a few simple words, but those words had saved Bai Yunfei's life.

Back then, Bai Yunfei wasn't even a soul cultivator. But he made a promise. One day, he vowed, he'd repay the favor when he was strong enough.

Six years had passed since that day, and Bai Yunfei was no longer that weak commoner he once was. Today, he stood proud as a mature and strong soul cultivator, and that promise had never been forgotten by him.

In the few short words spoken to him, Bai Yunfei knew that his benefactor was Zheng Kai. From later days, Bai Yunfei learned he was the second son of the house of Zheng, one of the Five Great Houses.

One of the major reasons why Bai Yunfei came to the Capital was to hopefully find a chance to go meet him.

So it was completely unexpected to meet him here of all places rather than inside the Capital....

That's right. The person in white right in front of Bai Yunfei's eyes was none other than Zheng Kai!

Six years had passed since the two last met, but Bai Yunfei recognized him still. Zheng Kai didn't change at all.

And that was why Bai Yunfei was so unhesitant to charge out and help fight off those enemies.

He hadn't any idea why there'd be anyone that'd want to capture Zheng Kai and his friends, but if Zheng Kai was in danger, then Bai

Yunfei wouldn't hesitate to come out and fight, even if it was to his benefit or detriment....

Author Note: Hem hem. Zheng Kai is a character from many many chapters ago, so many readers will have probably forgotten about him. Please refer to chapter five and six.

.....

"Zheng Kai, we meet again...."

Bai Yunfei turned to him with a smile.

"Eh?"

The three men stiffened at Bai Yunfei's words, Zheng Kai looking the most surprised out of the three of them, "You....you know me?!"

None of the three were really recovered from the ordeal they just went through. They had all been despairing at the danger they were in and hadn't expected reinforcements to suddenly appear and save them. But when it did, they were all relieved.

Zheng Kai studied Bai Yunfei with a still surprised eye. His mind was hard at work trying to figure out just who this mysterious savior was.

His two companions were looking to Bai Yunfei and then back to Zheng Kai, unsure of what to say. They were waiting for Zheng Kai to say something and were obviously curious to hear the relationship between the two.

But Zheng Kai couldn't put his finger on it. His eyebrows knitted tighter and tighter the harder he thought, but he just couldn't figure it out. "Friend," he gave up, "Do we....know each other?"

He couldn't be blamed for not remembering. What happened in Talus City had been life-changing for Bai Yunfei, but not for Zheng Kai, who had only said and did the things he did on a whim. It was a minor interlude of his life that only really affected Bai Yunfei,

and the lasting effects of the memory would only be long enough to last for a short amount of time instead than six whole years.

Bai Yunfei didn't mind, though. "Perhaps you don't remember, lord Zheng, but we met six years ago in Talus City of the Azure Cloud Province. We were at a place called the Beast Coliseum, my name is....Bai Yunfei!"

"Six years ago?" Zheng Kai queried, "Azure Cloud Province.....Talus City.....the Coliseum...?"

Those four phrases spun around his mind as he thought. Savoring each word as if to try and recall lost memories, Zheng Kai's eyes suddenly widened in surprise, "Bai Yunfei?! I remember now! You're that person from the Coliseum! You're Bai Yunfei! "

His eyes widened even more at the realization, as if he couldn't believe just what he was seeing or remembering.

Likewise, Bai Yunfei was pretty surprised that Zheng Kai even remembered any of that.

"Haha, so you do remember, lord Zheng. I am that same Bai Yunfei, the one you helped save from trouble. I've never forgotten the kindness you showed me ever since." Bai Yunfei bowed politely to Zheng Kai.

"Is....is it really you?! You were....you were just a...." Zheng Kai was thunderstruck. Now that he could remember, Zheng Kai could distinctly recall that Bai Yunfei hadn't even fully awakened to his soulforce when they met. So how was he so strong now....

Try as hard as he might, Zheng Kai simply couldn't make the connection between the young boy he saved six years ago to the man who saved him here today.

"Bai Yunfei?! You said you're Bai Yunfei? The very same one from the rumors, the one from the Crafting School? That Bai Yunfei?"

A hoarse voice cried out just then; it was the earth type Soul Exalt

that had spoken.

Bai Yunfei turned to look at him. The man was no longer wearing his stone armor, revealing his sturdy physique. He stood at about half a head taller than Bai Yunfei and was quite well-proportioned. With his short hair and sharp eyes, the man looked like a very straightforward and honest young man.

Zheng Kai had been focusing on the ‘six years’ part when he was trying to remember who Bai Yunfei was, but hearing his name had also caused him to think of another ‘rumor’.

The very same rumor everyone on the continent had already heard about.

The rumors said that there was a new genius from the Crafting School named Bai Yunfei. Three years ago, his actions at Praestia Pass astounded everyone there and contributed to his fame. But then when people expected to see more, he vanished. Just like the short appearance he made back in the Forest Pass Province, his impromptu disappearance led to many people forgetting about him.

Bai Yunfei nodded, “I am indeed a student of the Crafting School.”

The tall man’s eyes gleamed brightly. “Ah Zheng,” He glanced over to Zheng Kai, “never thought that you’ve a friend like that!”

Zheng Kai’s eyes grew even wider when he heard Bai Yunfei confirm his identity. But while he was thinking, Bai Yunfei pointed a finger to the tied up person farther away, “Is....that your friend? We should untie him first, perhaps?”

Everyone blinked.

Looking over to where Bai Yunfei was pointing, they all realized with a start just what they were here for to begin with. Thanks to Bai Yunfei’s appearance, they had all forgotten about the tied up person.

“Haha! My bad my bad!! Nearly forgot about him, fourth brother, your second brother is here to save you!”

Zheng Kai laughed in embarrassment. Racing off towards the tied up person still glaring at them, he was quickly followed by his two other friends and Bai Yunfei.

Chapter 515: Four Lords of the Capital

From what Bai Yunfei could see, the tied up person in front of them was looking quite scared—a little more scared than before Bai Yunfei had appeared maybe with how white his face was.

The reason behind that was the blue-eyes wyrm.

Not even a meter in front of him was a single ten-meter wide ‘footprint’.

The people guarding him from before once stood there, but when the blue-eyes wyrm fell from the skies, the two of them disappeared without a trace, and the craters from the footprint was now just barely any distance away from his nose, scaring him quite badly.

Even though the blue-eyes wyrm was a lot smaller than before, the male was still scared out of his skin.

Zheng Kai was the first to reach him. Cutting through the ropes in one fluid motion, Zheng Kai placed a hand onto him and transmitted his soulforce into the acupoints of his friend to unblock it.

This fatty had only the strength of a Soul Ancestor, but the reason why he couldn’t move was because of the fact that his soulforce circulation had been forcibly stopped.

He leapt up to his feet the moment he recovered, the fat on his skin trembling with his movements, “Motherf*cking sh*t! I thought I was going to die for sure!” He announced.

The male spread his arms wide when he saw the three unharmed friends of his, “Haha, my brothers! Good thing you’re not harmed, I wouldn’t ever be able to face myself otherwise, even if they flayed all the fat on me!”

He was quite clearly trying to liven up the mood with a joke, but the fear in his eyes was still quite clearly there.

Zheng Kai and the other two smiled and nodded though, choosing not to say anything. They dodged the bear hug offered and instead allowed him to tap his fist to their chests as a friendly greeting between brothers.

Bai Yunfei was just then walking up to them, allowing Zheng Kai the opportunity to introduce him, “Haha, brother Bai, let me introduce you to my three good brothers.”

He pointed to the tall one first, “This is our oldest, Huang Bin.”

Bai Yunfei quirked an eyebrow as if remembering something, but he nodded his head anyways.

Zheng Kai pointed his finger next to the frail-looking young man with two elements, “He’s our third brother, Chen Qiankun.”

Then before Zheng Kai could even get the the next person, the fatty raced forward to introduce himself, “Haha! My turn! I’m the fourth brother, Jin Manlou! Brother Bai, is it? Thanks for saving me, I really can’t thank you enough!”

Bai Yunfei cupped his hands to everyone there, “You must be the Four Lords of the Capital. This one has heard of you all before, I never thought that I’d meet you four in person. It’s nice to meet you all...”

“Pah, Four Lords of the Capital? What a bullsh*t nickname, none of us never wanted those nicknames to begin with.” Jin Manlou waved his hand, “Brother Bin,” he looked to Huang Bin, “should we start heading back now? This place is a little unordinary, so we should let our families come deal with it.....”

Huang Bin’s face hardened a bit at that. Looking all around, he nodded, “We should. It’s a little inappropriate to stay here, the sooner we get back, the better. Brother Bai, you should come with us to the Capital, we can thank you there.”

“That’s right,” Zheng Kai spoke, “why don’t you come with us, brother Bai?”

“That’s fine with me,” replied Bai Yunfei, “I was planning to enter the Capital anyways. It’ll save me the trouble of not being familiar with the place.”

The environment around the group suddenly start to warp a bit as the illusion finally started to fade, revealing parts of the real world around them.

“This is....an illusion!!”

Zheng Kai cried out.

The more the barrier started to warp, the more the illusion started to fade away. Now that the group was starting to focus, they saw a streak of green fly through the place. Each time it swooped down to the ground for a moment and back up into the air, the illusion would fade even more.

After a few repetitions of this, the illusion finally crumbled completely, revealing the night sky of the true world to the group. Shortly afterwards, the green streak of light flew towards Bai Yunfei.

It was Xiao Qi.

Several balls of green light floated around Xiao Qi as it flew towards Bai Yunfei. In the light, they looked like stones of some kind that emanated a strange type of energy.

As Zheng Kai and the others looked on in surprise, Xiao Qi touched down on the ground in front of Bai Yunfei and dropped the stones for him to place into his space ring.

The four brothers looked at each other as if thinking of the same thing, but none of them said anything about Bai Yunfei’s strange actions.

Returning to its regular small size, Xiao Qi came to a perch onto Bai Yunfei’s right shoulder. Realizing something, the four brothers turned around to look at half-human-sized thing come running towards around the area, holding something in its arms.....it was

the blue-eyes wyrm!

Whenever it came to a stop near a corpse, the wyrm would grab hold of the corpse's space ring before moving onto the next. Swiftly and smoothly, the wyrm managed to extract all the space rings of the dead soul cultivators, even the ones of the crushed two it killed earlier....

But what the four did notice was that the wyrm was collecting only the space rings of the ones Bai Yunfei and his soulbeasts had killed, and not the ones the four killed.

The blue-eyes wyrm returned with a total of eight space rings. Running up to Bai Yunfei, it looked at Bai Yunfei as if pleased about something.

Bai Yunfei smiled before taking the space rings from it.

“.....” The four were speechless, wasn't there something wrong with this situation right here?

There were three soulbeasts right by Bai Yunfei's side, they realized!!

That giant mastiff had already returned to a highly 'adorable' shape of a small white 'dog', but they all knew just what the dog really was. A class seven soulbeast! If they hadn't seen the soulbeast and its true strength before, they surely wouldn't have made the connection between that and the loveable small dog in front of them.

“The class seven soulbeast has to be the one he's contracted to. There's very little Soul Exalts that have a class seven soulbeast contracted with them, but then, what is he doing with the other two soulbeasts then?”

The mystery that was Bai Yunfei grew even deeper on their minds now....

“Zheng Kai, what should we do with this one?” Bai Yunfei pointed to the still alive soul cultivator.

“I’m sure the Capital will send someone over in time. Let’s have them deal with it.” Zheng Kai spoke. He walked up to the soul cultivator, and with a few expert jabs of his finger, the incapacitated man’s acupoints were all clogged, preventing him from moving or killing himself.

Though the illusionary barrier dampened the battle residue of the Soul Exalts, the permafrost mastiff’s aura wouldn’t be so easily stopped, meaning it wouldn’t be long before someone from the Capital would notice and send someone over.

And Zheng Kai was right. Just a few moments later, Bai Yunfei looked to the left, “Ah, someone’s here....”

Several streaks of light came touching down from the direction Bai Yunfei looked towards, but not before Huang Bin and the others stared at him strangely. Bai Yunfei had been the first to notice them.

There were three streaks of light from the Capital. They flew over to where Bai Yunfei and the others were, and Zheng Kai was the first to identify who they were, “Eh? Brother Bin, your second uncle is here!”

Huang Bin gave a surprised chuckle, “Haha, that makes things simpler. I’ll make the report to the seniors and then we can all leave.”

He leapt into the air after that to reach the three elders.

As the elders approached, Bai Yunfei noticed that the three elders were all Soul Kings, their auras powerful to the senses.

Up in the air, Huang Bin bowed to the three before quickly relating what had happened to them four. As he did, the three elders looked slightly surprised, but one of the three had a furious expression on his face. That one had to be Huang Bin’s second uncle.

Huang Bin pointed a finger to the still alive prisoner on the

ground, and then to Bai Yunfei, making sure to speak a few words more about him before bowing and returning to the ground.

“We can all leave now. They’ll take care of the rest.” Huang Bin spoke.

Everyone nodded their heads. Bai Yunfei watched as Zheng Kai and the others waved their right hands to take out a flying sword. Even the weakest one there, Jin Manlou, had one.

“Brother Bai, do you....”

Zheng Kai turned his head to Bai Yunfei, a question halfway formed on his lips before Bai Yunfei took out his Tempest Sword.

.....

Flying through the air on a flying sword was naturally a lot faster than traveling on their own soulforce. In less than half an hour, five streaks of light came to a stop in front of a giant city gate, revealing Bai Yunfei and the others.

“Brother Bai, the Capital forbids anyone from using flying soul armaments within its boundaries. If it’s not any trouble, we’ll travel the rest of the way on foot.” Zheng Kai explained.

“Ah, yes then. Thank you for leading the way.”

“Haha!! Today really scared me out of my mind! Let’s head over to my Hundred Aliments for a meal, my treat!” Jin Manlou chuckled heartily.

“Of course you’re treating, you really think we’d pay for our own meals after today? Better bring out your God Intoxicating Wine for us to drink.” Chen Qiantan waved his empty wine pot merrily.

“You only ever think about my God Intoxicating Wine, third brother! Haha, fine, whatever! Since you shed so much blood for me today, I’ll let you drink as much as you want!!”

The four laughed to one another as Bai Yunfei followed from behind. He rarely interrupted the conversation and instead chose

to look around the place in wonder at the sights of the Capital.

The eighteen year old him never would've imagined that he'd be able to come to the Capital.....

It was a prosperous and magnificent place of hidden dangers. Just what kind of stories would he be able to find here?

Chapter 516: Friends Well Worth Having

There is a grand restaurant within the Capital that often saw to a great amount of customers and such during its normal business hours. But today, it was a little more quiet than usual, and not even a single customer was to be seen on the first floor.

It was the expansive second floor that had the only customers of today. The floor had all sorts of waitresses and waiters lined up at the walls, and a constant stream of delicious cuisine and drink was brought onto the floor.

“Haha! Come, brother Bai, let us toast! It was with your assistance that we four brothers evaded danger! We won’t ever forget this, if you’ve ever need the help of Jin Manlou, then all you have to do is ask! As long as I’m capable, I’ll do it!”

A veritable mountain of food was being placed on top of the dining table, and only five men were gathered there to eat it. One of the diners—a fat young man—wore an exquisite gold robe as he raised his crystal glass up into the air to toast to the plain-clothed male in front of him. There was a great look of appreciation in the fatty’s eyes as he made his speech, sounding earnest and excited.

“There’s no need to be so polite, brother Jin, it wasn’t anything major. I’ve said it before, Zheng Kai saved me once, so it was only right for me to return the favor.”

Bai Yunfei smiled, though he raised his cup up to toast. His face was slightly flushed, though that would return to normal in time. With his current strength, it wouldn’t take long for his soulforce to flush the alcohol out from his system despite his intolerance for it. With that, Bai Yunfei was free to drink and be drunk unless he didn’t want to be.

Zheng Kai and the others had led Bai Yunfei to the Hundred Aliments a little after they entered the Capital. With a gesture from Jin Manlou, he had the restaurant kindly pay for the meals

and escort the other diners elsewhere while his group was led to the second floor to eat.

Bai Yunfei was by no means a foodie or expertise on the fine dining of foods. He had his fair share of food from steamed buns to other meals from decent restaurants on his travels and delicacies, but today, Bai Yunfei had to admit the food he once called ‘good-tasting’ before had absolutely nothing on the food he was eating here today.....

Prior to eating, Zheng Kai and the others pardoned themselves for a moment to freshen up. The battle had them looking worse for wear, and now that they were all refreshed and redressed, Bai Yunfei could clearly see their faces in their normal times.

Zheng Kai looked completely like what a confident but easy-going young lord would look like. His long hair was tied neatly behind his head, his skin smooth and lustrous, and his face handsome enough to give more than enough credence to the ‘rumors’ of him being a lady-killer. But Bai Yunfei had to admit, he didn’t see any traces of reason why he was called the ‘Sex Lord’. Zheng Kai right now looked very much like a free-minded heroic young man.

Huang Bin looked very dignified, just like a respectable older brother. The one known as the ‘Temper Lord’ didn’t talk much, but he did give Bai Yunfei the feeling of being a ‘heroically upright’ and ‘straightforward’ person that would treat people right and the other way around.

Chen Qiantan had hair that reached his shoulders, and a face that wasn’t all too bad, though he spoke very little. As soon as he sat down, in fact, he took a large vat of wine and began to drink from it, thus earning his name of ‘Wine Lord’.

The last one to speak of was ‘Avarice Lord’ Jin Manlou. The young lord of the empire’s most richest family. Bai Yunfei had a decent impression of him, as he was a great speaker and very

considerate of others, though Bai Yunfei did have the feeling of him being a flatterer at best and a person who hide his intentions behind a smile at worst. Even with Bai Yunfei who wasn't good with speaking with others, he felt quite at peace talking to Jin Manlou.

Their conversation hadn't been very long yet, but Bai Yunfei had learned a decent deal about their personalities as a whole when they talked about the day. It was only a simple conversation, but Bai Yunfei learned from them that Jin Manlou had been kidnapped by someone earlier that day. The other three were given a message to come out without help, and even though they all knew it was a trap, the three went anyways. To Bai Yunfei, that spoke a lot about their persons.

But Bai Yunfei knew there was more to the story than just that. A kidnapping of a person like Jin Manlou like that never was, but with Bai Yunfei not being very close to the four, he didn't dare ask for more details.

"Ah, brother Bai, now that you're in the Capital, where do you plan to stay? Why not stay at my place if you don't have anywhere else? All you need to do is but ask." Zheng Kai smiled.

Thinking about it, Bai Yunfei nodded his head, "If it's not too much trouble, lord Zheng. I don't know anyone in the capital, so it would be my honor to stay at your residence."

Zheng Kai waved his hand. "No need to sound so polite, brother Bai, just call me by my name and treat me like a friend like you would anyone else. Since you're new to the Capital, we four can take you here and there. There's plenty to see and do here, I'm sure you'll love it here."

"That's right!" Jin Manlou piped up, "Allow me to do the honors and guarantee your satisfaction, brother Bai! Tomorrow, we should...."

The doors to the second floor suddenly opened up, revealing a

stern-faced man as he walked in.

Jin Manlou looked incensed by this interruption, “What’s the meaning of this?!” He stood up. “I had orders that no one should be allo—”

Since his back was facing the door, he hadn’t seen who it was that came in. His words died in his mouth when he turned around and saw an elderly person standing there, “A—ah,” he gulped, “uncle Wu, what brings you here?”

The one who came in had been an ashen-haired old man. He was dressed in the robes of an attendant, but his aura was absolutely overwhelming to the senses.

“Soul King!” Bai Yunfei appraised with a wide eye.

Not even sparing Bai Yunfei a glance, the old man nodded to Jin Manlou, “The Lord has instructed me to escort you home, young master.”

“Er....”

Seeing him hesitate, the elder continued, “The Lord knows about what happened today. Seeing this is no trivial matter, it is best that we return now, young master.”

He eyed Huang Bin and the others and nodded, “I came across the men of the Huang and Chen on my way here. They should be here soon to take the young masters back with them.”

A series of footsteps came to greet the ears of the inhabitants quickly afterwards. And then, the previously spacious room began to grow quite crowded.

Needless to say, the men from both the Huang and Chen houses came by just like the elderly man said they would. Because of their arrivals, Huang Bin and Chen Qiantan stood up with helpless looks on their faces when they looked at each other.

“That’ll be enough for today, Zheng Kai. You bring brother Bai

back with you, we'll meet another day.” Huang Bin whispered to Zheng Kai.

.....

The group left almost as quickly as they came. When Huang Bin and the others left, all that remained was Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai. Bai Yunfei had been watching the entire procession happen in front of him with a stunned expression; the ones who came to take the three of them were all Soul Kings!

Zheng Kai stood up after that. “Well!” He sighed, “Since they all left, we should be heading back to othen. This way, brother Bai....”

Chapter 517: Illusion Stone

To the eastern parts of the Capital stood a magnificent manor. Two giant stone lions adorned the light red-colored gates to the mansion, adding to the already great aura to the place.

Zheng Manor.

This place was the residence to one of the Five Great Houses, the house of Zheng, and by extension, Zheng Kai.

Bai Yunfei sat in the guest rooms of the west side of the manor. Seated next to the table there, Bai Yunfei held a fist-sized rock in his hand.

He had been in this manor for an hour already when Zheng Kai had the servants and maids prepare a guest room for Bai Yunfei before leaving in a hurry. Bai Yunfei knew that was probably due to him having to report to his seniors and report what happened today.

Bai Yunfei hadn't any interest in seeing what Zheng Kai had to do, so he decided to rest in his room and look through the space rings of the people he killed today. The first thing he looked at was the strange stones Xiao Qi found and brought to him.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: High Earth

Equipment Effect: Create an illusion a hundred meters in radius at largest.

Effects become stronger the smaller in area it is.

Effect can be stacked.

Upgrade Requirement: 110 Soulpoints

The stats of this 'stone' made Bai Yunfei's eyes shine with excitement.

"An illusion type equipment!!" He surmised. A stone with stats like that would never fail to excite him.

Back in the illusionary barrier, Bai Yunfei had found it weird that there was an illusion in place, but no caster there. To him, that meant there was some sort of soul armament that was capable of erecting an illusion and thus why he sent Xiao Qi to investigate the root of the illusions. Through their soul bond, Xiao Qi wasn't affected by the illusions either and so finding the stones hadn't been too hard of a task for the bird.

When Bai Yunfei didn't sense any type of effect from it, Bai Yunfei decided to send his soulforce into it and see what would happen.

The previously jet-black stones started to then shine with a prismatic light the moment his soulforce touched it. It wasn't a strong light, but it was hypnotic and even Bai Yunfei felt slightly mesmerized by the light.

Much to Bai Yunfei's surprise, the light hadn't been too large, spreading to about ten meters in radius around him at most. At his command, the light stopped growing, and with another thought, the environment around him started to look fake.

"This counts as activating its effect?" Bai Yunfei muttered, "It feels a little weak for having an illusion, but there's no actual illusion in place. What happens if I continue?"

Curious, Bai Yunfei gathered even more soulforce into the stone to try and 'manipulate' the scenery around him.

At his command, the area around him started to twist a little bit. The table was the first to disappear before the rest of the room followed. Like ripples of water, the area around him churned a bit before slowly returning back to normal as the area around him changed.

The floors beneath him were riddled with potholes and the wall to his left was dilapidated. The ceiling window had long since been removed by someone, though Bai Yunfei knew not who took it. The night sky was shining overhead, and in front of him was a

flimsy bed with one corner of the bed being shorter than the others, necessitating the need of a brick to uphold it.

Bai Yunfei's body shivered slightly at the sight, his eyes shining with remembrance at the sight, tears forming underneath them....

This sight in front of him was....the place he once called 'home' for nine lonely years!!

The place where so many memories were had, the place he hadn't thought about for a very long time!

It had been a warm and lively place when he was young many years ago with his mother and grandfather. But for nine years after them....only he was left living in that house. On the bed, Bai Yunfei watched as a frail body laid on there, shivering and crying under the flimsy sheets to grasp at the cloud-shaped pendant around the neck.

He closed his eyes, wiping away at the tears pooled around them and sucking in a deep breath. The area around him altered again, and two seconds later, Bai Yunfei was back in the guest room in Zheng Manor without anyone being any the wiser.

Bai Yunfei opened his eyes again. Shaking his left hand, he took out a white cloud-shaped pendant from his ring and gingerly stroked the edges of it, a look of fond nostalgia on his face.

This was the last remnant of his mother. In his fear of it being damaged in battle, Bai Yunfei had it held for safekeeping in his space ring rather than having it around his neck.

"Mother...." Bai Yunfei lamented, "Can you see me now? Yunfei has grown up. I am free like a cloud in the sky to travel wherever...."

All of a sudden, Bai Yunfei felt homesick.

Talus City hadn't been his 'home' in many years. With no one there to tend to his mother and grandfather's graves, would they both be filled with grass and other weeds by now?

He really wished to go back and visit their graves. He wanted to greet them and share the stories of how he was doing....

.....

“Chirp chirp....”

From next to him, the hesitant but comforting chirp of Xiao Qi crooned to him. The bird was rubbing its head next to Bai Yunfei’s face affectionately from its perch on his shoulder. Its eyes were filled with sadness, though its heart was sending him comforting messages.

“Haha, I’m fine, just thinking of some memories from long ago....”

Bai Yunfei stroked the feathers of Xiao Qi, his heart feeling warm at Xiao Qi’s touch.

Putting the cloud pendant away again, Bai Yunfei sucked in a deep breath again. Chasing away the mournful memories of the past, Bai Yunfei looked back to the stone in his other hand.

“Is this its effects? Even I felt confused by my own illusions....” Bai Yunfei jeered self-deprecatingly. The illusion he fabricated for himself had been done unknowingly. Perhaps it had taken shape of what his mind was reflecting at the moment to create the illusion.

With that said, the illusion was pretty strong if it could evoke a memory like that. That was also due to the small radius it was in, and if it was larger, the mirage wouldn’t have been so strong.

Now armed with this knowledge, Bai Yunfei fabricated another illusion, this time slowly changing the details of the mirage to see the extent of it. The illusion maintained itself after he stopped feeding soulforce into it as well, though he didn’t bother seeing how long it could last.

He nodded satisfactorily. “Since this is a stone that can cast illusions, I’ll call it....the ‘Illusion Stone’.”

Chapter 518: The Person He Needs to See

His right hand flickered as another Illusion Stone was taken out.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: High Earth

Equipment Effect: Create an illusion a hundred meters in radius at largest.

Effects become stronger the smaller in area it is.

Effect can be stacked.

Upgrade Requirement: 110 Soulpoints

An Illusion Stone with stats identical to the previous one. He tried several times again, but all the stones were the same.

“Twelve stones in total, so I guess they’re all a part of a ‘set’, but don’t have a ‘set effect’. They can be stacked, so having all twelve of them used at once means being able to create an ‘illusion matrix’. Wonder what’s the difference between using one and using many is, or how they can be controlled....”

Bai Yunfei continued muttering to himself as he inspected the Illusion Stones. They were without a doubt precious, and he had confidence that if he got to be good at using them, then his strength would increase several times over. All he needed to do was carefully study and get used to it.

“Wonder what kind of effects will happen if I upgrade it?”

Smiling, Bai Yunfei set himself to upgrading them....

After a while.

Upgrade Successful

Upgrade Successful

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: High Earth

Upgrade Level: +10

Additional Attribute: Increase range of illusions by 30%.

Soul Compatibility: 10%

Equipment Effect: Create an illusion a hundred meters in radius at largest.

Effects become stronger the smaller in area it is.

Effect can be stacked.

+10 Additional Effect: Increase strength of illusions by 50%.

Upgrade Requirement: 110 Soulpoints

They were rather ordinary effects with nothing special about them besides them boosting the already-there effects.

Taking another, Bai Yunfei upgraded that stone again, but the additional attribute and effects were the same.

After upgrading all twelve Illusion Stones, Bai Yunfei was startled to see they were all the exact same! He had never come across something like this before.

But that wasn't necessarily a bad thing. If he used all the stones together, the illusion would be considerably strong.

Putting away the Illusion Stones, Bai Yunfei laid back on his bed to rest and gather his soulforce to him again. A little while after, Bai Yunfei heard several footsteps approach his room.

“Brother Bai, are you still awake? May I come in?”

It was Zheng Kai.

Rising from his bed, Bai Yunfei spoke, “Come in.”

The doors pushed open for a smiling Zheng Kai to come walking in. “Do you like the room, brother Bai? If there's anything you need, feel free to ask.”

“I'm satisfied, thank you for your consideration, brother Zheng.”

Zheng Kai sat down on the chair nearby, “Brother Bai,” he began a little hesitantly, “I'd like to ask you something, was there....”

“Are you inquiring if there's anything that stood out among the space rings I picked up?” Bai Yunfei finished for him, “I only just

looked through them but didn't see anything. Some of the rings were empty actually and definitely didn't have anything that were like clues."

Zheng Kai looked startled for a brief moment. "Haha, that makes sense. Those people were prepared, they wouldn't make a silly mistake like leave any clues around. We'll have to wait to hear from the Huang if the prisoner has anything to say."

He shook his head, "Brother Bai, is there anything you need to do in the Capital?" He asked, "If you're not in a hurry, then I can take you around the city and show you around. You'll definitely like it here."

Bai Yunfei shook his head as well, "I've a matter to do on behalf of my master. I am to....go to the Tianhun Academy tomorrow."

"Tianhun Academy?" Zheng Kai asked, "Why there? Er...brother Bai, you don't mean to tell me you're going to enroll there? With your strength, you could be an instructor. There's probably no one there that could teach you anything, and aren't you a student of the Crafting School?"

"Haha, that's not it. I'm going there to see a friend of my master and give him a letter on his behalf."

"Oh, I see...." Zheng Kai nodded. "Haha, that works out then. I'm actually a sixth year at the Tianhun Academy, so I know the place well, you can come with me tomorrow."

"Oh?" Bai Yunfei spoke. "You're a student there? A sixth year too? Huh..."

Zheng Kai was a late-stage Soul Exalt, was there even a need for him to be studying there still?

A sixth year of the academy meant to say they were Soul Exalts. People who became Soul Exalts were given the right to graduate from the academy, and only a few would decide to stick around until they were mid-stage Soul Exalts. Even if they did stay, they'd

become instructors to guide other students.

With all that said, there weren't many late-stage Soul Exalt students there.

"Hehe, don't you know? Tianhun Academy has plenty of beautiful women, even in the Capital. If I graduate, then I won't be able to go flirting with any, hehe...."

A knowing smile appeared onto Zheng Kai's face, much to Bai Yunfei's amazed shock.

Bai Yunfei felt the corners of his lips twitch. No wonder Zheng Kai had the nickname of 'Sex Lord'. If he was staying around the academy to pick up girls, that in itself was worthy of 'respect'.

"Ah, brother Bai, who are you looking for, actually? Is it a student or instructor? I know practically everyone so if you tell me I can bring you directly to them."

"My master said his friend was the chairman of the Tianhun Academy."

"Ah, the chairman I see, don't worry! I'll bring you straight to him tomo—" He choked.

Sputtering to himself for a second, he stared incredulously at Bai Yunfei, "Who did you say you were going to see?!"

"The chairman of Tianhun Academy," Bai Yunfei repeated, "my master said his name was Mo Huangkong."

"....."

Zheng Kai's lips twitched helplessly. "I completely forgot your master is senior Zi Jin. A monster on the same level as my own grandfather, how could any friend of his be an ordinary instructor...." He looked dejected at the thought of the chairman.

"What's wrong? Is senior Mo hard to meet or something? Bai Yunfei asked in confusion.

"Ah, er, well....that's not really it. But the chairman, well....er,

he does normally stay to his quarters, so you do need to have permission before you can see him. But I....might not be able to take you straight to him. If anything, I'll take you to the academy but you'll need to go pay respects to him yourself."

Bai Yunfei peered at Zheng Kai. The other male looked strange, or afraid even. "Are you afraid of the chairman or something?" Bai Yunfei saw an opportunity to liven up the atmosphere with a joke, "Did you try to flirt with his granddaughter or something, and that's why you're afraid?"

"....."

When Zheng Kai didn't respond for two seconds, his face was all Bai Yunfei needed to see to know the answer.

"No f*cking way, you really did that?!"

Chapter 519: Tianhun Academy

The Tianhun Academy was the empire's only institute for soul cultivators. Managed directly by the Royal Family in the Capital, the academy saw to recruiting any geniuses they could find and nurture them for the empire from Soul Apprentices to Soul Exalts.

Graduation from the academy meant being inducted into the Tianhun School and by extension, increasing the strength of the empire. This wasn't always enforced, and there were many that decided to follow their own paths to explore and travel. But with every graduate that chose this option, they were without a doubt someone that every faction, school, or affiliation from the continent would try to recruit.

The sons and daughters of many influential families, clans, schools, and even commoners would have a spot in the academy, if they have the talent. It was a gathering place for geniuses, and a place where many children from even the wealthiest and powerful factions would send despite the resources they had at home to help, though those that opted to forgo the academy were few.

The academy has long since existed prior to the unification of the empire and was still known as the best institute there was. Following the unification, the academy became known as 'Tianhun Academy'.

It was said that the founder of the empire, His Majesty Wu Tianhun himself had once been a student here when he was young.

One of the more special things about the academy was that it was supervised by the Royal Family without it being for their 'personal' use. For the most part, the academy was independent in government, and very rarely did the Royal Family interfere with it. Even the one with the most power in the academy wasn't from the Royal Family and was instead appointed to the position through the archaic but ironclad rules of the academy.

If one looked at the Tianhun Academy from above, they would remark that it was shaped almost like a fan. The southernmost part was extremely large, but the area would shrink the more one went north, and by the very end of the north, it was no bigger than half of the south.

The south was where the ‘official gates’ were with just two large stones a hundred meters tall stood. They towered over the walls and had the words ‘Tianhun’ on one pillar and ‘Academy’ on the other. They were only two words, but it commandeered respect from anyone that looked at it as if the words themselves were imbued with a special aura.

Legends say that it was Wu Tianhun that carved these words into the pillars.

Aside from the pillars, the walls that encircled the academy spread endlessly left and right along the bustling roads. From the other side of this wall stood Tianhun Academy.

A part of the academy is divided up into six different arc-shaped sections from first years to sixth years.

The largest area was the first year section where all the Soul Apprentices studied. To the north were the second years, the Soul Personages, and further north continued as so, third years being the Soul Warriors, fourth years the Soul Sprites, fifth years the Soul Ancestors, and the sixth years the Soul Exalts.

To the east was where the students learned, and to the west is where the living quarters of students and instructors are.

While on the surface the divisions of the academy was quite simple, the actual details were far more complex. There were countless buildings in the academy, and even forests, lakes, and woods that were divided up even more categorically. On both sides of the academy were forests that seemed endless unless viewed from above.

To the northwest of the academy was a large mountain that towered over the Capital.

.....

By the afternoon of the next day, Bai Yunfei was led to Tianhun Academy by Zheng Kai.

Walking onto the grounds of the academy had been an experience for Bai Yunfei. Though it was called Tianhun Academy, it was essentially a city in its scale and size.

They walked on the large paved roads, with Bai Yunfei taking in the sights along the way. There were plenty of young men and women along the way; many of them were above the age of ten, but there were a few under the age of that. But they were all soul cultivators.

According to Zheng Kai, these were all newly-applied students. Some of the ones here had only just awakened to their soulforce and were being taught by specialized instructors to quickly get them on track.

These students were of course not just limited to the first and second years, as years weren't divided by age. There were also plenty of stronger people here, people that joined the academy at some point in their life so they were Soul Warriors or even Soul Sprites by the time of their admission.

Bai Yunfei could see that Zheng Kai had some name to him within the academy, as there were people that pointed at him every so often. Even some of the younger female students looked at him with eyes of worship, making Bai Yunfei feel incredulous. Was Zheng Kai really that popular? His nickname as the 'Sex Lord' surely had to be known by the people here, so why were there so many females 'worshipping' him?

But not everyone was looking to Zheng Kai. There were eyes on Bai Yunfei, or perhaps actually, they were looking at the blue-eyes

wyrm.

Xiao Qi and the mastiff were both shrunk down to their pet-sized forms, but while the blue-eyes wyrm was also shrunk, everyone could tell it was a soulbeast straight away. Those first and second year ‘little ones’ had their eyes glued to the wyrm, and then to Bai Yunfei with envious eyes.

If Bai Yunfei had a soulbeast this powerful-looking, surely he was a great soul cultivator?

They walked for another half hour, with each passing moment having stronger and stronger students on the way. Soul Warriors, Soul Sprites, Soul Ancestors, and even a few Soul Exalt students were seen here and there.

In time, Zheng Kai said that they were quickly approaching where the chairman was.

Stopping at a stone and brick built three-storied building. Zheng Kai pointed to the very obvious building that towered overhead further beyond, “Brother Bai, the chairman is typically in there. If you go there to pay your respects, the chairman will know, and with your status, I’m sure he’ll see you.”

And with that, Zheng Kai stopped there, reluctant to go any further than there.

Bai Yunfei followed the direction of Zheng Kai’s pointing, looking to the ten-storied stone building, Bai Yunfei noted that it had to be fifty meters tall at the very least and also the tallest building in the entire academy.

Seeing how careful Zheng Kai was being, Bai Yunfei couldn’t help but chuckle, “Alright. I’ll go pay my respects to senior Mo, you....”

“I’ll be waiting here for you, we can go elsewhere afterwards.”

“Fine then. Thanks, brother Zheng.” Bai Yunfei nodded before walking towards the building.

He came to a stop in front of the circular doors. Looking left and right, Bai Yunfei saw no guards or even a bell. Just as he was about to knock on the door, a faint wave of soulsense washed over him before an elderly voice spoke out.

“I have never seen you before, young one. If not a student, which family are you from, and for what purpose?”

After a moment’s surprise, Bai Yunfei quickly replied as politely as he could. “Senior, I am Bai Yunfei, student of the Crafting School and disciple to master Zi Jin. I have come to pay my respects to senior Mo Huangkong.”

“Oh? Zi Jin’s disciple?” The voice remarked, an octave higher than before. “Come in then, head for the top floor.”

There was a creaking sound as the wooden doors opened up. Without needing to be told twice, Bai Yunfei tidied his clothes and strode on in.

Chapter 520: Mo Huangkong

Much to Bai Yunfei's amazement, the doors closed behind him when he entered the room. The interior of the building was just a long hallway. On the stairway up even, there was just an empty space where no entrance seemed possible from where he was, as if entry upwards was blocked off.

Still remarking at the sight, Bai Yunfei followed down the corridor before climbing a staircase to get the second floor. Upon stepping foot there, Bai Yunfei realized there was no second floor, merely just a staircase that continued onwards. In fact, from the moment he entered the building, there was only one path he could take, and that was upwards. The building he stepped in was merely a mezzanine to the actual one....

In other words, there were no floors to stop on besides the first floor, and the floor at the very top.

Climbing several stories worth of stairs wasn't a very hard task for Bai Yunfei to do. It wasn't long before he reached the top floor, where another fan-shaped door met him. As he was about to knock on it, the door opened by itself, revealing a spacious room beyond it.

Bai Yunfei strode respectfully into the room. When he did, the very first scent to assault his nose was the smell of books and ancient furniture. It wasn't repugnant to the smell, Bai Yunfei felt at peace instead. It was almost as if this room had some sort of aura that was meant to calm people down.

About three hundred steps away were two rows of bookshelves, lining up the room to look like a library. There was only a corridor in front of the door that led to the center of the room, and then a large table where another set of bookshelves sat to the left. Behind the door, a single old man with a kind expression sat there, looking at Bai Yunfei.

Not even an iota of intimidating aura was felt by the old man, and even Bai Yunfei himself was doubting his senses as he regarded the dark-purple robed man. His hair was a mixture of black and white, though his face was wrinkled with age. A white grizzly beard laid over his chest, making him seem like a regular old man, but this was most definitely the one Bai Yunfei was looking for.

Bai Yunfei drew close to the elder and bowed, “Junior Bai Yunfei pays his respects to senior Mo.”

“Haha, be at ease, young one. An old fogey like me cares not for etiquette.” Mo Huangkong nodded, “Fourth disciple of Zi Jin, you are very much deserving of your fame. A young one like you becoming a Soul Exalt and having a class seven soulbeast partner, those are quite astonishing to see.”

As chairman of Tianhun Academy, Mo Huangkong had seen many things and was a genius for his time, but he had only reached the level Bai Yunfei was at thirty years ago. But the more shocking thing to him was the fact that Bai Yunfei had a class seven soulbeast he was partnered to.

Likewise, Bai Yunfei was equally surprised. He didn’t bring the three soulbeasts with him and instead left them outside, though he did command the mastiff to conceal its strength so that no one would know. But in the end, Mo Huangkong did notice and see the mastiff’s strength.

“Senior is too generous with his praises. This junior was only lucky in his journeys in the Soulbeast Forest.”

“Ah, so you came from the Soulbeast Forest? Zi Jin told me three years ago about you, so I assumed you’d be here soon....did your master have you do something for him?”

Startled, Bai Yunfei took out the letter from his space ring. He hadn’t thought that his master would’ve told Mo Huangkong about him, but he handed the letter over without hesitation. “My master said to come pay my respects to senior Mo in the Capital

and to give this letter.”

Taking the letter from Bai Yunfei, Mo Huangkong flipped it open and start to read. From the glimpse he saw of it, Bai Yunfei noted that there were only a few hundred characters in that letter at most.

Skimming over the contents, Mo Huangkong gave a smile. “Ah, your class seven soulbeast must be a permafrost mastiff, is it not?”

“Hm?” Not having expected that question, Bai Yunfei stiffened in the back. Trying his best to hide his worry, Bai Yunfei nodded. “You’ve sharp eyes, senior Mo. It is indeed a permafrost mastiff.”

“I see....” Mo Huangkong dipped his head, putting the letter in his hand down on the desk. “I’ve heard that the fourth elder of the Beast Taming School, Huang Lin, has a permafrost mastiff as his strongest soulbeast puppet.”

This time, Bai Yunfei found it impossible to keep his calm. The smile on his face slipped for a moment in his apprehension. He took a step back, the Fire-tipped Spear appearing from the Violet Soul Ring just in case he needed to protect himself. He hadn’t thought that Mo Huangkong would be this ‘knowledgeable’!”

A flicker of surprise flashed across Mo Huangkong’s eyes as well. He looked as though the suspicion he had in his mind was being confirmed by Bai Yunfei’s actions, though when Bai Yunfei started to prepare his soulforce in preparation for battle, Mo Huangkong help up a palm to stop him. “Young one,” he spoke in admiration for Bai Yunfei’s actions, “don’t be alarmed. Your master is a dear friend of mine, what reason is there for me to bring harm to you?”

From start to finish, Mo Huangkong hadn’t leaked any intent to battle at all, and neither did he do anything out of the ordinary. Bai Yunfei took a second longer to consider his actions before he sighed in relief. His actions had been a little too over-the-top, even if he didn’t want anyone to know he had killed Huang Lin. If that got out, it’d cause a great deal of trouble for him.

“Am I correct in saying that this permafrost mastiff used to be the soulbeast puppet of Huang Lin? Why is it by your side? And....how are you able to control it?” Mo Huangkong questioned. From his senses, he could tell the mastiff was still a soulbeast puppet, but everything else had been a guess until Bai Yunfei confirmed it. If not for the fact that he knew Bai Yunfei was Zi Jin’s disciple, Mo Huangkong would’ve assumed he was a student from the Beast Taming School. After all, there was never any accounts of an outsider being able to control the soulbeast of a beast tamer.

Knowing that Mo Huangkong shouldn’t be lied to, Bai Yunfei came clean with his answer. “You are right, senior. This permafrost mastiff came from a beast tamer before, but the reason I’m able to control it is....because of a special soul armament I have.”

“A soul armament?!” Mo Huangkong’s eyes sparkled at that. “There is a soul armament capable of such a thing?!”

Bai Yunfei nodded.

“How interesting....” A soul armament capable of such a perverse action like that stunned Mo Huangkong, requiring him several addition seconds to think of his next question. “You said you took it from a beast tamer, is that said person Huang Lin, an elder of the Beast Taming School?”

Bai Yunfei paused this time. “This junior doesn’t know his identity.”

“Is he an early-stage Soul King with an affinity for wind?”

“Yes, that was he.”

“Then there’s no mistaking it. But how did you take it from him? I’m sure with his temperament, there’s no way he wouldn’t attempt to take it back. Did you properly hide your identity? If an elder of the Beast Taming School comes here, there’ll be no small

amount of trouble for you.”

“Rest assured, senior,” Bai Yunfei smiled in reassurance, “My identity is safe. No one knows I have his soulbeast, and neither does Huang Lin, seeing how he’s dead.”

Chapter 521: Classes?!

“What?!”

For the very first time since their conversation started, Mo Huangkong’s eyes were wide open in complete shock. “Huang Lin is dead, you say?! Who killed him?”

“When this junior was in the Soulbeast Forest, I came across some trouble where Huang Lin came after me to kill. After a scuffle, he was....killed by me.”

“By yourself?”

“Yes, senior. Myself and two other soulbeasts.”

“.....”

Mo Huangkong looked Bai Yunfei over once again without saying anything for some time. Finally, he sighed, “Alas! I’ve grown far too old. Since when have the youngsters of today been able to do something like that...? You truly are Zi Jin’s disciple....you’re well on your way to surpass him!”

He chuckled when he saw the look of concern on Bai Yunfei’s face. “Rest assured, young one. Your permafrost mastiff is well hidden, even an ordinary Soul King won’t be able to tell its origins. There should be no worries for you being found out.”

Bai Yunfei let out a sigh of relief. He had been worried about if other people would realize just how strange the permafrost mastiff was, and that they’d make the connection between it and Huang Lin’s permafrost mastiff. Like Mo Huangkong said, there would most certainly be trouble if the Beast Taming School learned about it.

“Senior Mo, this junior has a friend waiting for me on the outside. If there’s nothing else to be done, then this junior will be taking my leave...” Bai Yunfei spoke after a while. He really wanted to leave this building now that the old man knew his

secret. He was really afraid that he'd find out about the Upgrade Technique next.

“Ah, you are new to the Capital, are you not? Familiar yourself with our city, and if you’re ready, feel free to start your classes whenever.”

“Ah?” This wasn’t what Bai Yunfei expected to hear.

“Classes?!”

Mo Huangkong was taken back as well, “What? Did Zi Jin not tell you? I thought you’d know.”

“Er....forgive this junior for not knowing. My master wants me to study here? Begging your pardon, senior, but....though the instructors here are very strong and can teach about plenty of things, this junior is accustomed to training by myself. I would not learn much under another....”

What was Mo Huangkong talking about, did his master really want him to learn here? Was Zheng Kai right?

“Learn?” Mo Huangkong reiterated, a faint smile of amusement on his lips. “When did I say you were here to learn? You are Zi Jin’s disciple, which instructor here has a right to take over as your teacher?”

“That....”

“I ask of you to start your classes not as a student, but as an....instructor.”

“What????”

Will wonders never cease! Amazed, Bai Yunfei’s mouth dropped open. “Senior Mo, is this some sort of trick? Senior, what capabilities do I have as a teacher? I....I don’t even know how to teach anyone anything!”

“Don’t be so harsh on yourself, young one. Your master said the opposite in regards to you....” The elderly man smiled. The letter

in his hand was motioned towards Bai Yunfei, “Since you weren’t aware of the details, take a look. This is what your master told you to do.”

Not quite sure what to think, Bai Yunfei took the letter and began to read.

The inner contents of the letter was rather quite simple. It consisted of Zi Jin mentioning of a promise made many years ago, saying that he would send someone to Tianhun Academy to become an instructor and offer a class.

That somebody was Bai Yunfei.

And the class to be offered was about....crafting!!

What Zi Jin promised was to have Tianhun Academy offer the art of crafting as a subject!

“I’ve been asking your master for dozens of years, and at last he has finally agreed. We’ll start with a preliminary type of class to test the waters. I’ll make sure to address whatever needs you or your class has, you just need to focus on teaching the art of crafting and not worry if the course is a success or not.”

“I....” There was a look of reluctance on Bai Yunfei’s face. “Senior Mo, this junior is an incompetent and only a novice in the art of crafting. How could I possibly be an instructor....”

“A novice? You are too harsh on yourself.” Mo Huangkong spoke, “Your master said before that you have the best success rate out of any other student in the school. Don’t devalue yourself, I’ve faith in your work.

“Or do you mean to tell me you don’t wish to honor your master’s wishes?” He added.

“.....”

He couldn’t continue to refuse now. If his master wanted it, then he was in no other position but to obey.

But still. To come here and teach the art of crafting....Bai Yunfei really didn't know what to think of this situation. How did his master come to think of this plan?

Teaching the art of crafting to outsiders of the school—wasn't that a problem?

What other kinds of secrets was he not aware of?

But no matter if it was a secret or not, Bai Yunfei had no choice but to follow his master's wishes for now and start 'teaching' a class in Tianhun Academy....

He was here not as a student, but an instructor.

Zheng Kai had said yesterday that he was strong enough to be an instructor, but he hadn't thought it to be true. Bai Yunfei supposed Zheng Kai would have the last laugh now.

Mo Huangkong seemed to have noticed the 'compromise' they reached. "Don't worry, young one," he smiled, "just try your best. As I said before, the academy will see to meeting your requirements, no matter if it's the students you want, a place to teach, or even the materials, we will see to it. You may start whenever, but we do require you teach at least one class per week."

"I.....thank you for your consideration, senior Mo. But the art of crafting isn't something that can be taught so quickly. We of the Crafting School require students with a high aptitude for crafting, an aspect that is irrelevant to aptitude for cultivation, so teaching students randomly would be pointless. And teaching students with low strength would also take several years before they become a Soul Sprite...."

"Don't you worry about that. We will send the students from the fifth and sixth year fire-type students. They are all very talented in elemental fire, but time will tell if they have the talent needed for crafting. Let us have a trial period of half a year to a year. If there's no one capable of it, we can give up the idea, a year isn't much time

for us soul cultivators in any case.

“Our academy has plenty of materials for you to use for crafting as well. You may take whatever you need from the academy and use it as you see fit for your class.”

Clearly, Mo Huangkong was prepared to negotiate for the crafting class. “If....if that is what senior Mo has prepared.”

“That’s settled, then. Why don’t we have your class start three days from now. I’ve some matters to take care of and students to select. I’ll have them sent to your class three days later.”

.....

It was a dejected Bai Yunfei that stepped out from the stone building. He had originally came to this academy with the purpose of sending a letter, but now he had been ‘shackled’ with the burden of being an instructor to the academy.

It would appear that he’d be stuck in the Capital for longer than he thought.

“Ah! Did I keep you waiting? Sorry! I had to stop for something!!”

As he walked away from the building, the delighted voice of a female called out to him. Looking up, Bai Yunfei saw a figure whose figure was glowing as red as the setting sun pounce onto him.

Under his own amazed eyes, this woman stuck herself close to him, pulling herself close to hug his arm!

Chapter 522: Mo Wanxia

“Wu Yang!! I told you to stop following me! Can you please act like a prince for once and stop thinking you can get any girl you want? Why do you have to annoy me so much! I told you I don’t like you at all, so stop bothering me!”

In the fifth year section of Tianhun Academy, the furious ranting of a female could be heard. Though slightly high in decibels, the owner of this voice was still definitely sweet-sounding to the ears.

“Wanxia, don’t be so cold like that. And what do you mean? I only like you, aren’t you the one ignoring me? Do you not think I love you? If it’s for you, I’m willing to do anything! What do I have to do for you to just accept me?”

There was the pitiful sounds of a male that followed the angry female, though his words were filled with earnest affection and pleading for her.

Three persons were in front of the three-storied building there. At the front of the group was a tall, provocative but graceful young woman in a red robe. Her skin was like ice, her eyebrows black and her lips cherry-red. She was a stunning woman in beauty, though she looked less patient than others, and she had been walking faster than the people behind her.

Right behind her was a man in white. He was of ordinary make, though his aura was the opposite. He strode for the girl with a graceful air and smile, though he looked slightly afraid to get any closer than three meters from her.

And in front of them was another person in green. He was silent as he followed the two and didn’t seem at all interested in their conversation.

The girl, Mo Wanxia, gave a glare at the young man, “Wu Yang!” She blared, “Can you please act like a prince?! Stop following me!

I'm meeting up with someone already, so stop bothering me!"

The one named Wu Yang looked disheartened for a moment before he bounced back, "Don't try and lie to me, Wanxia. I know you're meeting up with the same person from last time? How dare he look so lovingly at you—I made sure he won't be making that same mistake! I did make sure to pay him for his troubles though, so don't be angry.....you know, I managed to get a hold of an early-stage class three great-tailed ferret the other day, it's quite cute. It can even use its tail so cutely, why don't I give that to you? You'll love it for sure...."

Faced with such an endless amount of flattery, Mo Wanxia looked even more helpless than before, "I don't like pets, so don't bother. I'm off to meet my date, buzz off."

"What date? We're already pretty much at the chairman's library, are you trying to hide in your grandfather's place? You've done that so many times already, Wanxia. Don't bother running. Running is just hiding your emotions. You know it be true that you like me, don't you? Stop fighting it, you know I'm serious about you. As long as you agree, you'll be my only concubine. I'll treat you right and good...."

"....."

It was with raised eyebrows and gritted teeth that Mo Wanxia looked ready to commit murder. Right as she was about to let loose a torrent of her own onto him, she noticed a young man in green with his head hung low coming out from one of the buildings. Eyes lightening up with opportunity, she raced for the young man.

"Ah! Did I keep you waiting? Sorry! I had to stop for something!!"

She cried, racing to him and latching onto his right arm. "I'm not lying to you this time," She turned him towards the man chasing her, "he and I have a date to the western lakes. We'll be going now, so don't wait up."

Wu Yang came to a pause to stare at the young man. “Wanxia,” he smiled, “you’re pulling random excuses now. I can tell he isn’t your sweetheart, so stop lying.”

.....

Having been alarmed to be pulled into the embrace of a young woman, Bai Yunfei didn’t know whether to laugh or cry after listening to the situation until he was pulled in as an excuse for the young woman. His heart had skipped a beat realizing what trouble he was going to be in until the other man pointed out the reality of the situation. Luckily for him, this Wu Yang was smarter than he looked and wouldn’t be seeking confrontation. That’d save them all one more piece of trouble.

The anger Mo Wanxia was feeling from Wu Yang was immense. In her anger though, she didn’t realize just how tightly her chest was as she clutched Bai Yunfei’s arm, and the scent of her being was wafting into Bai Yunfei’s nose, making him feel slightly embarrassed.

As Bai Yunfei was about to push her away, she suddenly drew even closer to him. “Who says I’m playing around? He’s one of my suitors, and I like him. If you don’t believe me, then watch!”

She swung her head to face Bai Yunfei, her eyelids fluttering close and her cherry-red lips drawing closer to Bai Yunfei’s face—if he didn’t stop this, then he and she would really be proving how ‘close’ they were!

“Wanxia!!”

Bai Yunfei felt his heart skip a beat again as Wu Yang roared in anger. Already deciding to pull away before Wu Yang cried out, Bai Yunfei felt the aura coming from him and immediately narrowed his eyes.

“Wanxia, don’t be like this. Even if I know you’re joking, I can’t guarantee I won’t take it out on this man here. You of all people

should know how jealous I can get.”

Freezing up with anger, Mo Wanxia looked like she wanted to say something, but before she could, she felt her two arms suddenly fall away from the arm she was holding onto and pushed away as the young man next to her took several steps away from her.

“Miss, please don’t play this type of joke, I don’t even know you.” Bai Yunfei spoke to the young woman with narrowed eyes.

This woman was clearly trying to use him, and that left a bad taste on his mouth. The changes going through Wu Yang’s face as she was about to kiss him had been dangerous, so Bai Yunfei felt it wise to ‘come out’ with the truth. If Wu Yang really was a person who acted on his jealousy, then there was no telling what would’ve happened if the girl went through with her kiss. Any trouble that Wu Yang would’ve stirred would’ve fallen upon Bai Yunfei, and that was something he wanted to avoid at all costs.

So despite the anger he was feeling in his heart, Bai Yunfei tried to leave the conversation off with a short few words. “Please have some respect for yourself, miss. Doing something as defamatory as this will only cause troubles for others.”

Mo Wanxia’s eyes blinked several times in surprise. She hadn’t expected Bai Yunfei to say that; especially the first few words.

No self respect? Where in the world did this guy get off telling her that? Was he calling her a shameless woman with no self-respect?!

The apathetic look he was giving her affected her heavily. For some reason, she was actually starting to feel vexed and her eyes started to reveal her emotions of distress.

But Wu Yang was not at all impressed with Bai Yunfei. Seeing the distress on Mo Wanxia’s face, he immediately flew into anger, “You! How dare you?! You dare humiliate Wanxia!? I....I challenge you to a duel!!”

“Er...”

Now Bai Yunfei really didn't know if he should laugh or cry. How did things end up like this! And why a duel?!

Chapter 523: Knockdown Via Brick

The sixth year section was the closest to the center of Tianhun Academy where the chairman's building was, so there were plenty of sixth year students closeby to Bai Yunfei and the other two. Gathering in twos and threes, the early-stage or mid-stage Soul Exalts began to look at what was going on.

They were all now looking and talking with interest at what was going on in front of the stone buildings.

"Hey, come quick! The fourth prince Wu Yang is bothering our senior Wanxia again. You have to give him credit, he's a persistent one!"

"Shhh....don't let him hear that. He's always been going on about how senior Wanxia is 'his'. If he hears you, you're definitely in for it."

"Who's that guy in the middle? Never seen him before, is he new? A newbie that so stupidly angered Mo Wanxia or the prince Wu Yang maybe?"

"Hehe, I remember that one time we had that guy who called himself the strongest one here. An early-stage Soul Exalt by the age of thirty, that's not too bad, but his ego was f*cking massive. The moment he started to speak dirty to senior Wanxia, the prince had him beaten til even his mom couldn't recognize him. I heard it took him an entire month to heal up...."

"Makes you really wonder why is it the prince really likes senior Wanxia. She's always treating him so coldly, the fact that he isn't put off by that is really something else."

"The prince is so stubbornly arrogant, don't you think? Not many would dare go against him. Plenty of people have tried getting close to senior Wanxia, only to have the prince beat them back. That new guy is unlucky."

“That’s the chairman’s library right there, wonder if the chairman will come out to stop them.”

“He’d probably see it as some sort of little kids squabble. Why would he even bother?”

All the students here were long-time students of the academy. Even though they were in their twenties or thirties, they were all still considered ‘young’. They weren’t like regular soul cultivators who left their homes to train when young, they spent the entirety of their time in the academy and focusing all their energy in training. So as a result, they were all a little juvenile in the mind and were quite interested at the sight in front of them.

The life of cultivation was a boring one, so happenings like these were always seen with great interest to others.

.....

“I challenge you to a duel!”

Wu Yang roared to Bai Yunfei.

“.....”

Bai Yunfei wasn’t the only one surprised. Mo Wanxia and the person behind Wu Yang were both equally surprised.

“This is crazy....” Bai Yunfei thought to himself. “Friend, I’ve no interest in dueling with you. I have nothing to do with this miss here, please continue, I’ll be taking my leave.”

Wu Yang looked like a hedonistic child that Bai Yunfei didn’t want to get involved with, so he turned around to leave.

He didn’t see Zheng Kai or Xiao Qi, so the two of them must’ve went somewhere else.

Bai Yunfei’s indifferent attitude towards him had left Wu Yang with surprise. Not many people would ever dare repeat those actions, did Bai Yunfei not know who he was?

Before Bai Yunfei could take two more steps after whirling

around to leave, Wu Yang suddenly exploded with anger, “Running away after disrespecting Wanxia? You coward! Stand still and let me teach you a lesson!”

What kind of words were those? ‘Stand still and be taught a lesson’? Bai Yunfei froze, his eyes narrowed together.

But Wu Yang was already coming at him!

Elemental fire surrounded the man as he pounced for Bai Yunfei. His right arm lashed for Bai Yunfei’s back.

The amount of aura he was giving off...he was a mid-stage Soul Exalt!

Wu Yang was a mid-stage Soul Exalt!

This type of unreasonable preaching really annoyed Bai Yunfei. Eyes flashing dangerously, he whirled around and lashed out with a right punch of his own towards the other fist.

“Bang!!”

There was a muffled sound of collision as the two fists clashed together. Then, under everyone’s amazed eyes, Wu Yang was the one that staggered back several steps!

“Oh?! So you do have some skill!” Wu Yang remarked, “Haha, no wonder you’re such an arrogant one, you’re a mid-stage Soul Exalt too! I won’t hold back then. You’ll know that we’re worlds apart!”

He had been holding back with his punch earlier, but now that Bai Yunfei revealed himself to be a mid-stage Soul Exalt too, that ignited Wu Yang’s competitive streak. He also didn’t want to be embarrassed in front of Wanxia, so he’d go all out to defeat this ‘arrogant’ person in front of him.

Besides, maybe Wanxia would come to see him in a new light when she saw how heroic he was?

“Who’s the arrogant one??”

Again, Bai Yunfei felt another wave of annoyance and

helplessness towards Wu Yang. He really couldn't understand people like him.

And neither could he bother to listen to anything more Wu Yang had to say or do. As Wu Yang leapt towards him again like a tiger, Bai Yunfei used the Wave Treading Steps to fall back, creating a mirror image for Wu Yang to punch. His speed was faster than Wu Yang expected, and before the prince could even make a follow up, Bai Yunfei was already launching his own counter attack. A flash of red light popped up in front of him before it followed his pointing and flew towards Wu Yang's head!

Its speed was faster than Bai Yunfei's initial move! Unable to dodge in time, Wu Yang tried to bring his arms up, but the red flash of light had already smacked into his head, and then his world blacked out....

“Bang!!”

Following the smacking sound, everyone there was stunned to watch Wu Yang's body go flying backwards through the air before crumpling on the ground....he had been knocked out!

A single move was all it took for a mid-stage Soul Exalt like Wu Yang to be defeated! The students there were gobsmacked, but no one there knew what exactly Bai Yunfei did to knock Wu Yang out.

“Fourth prince!!”

The man in green previously standing behind him cried out. In a flash, he flew over to where Wu Yang rested on the ground and began to inspect him for his injuries. Aside from the small chicken-egg sized bump on his head and the fact that he was knocked out, Wu Yang was for the most part unharmed.

The man let out a sigh in relief.

His eyes traveled over to Bai Yunfei next in bewilderment. Based on what he saw of Bai Yunfei's strength, Wu Yang should've been the victor of the battle, but instead, Bai Yunfei had knocked the

fourth prince out!

He took Wu Yang into his arms and stood up. Now wasn't the time to be teaching Bai Yunfei a lesson, he figured. Aside from an ominous glare at him to memorize his face, the man took Wu Yang and left the area.

Bai Yunfei hadn't expected for the man to just leave with Wu Yang. He saw that the man was pretty strong himself, but if he was leaving, then Bai Yunfei was happy there wouldn't be a second fight.

At this moment, Mo Wanxia was still standing there in shock. Her mind hadn't fully registered the fact that Wu Yang had been defeated by this man in front of her, so all she could do was stand there and stare at Bai Yunfei. With how lost she look—like a doe in the headlights—she looked quite cute.

Bai Yunfei shook his head, not at all caring for the looks around him anymore. He could sense Xiao Qi wasn't too far away from him to the right, so he made to move his way over there.

"Halt!! You think you can leave this place after injuring His Highness the Fourth Prince?!"

Not even a few steps later, a furious voice called out to him. A good few hundred meters away, a figure in red flew out from one of the buildings towards him. Like a meteor on fire, the figure shined a furious red light to travel towards Bai Yunfei!

Chapter 524: Intervention of an Instructor

A wide web of fire over ten meters wide flew over Bai Yunfei's head before it shrunk down to capture him. This was definitely a soul skill of a fire-type soul cultivator and meant to capture rather than kill.

Bai Yunfei frowned. This attack coming at him was a little disheartening with how strong and fast the other person was. Dodging it would be a little troublesome, so Bai Yunfei opted to strike. The Ardent Sun Glove appeared in his hand before five Burstfire Daggers flew out from his hand. They whirred as they traveled towards the net and exploded immediately upon contact.

Each dagger opened up a two-meter wide hole in their respective parts of the net, causing it to crumble apart and return to being elemental fire, leaving Bai Yunfei completely safe where he stood.

Bai Yunfei leapt up as soon as he threw out the Burstfire Daggers. Leaping into the air, his right hand punched upwards.

There was an explosion of fire before a person leapt out from it, five fingers clawing at Bai Yunfei's outstretched right hand.

“Bang!!”

Bai Yunfei staggered half a step back while the other person flipped through the air to land ten meters away from Bai Yunfei.

He was a man who stood at 1.9 meters tall and had long hair like a shawl. His nose was sharp and his eyes even sharper. He looked like a twenty-eight or twenty-nine year old handsome man. Waving his right arm, he cleared away the remnant elemental fire in the area to stare at Bai Yunfei in amazement.

Bai Yunfei stared back. This man was a peak late-stage Soul Exalt.

“Who are you, and why do you attack me?” Bai Yunfei demanded from him. Was this a companion of the one he had just knocked out? Here to attack him for revenge?

“That should be my line to you!” He spat back, “Who are you? I’ve never seen you before, are you a student here—which course are you from? You’ve guts to attack His Highness the Fourth Prince! Do you think yourself invincible if the Royal Family wishes to charge you?! You will remain here and await your punishment!”

Bai Yunfei’s eyes widened in surprise, His Highness the Fourth Prince? That was the person he knocked out? A member of the Royal Family?!

.....

Far away, the students watching the spectacle finally started to remember where they were. Looking at the newcomer here to deal with Bai Yunfei, they started to point and gossip.

“Did I....see that right? Did Wu Yang really lose? How? Did you guys see it?”

“It was too fast! I think I saw that guy pull out a weapon before slapping the prince with it.”

“Isn’t....isn’t that a little too strong? The Fourth Prince is a mid-stage Soul Exalt. He practices a style of cultivation only the Royal Family knows, no ordinary mid-stage Soul Exalt should even be a match for him. How’d this guy beat him in one blow? What weapon was it? Was it a....heaven tier soul armament?!”

“You think His Highness underestimated that guy? That’d explain how he lost so fast. How unlucky for him, knowing Wu Yang’s personality, he’s going to declare revenge as soon as he wakes up....”

“Look! He’s fighting instructor Zhou Yu, the one in charge of the sixth years in class one of the fire course! Good heavens—did that guy block instructor Zhou Yu’s attack?! That’s ridiculous!”

“You think instructor Zhou Yu’s going to detain that guy? He injured the Fourth Prince after all; if the instructor doesn’t stop him, the Royal Family’s going to go crazy on the academy. It’d

make sense for him to not let that guy go.”

“It makes sense? Not really? That guy didn’t do anything wrong in my opinion. It was senior Wanxia that got him in this mess, that guy was just a random person. If you were branded as a criminal for being pulled into someone else’s crap, you think you’d be happy about it?”

“So what? He’s just a mid-stage Soul Exalt, you think he’s going to win against the peak late-stage Soul Exalt instructor?”

.....

It seemed to be that this man in front of Bai Yunfei was an instructor. For the sake of safeguarding the academy’s image, the instructor couldn’t let Bai Yunfei go.

But still, Bai Yunfei was mystified. ‘Stand down and await punishment’? What malarkey was that?!

Coming into trouble like this just one day into coming to Tianhun Academy—did people here not study rules and common sense or something?

With already how unhappy he was about being an instructor here, Bai Yunfei felt his already-low opinion of the academy go down a notch.

“Zhou Yu! Stop! It wasn’t his fault, so don’t do an—”

Mo Wanxia finally spoke up. What Zhou Yu said aloud worried her, causing her to try and explain the situation on Bai Yunfei’s behalf. Before she could even finish her sentence though, Bai Yunfei was already walking towards the exit, completely ignoring both Mo Wanxia and Zhou Yu.

“Leaving?! Then I’ll detain you here by force!”

Seeing that Bai Yunfei was trying to ‘run away’, Zhou Yu flew into rage. Red light exploding forth from his feet, he disappeared into a blur of red to grab at Bai Yunfei’s shoulder.

“Stop with your bullying!!” Bai Yunfei finally lost his temper. With a roar, he whirled around and lashed out with a furious right punch onto the palm coming towards him.

Eighty-one Fold Fist Force!

With how angry he was and knowing how strong his opponent was, Bai Yunfei didn’t bother holding back.

The expression on Zhou Yu’s face hardened. Even with knowing that Bai Yunfei was a stage lower than him, Zhou Yu didn’t want to risk anything. His open palm tightened into a fist to stop Bai Yunfei’s punch with an all out punch of his own.

“Boom!!”

The two fists collided amidst an explosion of fire. The two combatants leapt back with Bai Yunfei landing just five meters away while Zhou Yu....flew a good ten meters back!

But while Bai Yunfei looked completely unharmed, Zhou Yu’s right arm was shaking uncontrollably!

“Chirp!!”

A furious chirping sound sounded through the air right afterwards, prompting everyone to look up. A stream of prismatic light came flying towards Bai Yunfei and Zhou Yu, raining over a hundred balls of fire onto the scene to attack Zhou Yu with it!

A peak late-stage class six soulbeast!

The fireballs raining down onto the area were immediately realized to be unordinary by Zhou Yu. Without delay, he erected a barrier of elemental fire right in front of him, solidifying into a fiery shield to protect him.

“Bang! Bang! Bang....”

The fireballs struck against the shield one after another, each one aimed to hit only Zhou Yu and not Bai Yunfei. Like raindrops, they fell against Zhou Yu’s shield nonstop.

Dedicated fully to his defenses, Zhou Yu wasn't completely unharmed by the fireballs, but the expression on his face grew pained. The strength of the fireballs were stronger than he imagined, and trying to stop all of them was proving to be a lot harder than he thought.

“Xiao Qi!”

Bai Yunfei cried out as the fireballs rained down onto Zhou Yu. It was a command to stop rather than to continue, since Bai Yunfei realized that the next move Xiao Qi was going to use would be the Spatial Edges....

Xiao Qi stopped straight away in accordance to Bai Yunfei's command. Cutting the flow of soulforce to its wings, Xiao Qi flew around Bai Yunfei, staring hatefully at Zhou Yu while also being ready to attack any given time.

The fire around Zhou Yu soon dissipated, revealing the other man standing there looking slightly fatigued. His expression was extremely ominous as he glared hatefully at Bai Yunfei. Though how tired he was, he looked like he was prepared to try and attack again.

“Instructor Zhou Yu, one moment!”

Suddenly, a voice cried out to the man. A figure flew in out of nowhere between Bai Yunfei and Zhou Yu to confront the older male.

It was Zheng Kai!

Chapter 525: Here Comes Trouble

Teleportation!!

Zheng Kai's entry took everyone by surprise! What he did was clearly teleportation!

The ability to connect one space to another or teleportation was an ability usually only Soul Kings were capable of. Even then, a Soul King needed to have some degree of knowledge on how space worked, and even mid-stage or even late-stage Soul Kings were incapable of understanding how to wield spatial energy.

Every rule has its exceptions however. A soul cultivator with an affinity for space were especially rare, but their advantages were proportionally numerous. Those who managed to become a Soul Exalt were capable of learning how to wield spatial energy and teleport.

Zheng Kai was one of them.

There were also a few extremely rare soul armaments capable of bending space like that. It was said one of the Ten Great Regalia had a Regalia capable of that.

Zhou Yu stiffened when he saw Zheng Kai, "Zheng Kai?" He muttered, "What are you doing here, did you bring this man here?!"

"I did, he's a friend of mine. I don't know what he did, but this man is a guest of the academy. What is the meaning of this, instructor Zhou Yu."

"Guest?" Zhou Yu snorted, "You call this a 'guest'? If he causes trouble in the academy, then he should be penalized just like a student! This man injured His Highness the Fourth Prince! If the Royal Family chooses to investigate this manner, the academy could be held liable! And if they do, then the Fourth Prince won't leave matters like this—if we detain this man, then the Fourth

Prince won't take his anger out on the academy!"

"What?!" Zheng Kai whirled around to face Bai Yunfei, "Did....did you injure Wu Yang? Really?! How'd that happen?"

Bai Yunfei shrugged, "I didn't even know who he was. He's the one that decided to attack me. I just knocked him out, that's all...."

"....." A corner of Zheng Kai's mouth twitched upwards for a moment before he gave him a thumbs up of 'you did good'. For some reason, Bai Yunfei had the feeling that Zheng Kai was taking enjoyment from Wu Yang's pains?

Did Zheng Kai not like Wu Yang?

Bai Yunfei decided now wasn't time for such thoughts though.

Zheng Kai looked back to Zhou Yu, "Brother Bai is a friend of mine and guest of the house of Zheng. There's no need for you to worry if he 'runs', instructor Zhou Yu. If the Royal Family decides to pursue the matter, have them ask for the Zheng, that way the academy won't be affected. Will that do?"

Though Zheng Kai referred to the other man as 'instructor', Bai Yunfei had the feeling he didn't really respect the man at all.

Zheng Kai's eye wandered over to Mo Wanxia for a moment, then as if he realized who she was, he hurried on back to where Bai Yunfei was, a little faster than expected, "Well then, brother Bai, let's leave this place. Your business must be done, yes? Let me take you to North Thirteenth Street, there's a good restaurant I know, their food is one of the best...."

Seeing how strangely Zheng Kai was acting, Bai Yunfei decided not to remark about it. Leaving this place as soon as possible would be wise, and so Bai Yunfei nodded to leave with him.

"Stop ri—" Zhou Yu stepped forward, ready to issue another halting order when he paused, as if suddenly hearing something. Turning to his right to the stone building there, Zhou Yu stood there incredulously for a moment, but he said nothing more to

stop the two from leaving.

Mo Wanxia was absolutely silent. Everything that had happened in the last two or three minutes had been far too much for her to process. By the time she had fully realized what was going on, Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai were already far away. “Hmph! He’s a friend of that pervert? If I’d known earlier, I wouldn’t have been so worried....pah, I should’ve let Wu Yang beat him!”

Clearly, there was some sort of animosity between her and Zheng Kai, so her first impression of Bai Yunfei was of that she ‘disliked’ him....

.....

North Thirteenth Street of the Capital.

Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai were seated on the second floor of a grandiose restaurant, eating and drinking the foods on the table to their delight.

Bai Yunfei had given Zheng Kai a quick rundown on what had happened with Mo Wanxia and Wu Yang, eliciting a groan from Zheng Kai. “Man....you’re an unlucky one. Your first meeting with another student was that crazy woman Mo Wanxia. It’s a good thing you were strong enough, who knows what would’ve happened otherwise.

“But still....don’t you think you overdid it a bit? Knocking Wu Yang out in one blow? How’d you do that?” He asked Bai Yunfei in between their bites.

“Haha, it was his fault.” Bai Yunfei smiled, “Hey, Zheng Kai, is that person really the Fourth Prince? Is that how a prince should act? He was completely unreasonable to talk with.”

“What’s wrong? You think a prince can’t be unreasonable?” Zheng Kai laughed, “Wu Yang is well known for being unreasonable. He’s an incompetent prince and does nothing but idle around everyday. He’s pretty much untouchable in the Capital

though, so not many people try to bother him. He does know how to restrain himself sometimes, so all his misdemeanors are pretty small in scale. The Royal Family doesn't really bother him if it's small time issues.”

“Oh....” Bai Yunfei nodded his head knowingly, “And that girl, Mo Wanxia? Who's she? You sleep with her before?”

“Er....” Zheng Kai hesitated to answer, “She....she's a sixth year student of class one in the fire course. A genius she is as a late-stage Soul Exalt at the age of twenty-seven. But she's quick to anger and goes out of control sometimes. Just like Wu Yang, there's not many that tries to bother her since she's the chairman's granddaughter....”

“Chairman's granddaughter?” Bai Yunfei spoke up, “The same one you tried to pick up?!”

“Wha—shh!!” Zheng Kai spluttered, hurrying to shush Bai Yunfei, “Can you not bring that up? Man, I regret that....I first met her when I accidentally walked into the women's baths and saw her bathing there....In all honesty, I swear I didn't look! I tried to leave the moment I felt her aura, but then she found me. She tried to kill me for a whole month after that, so I don't like going back to the academy....”

Bai Yunfei spat out his mouthful of soup, a baffled look on his eyes. ‘Accidentally’ entering the ‘womens’ bath’?

“You were trying to peep weren't you, it doesn't matter if you saw or not, you deserved that....”

“Also, do you and Wu Yang not like each other? Did he try and help Mo Wanxia chase you down?” Bai Yunfei asked, remembering how Zheng Kai looked back then when he heard about Wu Yang being hurt.

“Hehe, yeah, that's right. That ass was even angrier than Mo Wanxia. The way he looked you would've thought I stole his wife.

He wanted to duel me, but nothing came from that. Still, he never liked me since then.”

Bai Yunfei shook his head. Whether it was Mo Wanxia, Wu Yang, or even Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei definitely weren’t ‘model students’ by any means....

There was a sudden clamor from the floor below. Turning around, Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai saw the proprietor of the restaurant escort a scholarly-looking gentleman up to the second floor where they were.

Standing behind this man were two other men with extraordinary auras of their own. They must’ve be the bodyguards of the man in front, Bai Yunfei thought. The moment they stepped onto the second floor, the man came walking over to the table Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai was!

Zheng Kai looked shocked at his entrance. “The second prince?! He’s....why is he here?!”

“The second prince?” Bai Yunfei asked, “You mean him?”

“Yeah, that’s the Second Prince Wu Zhuo.....Wu Yang’s second brother!”

Bai Yunfei’s eyebrows flew to the top of his head. Was danger already knocking on his doors so soon? Did the second prince want revenge for his younger brother?

Chapter 526: The Second Prince, Wu Zhuo

The second prince of the empire, Wu Zhuo, wore rich purple robes, though they had no runic marking or decorative lines on them. His hair was tied together in a braid behind him, and the smile on his face was curled upwards in a gentle smile. Combined with his calm demeanor, Bai Yunfei would've assumed this was a scholar who did nothing but read rather than a prince.

The prince didn't look hostile either as he approached Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai. Rather, he approached the two looking more like he was a friend coming to say hello.

Zheng Kai, as it appeared to Bai Yunfei, respected the second prince quite heavily. Giving Bai Yunfei a quick look, he stood up to bow and greet the man, "Your Highness the Second Prince, what brings you here to this place?"

He was familiar with the prince it would seem.

Wu Zhuo shook his hand to wave the proprietor away. Smiling, he greeted Zheng Kai, "Ah, Zheng Kai! It's been a long time since I saw you. I only just came back from the White Stone Province. I heard you and Huang Bin came across some trouble yesterday night? Are you alright?"

Zheng Kai smiled. "Thank you for your concern, Your Highness, but it was nothing more than a minor inconvenience. Our houses are taking care of it. Please, Your Highness, please have a seat."

Wu Zhuo sat in the seat next to table to look at Bai Yunfei, "And you are....?"

A flicker of uncertainty crossed Zheng Kai's eyes, but he answered Wu Zhuo straight away, "This is my friend, Bai Yunfei, student of the Crafting School."

He was unsure if Wu Zhuo knew about the fact that Bai Yunfei hurt Wu Yang or not, but it was best to establish Bai Yunfei's

identity and status as quickly as possible, for Bai Yunfei's own sake.

Bai Yunfei nodded towards Wu Zhuo, "It is an honor to meet you, Your Highness."

"The Crafting School?" Wu Zhuo replied with raised eyebrows, "Bai Yunfei? Are you perhaps....the new disciple of headmaster Zi Jin mentioned several years ago?"

Bai Yunfei blinked, he hadn't thought that his name would be known even here—was he really that famous?

Zheng Kai replied on his behalf, "That's right. Bai Yunfei is the newest prodigy from the Crafting School and the very same person who helped stop the soulbeast wave in Praestia Pass."

Another flicker of light crossed Wu Zhuo's eyes as he regarded Bai Yunfei with more admiration than before, "How unexpected to meet you here, brother Bai. Your feats in Praestia Pass made its way to even here. I thought you'd find your spot among the Ten Prodigies, but when you disappeared after that, I felt it quite regretful...."

He shook his head with a sigh, "My brother's loss by your hands isn't a bad one. If it's you, he lost to a worthy opponent."

His words caused Bai Yunfei's heart to skip a beat—Wu Zhuo knew about the trouble that happened between his brother and Bai Yunfei!

But it seemed that he didn't really care about revenge. How strange.

Somewhat embarrassed, Bai Yunfei spoke, "Th—this one really didn't know it was His Highness the Fourth Prince. If this one may beg for pardon for harming your brother...."

Though he knew he did no wrong, Bai Yunfei tried his best to sound as honest and modest as possible so he could resolve the situation quickly.

“Haha, don’t apologize, brother Bai. I know my fourth brother, he must’ve been the one to start causing trouble. You teaching him a lesson will let him realize there are people outside his sphere of influence. I hope he’ll learn from this and be less arrogant.”

Wu Zhuo’s words were noticeably surprising to Bai Yunfei. How was this man so ‘reasonable’? How was he so completely different to his younger brother!

“I came across my younger brother earlier, he told me he was defeated in one blow by someone of his age and was with Zheng Kai. I was curious so I came over to investigate, but I admit, I was surprised to find it’s you, brother Bai.”

As if suddenly thinking about something, he spoke, “Brother Bai, you are senior Zi Jin’s disciple and strong enough to defeat Wu Yang, your arrival in the Capital....must be the Crafting School’s wish? Is Tianhun Academy planning to open up a section on crafting, and....taught by you?”

The look on Bai Yunfei’s face grew even wider—just how did Wu Zhuo know all of this?!

His reaction was more than enough for Wu Zhuo to confirm his doubts, “Don’t be alarmed, brother Bai. The Royal Family met with the chairman before on this issue before to request for the Crafting School to open a section in Tianhun Academy. It’s not a widely-known fact, only I and a few select others know.”

Bai Yunfei was still surprised, “I see. You are correct, Your Highness, the academy is opening a section for crafting this time, and my master has ordered me to stay here and teach. I am unsure of my success, but it is my duty to try my best.”

“Haha, brother Bai, you are quite harsh on yourself. I’m sure you’ll do excellent and look forward to your work.” Wu Zhuo smiled, “If there’s anything you might need in the future, the academy and Royal Family will not hesitate to support you in your endeavors.”

.....

Wu Zhuo and Bai Yunfei continued to talk a little more after that, exchanging pleasantries and other talks. In Bai Yunfei's opinion, Wu Zhuo didn't seem to hold himself like a prince much, but he was a great man nonetheless.

After a while, Wu Zhuo finally bid farewell and left.

After he left, Zheng Kai slammed his palm onto the tables in delayed surprise, "Brother Bai! What was that you said earlier? You're going to be teaching?! A section on crafting?!"

He hadn't been talking much when Wu Zhuo was here and was deep in heavy thought the moment Wu Zhuo even mentioned the 'course on crafting'. But when Wu Zhuo left, he immediately started to speak to Bai Yunfei impatiently.

"Yes." Bai Yunfei sighed. "I didn't even know about it until I went to meet chairman Mo Huangkong. My master had orders for me to teach a class here about the art of crafting."

"....." Zheng Kai was speechless. A commotion would surely rise up among the Capital and academy if people were to learn about this.

"Does that mean.....you're going to be an instructor for the academy?!" Zheng Kai suddenly realized.

"I will be, yes."

"I...." Again, Zheng Kai was speechless, but only for two seconds. "Does this mean I'll be lower to you in rank?! I'm only a student, but you're an instructor. You're going to be higher in rank than me in the academy?!"

"Er...." A sweatdrop rolled down Bai Yunfei's face. He didn't know whether to laugh or cry at his question, "Well, why should we really care about that? You wouldn't think me of an instructor anyways, so let's stick with calling each other brother."

“That works,” Zheng Kai sighed, “Haha! What a development this was, you came to the Capital and will start class here as a....an instructor, haha! How envious, I actually wanted to be an instructor too you know, but the chairman said no. I don’t want to leave the academy, so I stayed as a student. You’ve it good, you’re the only crafting instructor the academy has....tsk tsk, an instructor. Every single female student will want your ‘guidance’....Teacher and female students.....class is over and they stay behind for one-on-one special tutoring....”

“.....”

.....

After finishing lunch, Zheng Kai took Bai Yunfei around the academy for a quick and easy tour. The Capital was large enough to need at least half a month to really get to know, so it was best that Bai Yunfei get acquainted with the place closest to him.

They returned to Zheng manor by the time it was dinner—though it was Zheng Kai who was ‘reluctant’ to return. Bai Yunfei himself had enough for one day, so he declined Zheng Kai’s proposal to stroll the night market and return for the night.

It was on their through the corridors of Zheng manor when Zheng Kai spoke up, “Why don’t I take you to North Eleventh Street tomorrow and show you where students like to hang out around most. There’s plenty of...”

“Haha, thank you for the idea, brother Zheng, but I need to prepare for my classes in the next two days. I need time to prepare.”

“Ah, I see....that’s too bad then. I’ll take you another time then.” Zheng Kai spoke a little crestfallen.

His reaction was a little surprising to Bai Yunfei. Zheng Kai clearly wanted to go to that place to play around, so why did he need Bai Yunfei there for, would he not go there by himself

normally?

Bai Yunfei himself didn't know, but Zheng Kai really didn't want to go if he didn't go.

Huang Bin, Chen Qiantan, and Jin Manlou were all busy with their family 'forbidding' them to go out in the meanwhile.

Zheng Kai would've suffered the same fate if not for him divulging Bai Yunfei's identity to his head of house. Then under the pretense of helping Bai Yunfei with his affairs was he able to head out. If Bai Yunfei didn't go, then Zheng Kai wouldn't be able to leave either....

Chapter 527: Preparing for Class

Bai Yunfei didn't start his meditation training when he got back like normal. Instead, he laid back on his bed and began to think about what happened today.

The fact that so many things had happened to him in his first whole day in the Capital had thoroughly destroyed what plans Bai Yunfei had.

He originally wanted to go stroll around the Capital and take a look around for what there was to do. And after he finished what his master wanted him to do, he'd wait around for a month or two before heading back to the Crafting School.

But those plans, it seemed, would have to be put to rest.

In the span of a single day, Bai Yunfei somehow became an instructor at Tianhun Academy where all the finest students gathered. Furthermore, he knocked out the fourth prince and got off on the wrong foot with another instructor there before meeting with the second prince....

Any one of those alone would've made Bai Yunfei sigh regardless.

This was the wonder that was the Capital! The people here weren't any weaker than Bai Yunfei, and even though they were older than Bai Yunfei, that didn't discount just how much of a genius they were. It was said that the granddaughter of the chairman became a late-stage Soul Exalt by the age of twenty-seven, that was a feat in itself not much worse than Jiang Fan, was it not?

His third senior Jiang Fan had taken some time to make the breakthrough from a late-stage Soul Ancestor to Soul Exalt, but Bai Yunfei was sure it wouldn't take long for him to become a late-stage Soul Exalt.

In terms of cultivation and training, the students of Tianhun

Academy weren't any worse than those of the Crafting School, as they well deserved to be.

.....

"But to become a teacher! What....what can I even teach them about?"

Bai Yunfei sighed, thinking about his master's orders for him to be an instructor. Was he to be like what his master was to him? To teach the art of crafting? That didn't feel right at all!

The way Zi Jin taught him was by taking into account the special circumstances of Bai Yunfei and hand-tailoring a personal teaching schedule for him. This wasn't an act that could be repeated and taught on a much higher scale, or at least, for Bai Yunfei.

"I don't even know what kind of students I'll be getting. Senior Mo said he'll pick from the fifth and sixth year students from the fire section, so that means the weakest will be a Soul Ancestor at most....every student here is a genius of some kind, so their understandings will be much higher than what I'm used to, won't that make it harder for me to teach?

"I can't even say they'll even understand some of the stuff I'll be talking about....

"Wonder how many students there'll be? If there's a lot, that'll be troublesome. I'll ask the chairman next time I guess, don't want to have too many students and be called incompetent....hopefully it'll be less than ten.

"Won't there be people who'll be older than me, if they're from the sixth year? Will they even listen to me....? I'll have to be careful and keep my real age a secret."

As of this current year, Bai Yunfei was twenty-four years old, though he was well experienced for his age rather than not. It was hard for people to define the actual age of a soul cultivator when they were in their mid-twenties to forties, so with Bai Yunfei's

strength, there'd definitely be people who would think he was at least in his thirties.

“Then again, it won’t be too bad being an instructor....” He thought about what Mo Huangkong had said to him, “If he’s going to be preparing several things, he’s probably going to give me some rare materials that even the Crafting School hardly gets to use, right? I can take some of those materials for the sake of ‘teaching’, and that won’t be a complete lie. It’ll help me out a lot too....”

In truth, Bai Yunfei didn’t really feel like he had mastered the art of crafting. He worked hard to attain the level of proficiency he had with it today, that much was for sure, but most of his efforts went towards increasing his own strength. He wasn’t in much of a hurry now to improve himself with how strong he was now, so once again, he could slow down and dedicate himself to the art of crafting.

He was after all a crafter. The skill of his school had to be mastered with perfection, and the soul armaments he made had to be flawless. This was also yet another way he could grow stronger.

“Three days to prepare, huh? Then I better think hard on what to teach! I can’t disappoint master Zi Jin, I’ll prepare for everything that might happen on the first day of class....”

.....

Bai Yunfei rose bright and early the next day. He stepped out from his room in the spacious western courtyards--oh so graciously provided to him by the Zheng manor--Bai Yunfei thought his living quarters to be quite special. It was a relatively large place for him to stay without any other guests. And aside from the maids and servants, no one else would be there to bother him.

It was in this courtyard that Bai Yunfei set up his cauldron along with the materials he gathered over the past few years in preparation to start crafting.

He wasn't trying to craft a perfectly powerful soul armament at the moment. What he was trying to do was prepare himself for the best state of mind to be in while crafting so that he could make sure he'd be able to teach his students about the topic without a problem on the first day of class.

One of the things he planned on doing was to show off his skill with the craft. If he was to be teaching a course on crafting, it stood to reason he showed off what the art could do.

He would be crafting a soul armament to establish his identity and credibility as an instructor capable of the art of crafting. With that, there wouldn't be any student that'd deny otherwise.

Since failure wasn't an option, Bai Yunfei had to concentrate all his energy into crafting a high-earth tier soul armament at the very least to show off the might of the Crafting School.

Crafting one of those as a mid-stage Soul Exalt was relatively hard, but doable for someone like Bai Yunfei, who had two fireseed essences. For most crafter, it'd require them being late-stage Soul Exalts before they could even hope crafting a high-earth tier soul armament.

Heaven-tier soul armaments required a crafter to be a Soul King before they could pull it off. To the Crafting School, a heaven-tier soul armament being made wasn't anything to be wowed over, but not for the outside world. Everyone would go crazy over a heaven-tier soul armament being made.

It was Soul Kings for the most part that had a heaven-tier soul armament, and even then, they were usually low-heaven tier. Only a scant few Soul Kings have mid-heaven tier soul armaments. Aside from them, only those belonging to a wealthy family or having some sort of high background would have one.

Zheng Kai was another shining example of that. The black fan he wielded was a low-heaven tier soul armament and was also a very rare soul armament with a space affinity.

Bai Yunfei starting to craft had caught the attention of many people in the courtyard. Those within a kilometer or two of the courtyard Bai Yunfei was in felt the increase of heat and the red light shining from the courtyards. Many had even panicked a bit, thinking that the courtyard caught on fire.

Like the others, Zheng Kai was one of the few that came by in wonder. Watching as a powerful-looking soul armament popped out from the cauldron, he clicked his tongue in amazement.

Bai Yunfei had first wanted to pay his respects to the leading figures of Zheng manor when he first arrived, but when he was informed that they were all currently busy managing other affairs, Bai Yunfei decided to worry about his own things first and meet with them later. And now that he was busy ‘preparing for class’, Bai Yunfei decided then that now wasn’t the time to meet with them.

And so in no time at all, three days went by, and Bai Yunfei was ready to start his classes....

Chapter 528: First Day of Class

Tianhun Academy went into a flummox over the course of the next few days. Students and instructors alike were chattering up a storm as they discussed the newest piece of gossip to hit their academy.

A....crafting class was to be opened and offered!

A student from the Crafting School was to come and teach the academy the art of crafting!

The Crafting School was considered to be a very amazing school in the eyes of many soul cultivators. Although the majority of soul cultivators had a soul armament or two, soul armaments were still very hard to get. A mid-earth or even high-earth tier soul armament would see to many people fighting over them, and those who could craft them, namely the Crafting School, were thus seen as people to respect for their prowess.

Crafters needn't fight others for soul armaments. They only need to 'create'! They could craft as many soul armaments as their hearts content, and just one earth tier soul armament wasn't even much to them!

Those who were happiest to hear about this piece of hot news were the fifth and sixth year students from the fire section. The new class on crafting would choose among them to be its newest students!

Their happiness didn't last for long. Shortly afterwards, the chairman himself came out with a list of names for those that'd be in the class, and the disappointment of many, there were only seven names on that list. The entire fire section was disappointed, but they couldn't argue with the chairman's decision, they could only accept his decision and look on in jealousy at those who were accepted.

Every student accepted into the class was a genius among their peers. Even among the entire academy as a whole, they were the cream of the crop and not one student could possibly deny saying the chairman had made the right choice.

And so, every single student—the newly accepted crafting students most definitely—waited expectantly for the day the crafting course would start, and for the ‘rumored’ crafting instructor to appear....

.....

By the dawn of the first day of classes, Bai Yunfei tidied himself up and prepared to leave to Tianhun Academy with Zheng Kai.

He had the permafrost mastiff and blue-eyes wyrm stay behind this time. Only Xiao Qi would accompany him to class today, since he didn’t expect to come across any trouble, and having multiple soulbeasts with him wouldn’t be wise. With so many eyes on him today, having the permafrost mastiff there under scrutiny wouldn’t be the best of ideas, just in case someone figured out its actual identity.

Zheng Kai had leapt at the chance to leave the manor. After being ‘cooped’ in his own home for three whole days, he was even happier than Bai Yunfei that day. Like the other students, he was extremely curious how Bai Yunfei would teach the class and pestered Bai Yunfei with questions on the way there. But Bai Yunfei only smiled, saying to Zheng Kai that he’d see in time, much to Zheng Kai’s consternation.

There hadn’t been any welcoming ceremony or anything when they stepped onto the academy. No one saw anything out of the ordinary from Bai Yunfei’s entrance to all the way in the fifth and sixth year sections.

But the only difference there was that when Bai Yunfei reached this part of the academy, he would walk for one of the buildings to the east.

But first, Bai Yunfei had to go to the stone building the chairman Mo Huangkong was in. Mo Huangkong had said that all preparations for the class would be handled by him, Bai Yunfei just needed to show up that day to teach. Unsure of what Mo Huangkong had in mind, Bai Yunfei decided to head there first to see what exactly it was. He also had a few plans for today's lessons, so he wanted to ask the chairman for some help—Bai Yunfei was quite expectant to see just what kind of materials the chairman had promised.

Zheng Kai didn't get too close to the stone building, leaving Bai Yunfei to walk there only to meet with the chairman.

.....

“Ah, you’re here, Yunfei.” Mo Huangkong smiled in greeting, “How are things? Are you prepared for today? What do you plan to do?”

“Rest assured, senior Mo, I’ve several things in mind. But I’d like to ask first, just how many students will I be teaching?”

“Don’t you worry, Yunfei. I won’t unload too many students onto you all at once. I’ve picked seven students in total: four sixth years and three fifth years, all of them being the top of their classes.”

“Only seven people.” Bai Yunfei sighed in relief.

“I won’t lie, senior Mo, I plan to craft a soul armament for everyone to see today. I know the academy has geniuses of all sorts gathered here, many might not be willing to accept me as their instructor. So if I can prove my abilities as a crafter, they might become more willing to accept me, or decide to drop the class if they choose. I only wish to teach those who are willing to learn from me.”

“Oh?” Mo Huangkong laughed, “That much will be of no issue. I did promise to meet whatever needs you have. If you’re not satisfied with the students I picked, you are free to add or subtract

from their numbers as you wish.”

His answer was another weight off Bai Yunfei’s shoulders. “Furthermore.....senior Mo, as I said earlier, I plan on crafting a soul armament. For the sake of a high quality one, I will need to choose from the best materials offered. I recall senior Mo saying that the academy will offer its stockpile of materials, so if I may....”

“Haha, that can be arranged as well....” Mo Huangkong nodded, “it really is no problem really, I would’ve brought you there to see our warehouse even if you hadn’t mentioned it. I am not a man who makes empty promises. Allow me to show you at once where you are allowed to take materials from for your class.”

Bai Yunfei’s vision spun a little when Mo Huangkong placed a hand onto his right shoulder. The table that they had been sitting at fell away from the world, and before he could react, the two of them were....

Through a mysterious force of power, Bai Yunfei felt himself being taken through the world before his vision came back to him. And when he realized that, he saw that.....the environment around him was completely different than before!

Or perhaps it was better to say where Bai Yunfei once sat within the stone building was now a completely different place!

“Tele—Teleportation!”

Bai Yunfei realized with a start. Mo Huangkong wasn’t only capable of teleportation, he was capable of bringing Bai Yunfei with him!

“Take a look, Yunfei. You may take any materials here to help you craft a soul armament today. You may come and go here later for a second and third trip later.”

Mo Huangkong spoke to the still dazed Bai Yunfei.

For as far as the eyes could see, Bai Yunfei was looking at things that left him in absolute shock and joy....

Chapter 529: Materials Warehouse

They were standing within a giant warehouse about a square kilometer in area and had shelves lining up row after row after row, just like in Mo Huangkong's library. But the only difference here was that the shelves were filled with all sorts of materials rather than books.

Plenty of lightstones adorned the walls, providing enough illumination in the area to reveal just how many materials there were in the warehouse.

They were only simple shelves with materials, but Bai Yunfei was left absolutely breathless with what he saw. He had been prepared to see a veritable treasure trove of materials, but this sight in front of him exceeded all expectations he had.

All of the materials were neatly categorized, separated, and arranged to differ between size, usages, and how they were arranged on the shelves. It was so neatly arranged that Bai Yunfei felt like he was back in the warehouse of the Crafting School, since only crafters knew the uses between materials usually.

From this alone, Bai Yunfei realized just how much effort the academy was willing to put towards having the academy offer a class on crafting.

All sorts of ore, soulgems, primal stones, and even plants....they shined and gleamed underneath the light.

Off to the side, Bai Yunfei even saw five large shelves filled with supplementary powder used for solidifying the soul armament. That type of stuff was used only for crafting and nothing else.

Looking around the warehouse would need more than just his eyesight to fully explore. Using his soulsense, Bai Yunfei was able to get a good grasp of what was stored here. He wouldn't be lacking in material here, as the warehouse had everything he could

practically want. He took the best he could find, putting them onto a table in the corner to keep track of what was what. With those materials, Bai Yunfei was guaranteed a high-earth tier soul armament. One of the things Bai Yunfei found even was a clump of golden ore concentrate, an item Bai Yunfei once saw his senior Kou Changkong use before to craft a heaven tier soul armament.

With each material he found, Bai Yunfei's gleamed even brighter with uncontrolled glee. It was a treasure trove of unbelievable proportions that no crafter wouldn't drool over.

Mo Huangkong looked pleased at his reaction, "Is it to your satisfaction, Yunfei? From today onwards, you may take whatever you need from here, whether it's for your classes or for your own crafting needs. Inform me if there is a shortage of something and I will have someone restock them."

Bai Yunfei sucked in a sharp breath of air, "Thank you for your generosity, senior Mo! I will do my best to teach the art of crafting to my students!"

If there was any slightest hints of hesitation or indifference Bai Yunfei had about the situation, there was none now. It was his responsibility to succeed now. If Mo Huangkong was investing so much on him, then Bai Yunfei could hardly let him down.

"Haha, you are an instructor of this academy, call me chairman from now on." Mo Huangkong smiled, "I've faith in your abilities. Feel free to pick whatever other materials you need and I'll bring you to your class."

Bai Yunfei nodded, breathless almost as he looked at the materials all around him. Previously, he hadn't thought that the academy would have such a comprehensive stock of materials, but now that he realized the possibilities, Bai Yunfei wasn't willing to give it up. With these materials, he'd be able to pick the best materials and create the best soul armaments to date.

.....

Ten minutes later, two people appeared right in front of a large building in the eastern corner of the academy grounds. It was Mo Huangkong and Bai Yunfei, who traveled there by walking rather than teleporting.

It was so Bai Yunfei would know where the warehouse was, and how to get to and from from there. Giving the ‘warehouse’ key to Bai Yunfei, Mo Huangkong instructed him to treat it well and allowed him free reign with the materials.

“Well then, I’m sure your students are already waiting for you. If you’re ready, you may begin your classes whenever.” Mo Huangkong pointed to a two-story tall building about a kilometer to the left. “That is the classroom you’ll be teaching in. You may, of course, choose any other place if this one isn’t to your liking.”

“Will you not be coming with me, chairman?”

“There’s no need for me to. I’ve faith in your abilities, and I will wait for your good news. There will be people who observe how you run your class, but pay them no mind, do as you normally do and all will be fine.”

As Mo Huangkong prepared to leave, Bai Yunfei suddenly spoke out, sounding a little embarrassed, “Ah—chairman, if...if I may, would it be possible for you to bring me back to the stone building?”

“Hm?” Mo Huangkong spoke, “What business do you have there?”

“A friend came here with me and is currently waiting for me. I wish to walk with him back to the classroom.”

“I see, very well then, let us go.”

Without minding at all, Mo Huangkong waved his hand, and the two persons disappeared from sight.

.....

Back in front of the stone building, Bai Yunfei looked for Zheng

Kai and Xiao Qi before making their way back to the ‘classroom’.

“Brother Bai, you said your classroom will be in that building?” Zheng Kai pointed, “I remember that’s where the sixth year students from the fire section spar with each other. Is the chairman really giving you that place? The entire building?”

“He must have,” Bai Yunfei nodded, “the chairman said the students will be waiting there, but I have to go see if that environment is suitable first. If it isn’t, then I’ll find a new place to hold classes.”

His eyes drifted away to the giant mountain behind the academy.

“Wonder which students the chairman gave you, you said they’re all from the fifth and sixth years, right? They’ll definitely be the best of the bests, I’ll tell you that. Your crafting class will be where all the geniuses among geniuses gather!!” Zheng Kai sighed before suddenly thinking about something. “Haha, I just realized something, brother Bai. You’ve just ‘stolen’ the students from the other instructor, and the best ones to boot. The fifth years has nine classes and the sixth years have five, wonder which instructors had just had their students ‘stolen’! With that, they’ll definitely come to dislike you for that, haha!! Better take care of yourself now....”

“Er....” Bai Yunfei looked a little unsure at the words of Zheng Kai. Judging from his reaction, one of those instructors surely had to be the one who attack him several days before, could it?

The two males continued walking for a moment on the roads before finally coming close to their destination.

Right there in front of the building, both Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai saw a sight that caused them both to start in surprise.

There weren’t many students on the way here, and that was to be expected, but the sight in front of the building was definitely a sight to behold....

Chapter 530: Challenge From An Academy Instructor

Bai Yunfei had been wondering why there hadn't been many students on their way here. At first, he had thought that they were all in class already, but as things turned out, they were all gathered over here.

A good hundreds of meters away, Bai Yunfei could see groups of threes and fives all gathered up in front of the 'classroom'.

Many of them were young women and men in their twenties—though a few looked to be in their teens—they surely had to be the students of the academy and from the fifth and sixth years. There were a good few numbers of middle-aged men and women, though their auras were starkly different to the students gathered there. From what Bai Yunfei could sense, they had to be the instructors.

If Bai Yunfei had to give a quick count of how many people were here, he'd say there was at least four hundred to five hundred of them.

The vast majority of them were from the fifth or sixth year fire section, though some were from the other elemental sections, and even fewer were 'outsiders'.

The establishment of the crafting class caused quite a stir among the academy. With today being its opening day, none of the students here wanted to miss it. If not for the academy taking control of the situation to ensure it didn't go out of hand, all of the soul cultivators in the academy if not the Capital would be gathered here to watch. Even with this 'small amount' of people here, it was still a very considerable amount of spectators.

Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai's arrival didn't garner much attention from the crowd, as no one recognized Bai Yunfei as being the instructor. None of them knew for that matter and had no way of

knowing just what their crafting instructor would even look like.

Those that did take notice of Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai did exist, however. Several people were pointing in their direction, though Bai Yunfei noticed it was mainly the girls who were pointing fingers at Zheng Kai in either admiration or hatred. They must've been the ones who he flirted with before....

Bai Yunfei had been fully expectant that there'd be people wanting to 'observe' his class, Bai Yunfei never thought there'd be such a large amount. Suddenly, Bai Yunfei felt himself grow nervous. He had never had a situation like this before.

As Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai made their way towards the building, a voice suddenly called out to them....

"Bai Yunfei!!"

A furious voice from the crowd cried out to Bai Yunfei, leaping out in a stream of red light. Flying hundreds of meters to them, the red light came to a descent just twenty meters away from Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai.

Bai Yunfei 'knew' this man—it was the same instructor who came forward to detain him when he had knocked out Wu Yang a little over three days ago, Zhou Yu.

Right now, the other instructor was glaring at Bai Yunfei with hateful eyes as if Bai Yunfei had stolen something that was rightfully his.

Plenty of people had noticed Zhou Yu's reaction to Bai Yunfei and turned to look at the three.

So surprised that he came to a stop, Bai Yunfei regarded Zhou Yu with a strange expression, "Yes?"

Could he really be here to try and detain him for hurting the fourth prince?

"I wish to challenge you, Bai Yunfei!"

To mystify Bai Yunfei even more, Zhou Yu had not only called out his name, but also something else!

A challenge....he wanted a challenge?!

Bai Yunfei really wanted to blurt out his thoughts, but he suppressed it. The people around him were already buzzing with gossip at the scene.

“That’s the class one instructor for the sixth year fire course, Zhou Yu! What’s he doing?”

“Did I hear that right?? Did Zhou Yu really say what I think he said? A challenge?! With that guy with Zheng Kai? Is he even a student? What’s the instructor doing that for?”

“Who’s that guy? Does the instructor hate him or somethin—hold on! Bai Yunfei?! Is that what instructor Zhou Yu said? I swear I’ve heard this name before!”

“Isn’t the new instructor for the crafting class called Bai Yunfei? Are they the same person? No way!”

“Him?! Are you kidding?! He looks like he’s in his twenties! What’s he playing at being the instructor?! He looks more like a student than instructor!”

“I think I’ve heard the crafting instructor is a genius from the Crafting School. And I also heard that the new disciple of their headmaster Zi Jin is a young man. Don’t you think it might be him?”

“If it is, then....I might know why instructor Zhou Yu is challenging him. Two of the seven students joining the crafting class are the students instructor Zhou Yu is proud of most. Now that they’re Bai Yunfei’s students, you can’t really blame him for getting angry. He’s probably sulking about it and wants to put the new instructor in his place, you bet?”

“Really? Instructor Zhou Yu isn’t all that bad, but he’s a little impulsive. No other instructor would like their star students being

taken, but only he would do something like this. I heard when Bai Yunfei came onto the academy grounds three days ago, he fought with instructor Zhou Yu there, there has to be a grudge between them!”

“I saw what happened that day! I didn’t think that was Bai Yunfei at first, he was super amazing! He beat the mid-stage Soul Exalt Wu Yang in one move and then stopped instructor Zhou Yu’s attack like it was nothing. They didn’t fight, but he’s definitely super strong.”

“I never thought there’d be such fun right before the class would even start, haha! A showdown between instructors? I’ve barely seen any of those! Wonder how Bai Yunfei’s going to react.”

“He shouldn’t be, right? Instructor Zhou Yu is a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, aside from the Soul King instructors, he’s one of the strongest instructors the academy has. Even if Bai Yunfei’s strong, he’s only a mid-stage Soul Exalt, how could he possibly beat instructor Zhou Yu?”

“That’s not for certain either though. It’s his first day teaching here and he’s already getting a challenge. If he doesn’t address that now, how’s he going to continue teaching?”

“.....”

In a short ten seconds, the entire area was already talking about the fight. Though it was very noisy with their chattering, Bai Yunfei could understand what they were saying for the most part. Some of these people were making some sense though, there was a ‘reason’ behind this fight.

Zheng Kai had called it earlier. It was because of the fact that Zhou Yu’s students were ‘stolen’ from him that this happened....

None of the students or instructors were moving to intervene with the situation either, much to Bai Yunfei’s surprise. They were all expectant to see how Bai Yunfei would deal with this situation

with an almost sadistic eye.

“Bai Yunfei, you are a new instructor, and I am but an instructor that wishes to see the might of the Crafting School. Comparing notes between instructors is a rather common thing here, we fight fairly and without fear of severely harming the other....” Zhou Yu cupped his hands together with a voice as sweet as honey, “Are you willing to take the challenge or not?”

His final words were a little imperious sounding, as if daring Bai Yunfei to refuse to challenge and be labeled a timid coward.

This was his way of knocking Bai Yunfei off his high horse without much trouble to himself. This way, it’d show just how weak the crafting instructor and how his strength was by far lower than his mystique. By making a fool of Bai Yunfei, he’d be able to vent off his own anger.

Zheng Kai narrowed his eyes as if to rebuke Zhou Yu for his excessiveness. Turning his head to Bai Yunfei, he spoke, “Brother Bai, you shouldn’t have to li—”

But Bai Yunfei held his hand up to stop him. Taking two steps forward, Bai Yunfei’s lips curled into a smile, “This one will accept your challenge, instructor Zhou Yu. This’ll be a warm up exercise before I start my lesson.”

Chapter 531: Only Defending Never Attacking

Everyone went silent at his answer—he was actually going to fight?!

Did Bai Yunfei had that much faith in his own strength against Zhou Yu? Everyone there shook their heads at the foolishness of Bai Yunfei's overconfidence.

“Brother Bai, are you really going to fight him?” Zheng Kai gaped at him, “He’s a peak late-stage Soul Exalt and one of the strongest in the academy, you should...”

Bai Yunfei shook his head, “Don’t worry, brother Zheng. I’ve faith in my strength. I won’t be losing.”

Zheng Kai grew silent. He knew Bai Yunfei wasn’t a man to act on his impulses, if Bai Yunfei said he had faith in himself, then that was it. Even he didn’t really know just how strong Bai Yunfei was, but that battle when they first met was more than enough for Zheng Kai to spare him the benefit of doubt.

Like the others, Zhou Yu was a little surprised with how fast Bai Yunfei agreed to the challenge. Blinking several times before sneering in contempt, Zhou Yu grew confident. He had no doubt in his mind that he’d win, and now that Bai Yunfei had agreed to the challenge, Zhou Yu could beat him black and blue in front of a large audience to prove that the crafting instructor wasn’t as strong as people thought.

“Where shall we fight, here?” Bai Yunfei asked him.

Zhou Yu pointed behind himself, “There’s an outdoors arena over there, we’ll go there!”

He took off towards the arena before Bai Yunfei could reply to that. The other students and instructors were already making their way over to the said arena, and when Bai Yunfei looked, he too saw

an outdoor arena about about two kilometers away. There was an elevated platform about a meter high into the air and five hundred meters squared. Compared to the area around it, the arena was clearly of more durable make.

Smiling, Bai Yunfei headed towards the arena. In his mind, he was already thinking about how to fight the upcoming battle.

The reason why he accepted the challenge—aside from his faith in his strength—was to establish himself in the hierarchy. Him being a new instructor obviously landed him on the lower part of the power hierarchy of the academy, so he had to avoid being labeled anything negative before his first class even started. As such, he might as well fight it out this time to show everyone that he was strong and well deserving to be the instructor for crafting.

By now, Bai Yunfei and Zhou Yu were both standing on top of the platform, and the audience all gathered around the ring, whispering and chattering to one another.

.....

Standing just a hundred meters away from Bai Yunfei, Zhou Yu's eyes glistened, “We are merely just comparing notes, and not fighting a battle to the death. But seeing how swords are blind, injuries are hard to avoid. If you wish to surrender, say it sooner rather than later.”

Bai Yunfei smiled. “Thanks for the warning. Let's compare notes then, I've a class to teach.”

“You!!” Zhou Yu spat, unimpressed with Bai Yunfei's attitude. Stepping forward, he flew off towards Bai Yunfei to make the first attack!

Closing in the hundred meters of distance, Zhou Yu brought his right hand high, fire combusting out from it before lashing out a fiery punch onto Bai Yunfei's chest. It was only a precautionary attack, but the strength behind it was strong enough for even a

late-stage Soul Exalt to handle.

But Bai Yunfei....didn't move, much to the shock of the others!

His lips were curled into a smirk, as if uncaring for this attack. When the punch was close enough to him, Bai Yunfei waved his right hand, bringing out an orange flash of light from his ring to erect a barrier of orange light around his person.

“Boom!!”

Zhou Yu's fist smashed against the barrier, but he was unable to blow past it! Instead, he was flung backwards while Bai Yunfei remained steadfast! The barrier around Bai Yunfei had only flickered a bit before returning back to normal.

Zhou Yu was amazed, but he rather than stand still in his amazement, he flew forward again with another mighty punch, only to achieve the same effect as last time where he was flung back again.

“Bang! Bang! Bang!”

One blow after another, Zhou Yu's figure went back and forth to strike against Bai Yunfei's barrier. With each hit, he was flung back again before he attempted once more from a different angle.

Steady, Bai Yunfei watched again and again as Zhou Yu tried to strike at his shield without any success.

The audience was amazed at what they were watching. They thought an intense battle would take place, but all it was was Zhou Yu striking at what appeared to be a ‘wooden pillar’.

Those with sharp eyes could see that among the flashes of intermittent light was the Cataclysmic Seal, flashing whenever Zhou Yu tried to strike at Bai Yunfei.

After a minute of striking non-stop, Zhou Yu was starting to feel more surprised than before. He was putting all of his strength behind each of his attacks, but it was doing absolutely nothing on

his opponent. After one last blow where it did nothing, Zhou Yu narrowed his eyes and flew into the air. His soulforce began to climb rapidly as elemental fire spiralled around him. A needle-like cone made of fire materialized above his right hand, and like a drill, it start to rotate faster and faster. This had to be a soul skill.

Bai Yunfei's eyes lit up. Not even waiting for his opponent to attack, Bai Yunfei waved his right hand, sending the Cataclysmic Seal flowing forward with increased speed towards Zhou Yu before he could finish winding up his attack.

Zhou Yu was startled—he hadn't expected Bai Yunfei's soul armament to be able to go from defense to offense like that. Its transition had been quick and deadly, and his fire needle hadn't yet fully finished when he was forced to bring his left arm up to block the Cataclysmic Seal

“Clank!!”

There was a clanking sound as the Cataclysmic Seal was stopped inches away from Zhou Yu before it was deflected past his sides, spinning him around slightly. His left arm ached with pain from the blow even despite the high-earth tier bracer he had on his left arm for defense. But even despite the pain, Zhou Yu was remembered the task at hand and sent the fire drill down like a bullet towards Bai Yunfei!

This elemental attack was far stronger than his normal blows with his fist. The Cataclysmic Seal was already far away enough for Bai Yunfei to not be able to make use of its barrier, making everyone believe Bai Yunfei would move out of the way in order to evade being hit by it.

But Bai Yunfei didn't move from his spot! He slowly raised his right hand at the drill, looking as if he was ready to meet the incoming attack with his right palm head on!

Practically moments before the drill touched his hand, the audience could see a flash of stunning red light flash from the

purple and black glove on his right hand. Then, with that light, Bai Yunfei's hand pinched at the tip of the drill!

“Boom!!”

There was an explosion as the drill came to a sudden stop, and then half a second later, it dissipated!

Chapter 532: Rebound

Elemental fire rippled everywhere from where Bai Yunfei stood, but Bai Yunfei himself was completely unharmed!

Several people from the audience gasped at the sight. They all knew just from the sight alone that the glove Bai Yunfei wore on his right hand was a powerful soul armament!

Zhou Yu stood there in the skies as well, his face was repudiating the fact that his strongest skill had been so easily stopped by Bai Yunfei!

His left arm was still trembling from when the Cataclysmic Seal came forward to stop the fire drill from being sent out. Snarling, Zhou Yu's eyes flashed dangerously. His right arm shook to bring out a 1.3 meter long sword with a blade that was completely scarlet!

If his fists and feet were useless, then he'd use his soul armament!

“The Crimson Warblade! Instructor Zhou Yu is bringing out the Crimson Warblade! That’s a low-heaven tier soul armament! Barely any of the other instructors have a soul armament like that, what’s he doing taking it out now?!”

“I bet instructor Zhou Yu is feeling impatient. Now that he has the heaven-tier soul armament, there’ll definitely be danger now. How’s Bai Yunfei going to deal with this now?”

There were some loud gasps from the audience when Zhou Yu unsheathed his Crimson Warblade. Aside from those instructors who were Soul Kings, not many people here had a heaven-tier soul armament. It was only by luck that Zhou Yu came across his weapon, but he cherished it heavily.

He was unwilling to admit defeat. By bringing out his strongest soul armament, Zhou Yu would destroy Bai Yunfei’s defense and

claim victory.

Zhou Yu brandished the blade, unleashing a scorch mark onto the ground several meters long with a grunt. Leaping off against the ground with enough strength to leave an impact, he flew towards Bai Yunfei to deliver a sword stroke onto him.

And with this leap, he prepared himself to deliver a gravity-fueled strike onto Bai Yunfei's left shoulder!

This strike was also a precautionary attack, or maybe Zhou Yu was just thinking that Bai Yunfei would 'move'. He wanted Bai Yunfei to do that, that way, he'd be able to make use of his swordsmanship to deliver a beautiful strike.

But the thing that surprised him was the fact that Bai Yunfei still didn't make an attempt to dodge—even when the blade was nearly about to slice through his arm!

All Bai Yunfei did was take a half step back with his left leg and bring his right arm up to meet the sword!

Zhou Yu yelped in alarm. Trying as he might to pull his blade back up, it was a little too late for him to avoid contact. Bai Yunfei's arm greeted the sword with a loud clang!

"Clanggg!!"

The entire audience expected to see the sight of blood and flesh fly through the air rather than hear the sound of metal hitting metal. Several of the audience members gasped as Bai Yunfei's figure sunk slightly deeper into the ground—and fracturing it—while Zhou Yu's heaven-tier Crimson Warblade was....rebounded backwards!

The rebounding force had been strong enough to carry Zhou Yu with it. Staggering three full steps backwards, he managed to maintain his hold on it before staring at Bai Yunfei in shock.

While his blade had failed to cut away at Bai Yunfei's arm, it did however manage to cut away the sleeves of his robes, revealing a

bright-red bracer shining fiercely with light underneath it!

It was a soul armament! A soul armament capable of stopping even a heaven-tier soul armament without a problem!

“Impossible!” Zhou Yu cried. Unwilling to accept this reality in front of him, he dashed forward again, this time his blade poised to slice through Bai Yunfei’s neck from the left side! Whether it was in speed or strength, this second strike was several time more aggressive than the first!

With Bai Yunfei having only just blocked Zhou Yu’s blade with his right arm, he was put in a relatively more difficult position. It was best for Bai Yunfei to either step back or bend backwards at the waist to dodge Zhou Yu’s next stroke, but Bai Yunfei’s actions up until this point had been completely unpredictable, and he had no desire to break that streak.

Under the attentive eyes of everyone there, Bai Yunfei this time raised his left arm up instead of his right!

“Clang!!”

There was another metallic clang when the blade clashed with him. Twisting his left arm, Bai Yunfei deflected the blade away from him!

On his left arm was yet another bracer!

What happened next was even more surprising. The moment after Zhou Yu’s sword was deflected, Zhou Yu had an appalled yet pained expression on his face. His sword arm trembled slightly, and small cracks were forming around his hand. And then a second later, the Crimson Warblade.....fell from his hand!

The first time Zhou Yu clashed with one of Bai Yunfei’s bracers, the rebound he felt had indeed been noticeable, but this second time, the rebound was way greater in magnitude than ‘normal’. It felt as if....the strength he put into his blow hadn’t been transmitted to Bai Yunfei and was instead turned back onto him!

And since he hadn't been expecting to need to defend himself, the strength of the blow was enough to disarm him of his warblade!

Bai Yunfei looked slightly surprised too; he hadn't expected that the additional effect of his Returner Bracer would coincidentally activate then!

Returner Bracer's stats:

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: Mid Earth

Elemental Affinity: Earth

Upgrade Level: +10

Defense: 890

Additional Defense: 478

Soul Compatibility: 15%

+10 Additional Effect: 15% Chance to deflect back 30% of the damage inflicted when defending.

Damage cannot exceed the total defensive power of this equipment and cannot deflect projectiles.

Upgrade Requirement: 100 Soulpoints

The defensive might of the Returner Bracer was just enough to be considered a low-heaven tier soul armament, but defending Zhou Yu's weapon wouldn't be too easy still. The fact that he was able to deflect thirty percent of the damage done to Bai Yunfei had not only made it look like Bai Yunfei had block the sword 'easily', but it even disarmed Zhou Yu!

When Zhou Yu was staggering back in his bewilderment, Bai Yunfei saw his chance! He had spent most of his time in this match defending, now was his time to move!

Be immovable like a mountain and move as fast as lightning!

Zhou Yu had been quick enough to catch onto the fact that Bai Yunfei was on the move, but when he looked at him, Zhou Yu was startled to see that Bai Yunfei was even faster than he was!

And on his way towards Zhou Yu, there was flash of red light

before a familiar crimson spear appeared in Bai Yunfei's right hand!

Without any superfluous motions, Bai Yunfei stabbed outwards!

Retreating, Zhou Yu tried his best to avoid, but Bai Yunfei's spear was already well on its way to his throat!

The quickness that was the fiery spear terrified Zhou Yu. His eyes were flitting around rapidly as he tried to think of a way out from this, but the more he thought, the more he realized he was stuck in an 'undodgeable' situation!

Still trying to move backwards, Zhou Yu's arms flew up and erected a fiery bubble around him, shining smoothly like the surface of water. In less than two quick moments, there was a seemingly impenetrable shield of fire being held up by his two palms.

Zhou Yu planted his feet on the ground, he wouldn't retreat anymore in this fight....he couldn't actually, as he was right next to the edge of the arena. To go any further was to lose, so he had to hold his ground here. He didn't need to anyways since Bai Yunfei's spear was only a meter away from his shield. As long as he could defend, Zhou Yu could take advantage of the brief respite to get out of the way and make some distance.

But the next moment saw to Zhou Yu coming to an abrupt stop. Any idea of evading or doing anything was rendered useless as he stood there, fixed to the spot.

The fiery tip of Bai Yunfei's spear was now just an inch away from his throat.

Chapter 533: Assigning Homework Before Class

The fire shield was still up and fully materialized in front of Zhou Yu's palms, but the Fire-tipped Spear of Bai Yunfei had stabbed through it to hover menacingly at his throat.

The amount of strength Zhou Yu poured into his elemental defense was enough to stop even a low-heaven tier soul armament from piercing it. But in front of the Fire-tipped Spear, it was useless!

That was because of the +13 additional effect of the spear--the ability to ignore elemental defenses!!

Any last vestiges of color drained away from Zhou Yu's eyes from where he stood. His back slick with sweat, his throat itchy with the tip of the spear hovering menacingly over it.

Bai Yunfei's Cataclysmic Seal was floating there just a meter to Zhou Yu's right as well. In other words, even if he tried to evade, the Cataclysmic Seal would be there to attack him!

He lost.

It was a simple but total defeat for him!

The bitter taste of defeat weighed heavily on his tongue. Zhou Yu was neither willing nor ready to give up, but he had to. Stuffing away his emotions, Zhou Yu canceled out the elemental shield in front of him.

A small smile appeared onto Bai Yunfei's lips. With a twitch of his hand, the Fire-tipped Spear disappeared back into his ring along with the Cataclysmic Seal. "Instructor Zhou Yu, it's my win." He stated.

'It's my win', Bai Yunfei had said. Not 'you let me win' as customarily said for etiquette.

Zhou Yu stiffened, his eyes focusing in on Bai Yunfei. His mouth opened as if to say something before thinking otherwise. He sighed. "Indeed. You win." He relented at last.

Zhou Yu was a man who was more than willing to admit the reality of things without making excuses. But even admitting that he lost to Bai Yunfei was a hard thing to swallow, and the audience could all see that.

He said nothing else and went to pick up his Crimson Warblade. Storing it away, Zhou Yu saluted Bai Yunfei politely once before leaping into the air to disappear behind several buildings farther away.

.....

All was silent as the audience watched Zhou Yu leap away. It was only when he was fully out of sight that they immediately exploded into furious discussion.

"Did....did I see that right?! Instructor Zhou Yu.....lost?!"

"And what was with that ending?! It's over? Bai Yunfei won?!"

"What the hell happened?! That was instructor Zhou Yu's strongest defense, how did that shield not do a thing against that spear?!"

"What kind of spear is that Bai Yunfei using?! Is it a mid-heaven tier soul armament?!"

"Bai Yunfei wasn't even attacking for most of the match, did he really win in just one move? I'm floored, just how strong is he?!"

"He has....so many soul armaments! He didn't even use a single soul skill in that battle--he just used soul armaments to defeat instructor Zhou Yu! Just how many soul armaments does he have?!"

"Soul armaments that can stop a low-heaven tier soul armament, and soul armaments that can overcome the defenses of a peak late-

stage Soul Exalt....is that the strength of the crafting instructor...?”

“I can’t believe this....”

“.....”

All of the students there were gasping and raving to each other about Bai Yunfei’s strength while the instructors and other strong ‘outsiders’ all grew silent. They were reevaluating Bai Yunfei’s skill in subdued shock. Naturally, their powers of observation was much better than the students, so they saw things the others couldn’t such as the fact that the floating soul armament besides Bai Yunfei hadn’t even fully revealed its full power. There were other things, such as the inexplicable reason why Zhou Yu had been disarmed or how Bai Yunfei’s soulforce suddenly depleted by almost a half when he stabbed through Zhou Yu’s shield....

.....

Uncaring for the gossip the audience were discussing about him, Bai Yunfei looked around the audience for a moment before looking to the giant building that was his classroom. “Where are the students to my class? Step forward.”

All discussion came to an abrupt stop when he spoke, the eyes of everyone there looking to the small group of students standing closest to the classroom.

Those same students gave a start when addressed. Looking at one another, the group stepped forward.

There were four males and three females; each one of them looked no older than twenty-seven and no younger than twenty.

The younger ones of the students looked to Bai Yunfei with admiration and those older were far more dignified with their glances, but they were filled with respect for him as well.

Only one of the seven had an expression that was rather unexpected. That person was looking at Bai Yunfei with a look of....hostility?!

When Bai Yunfei saw just who it was, his eyes widened by a fraction, “You?!”

It was a young woman who looked to be around the age of twenty-five. She wore a bright-red robe that accentuated her stunning body and had hair that went down all the way to her waist. Her snowy-white skin and ovalish face were both of great quality that any man would say to be the ‘standard’ of excellent beauty.

Bai Yunfei had seen this person before--back on his first day here, this was the person that caused him so much trouble. The granddaughter of Mo Huangkong, Mo Wanxia!!

She...she was one of his new students?!

His look of shock seemed to have pleased Mo Wanxia, as her lips curled slightly upwards. Without backing down, she spoke, “That’s right, it’s me! ‘Teacher Bai’, I will be your student from now on. I hope to see just what kind of amazing crafting you’ll be teaching us.”

“Er.....” Bai Yunfei was still in disbelief. Was she not pleased with him? How strange.....

But now wasn’t the time to think about that. Looking at the other six, Bai Yunfei paid a good look at each student before speaking to them. “I know you are all geniuses among your peers in cultivation in order to even be chosen for the class, and that much alone shows just how much the chairman believes in you. But allow me to say to you all right now, the path of crafting requires talent as well, talent that is unrelated to your talent in cultivation. I have decided today to craft a soul armament in front of you to the best of my ability, that way, I will prove to you I am qualified to teach.

“You will, of course, not only just be watching. As a part of your first class today, I will be requiring you all to write down the most important or fundamental understandings you have about the art of crafting after you go home today....Think this as your first

assignment. You will write down your thoughts and turn it in to me the next time we meet for classes.”

“.....”

The seven students weren’t the only ones stunned by his words, everyone else was too!

Bai Yunfei had been very straightforward with his words, it was just that what he was saying was completely unexpected.

Before he even asked just who his students were, Bai Yunfei was already assigning ‘homework’ for the students after he crafts a soul armament?!

Chapter 534: Soft Aurinium Ore

Mo Wanxia was the first to speak out of everyone there. “Are....are you saying you’ll be crafting one right now? Are we not going to go inside first?”

“No need,” Bai Yunfei smiled, “I’ll do it here.”

His actions today were already very high-profile. To go a little further with his feats would prevent people from trying to do any further investigations on the ‘mystical’ art.

The art of crafting wasn’t really a secret, but it wasn’t something that could be replicated by any spectator after a single glance.

Bai Yunfei stared at the seven with a solemn look, “Pay attention to what I said. Your understandings and experiences will be what I will use for my initial assessment of you seven.”

He turned around to the people still watching him, “This one will start crafting now. The process will take a very long time, but feel free to leave or come back anytime you wish. My only wish is that everyone will be quiet when they watch, thank you.”

Bai Yunfei’s words and actions thus far had brought nothing but the deepest respect from the audience. Many of them were students, but there were a few instructors who felt a great deal of respect towards him now. “Don’t worry, instructor Bai, we will watch quietly.”

And just like that, the entire audience went silent, much to Bai Yunfei’s satisfaction.

Nodding, Bai Yunfei walked back to the center of the platform. He no longer cared for the outside world as he set about to preparing to craft a soul armament. A giant cauldron the color of fire itself plopped onto the platform with several sparks of lightning sometimes emitting from the inside.

It was the Lightningfire Cauldron.

The Cataclysmic Seal popped up next to him to transfer its fireseed from it into the cauldron. At the same time, the fireseed in Bai Yunfei's chest moved from him over to the cauldron as well.

His actions were simple, but no one from the audience knew what it meant. All they could see was that the cauldron was starting to light up.

The second fireseed to enter the Lightningfire Cauldron was the one that came from Bai Yunfei. It was the fireseed with the companion lightningseed, and that meant the cauldron had now both of its corresponding elements in it so Bai Yunfei's chances of successfully crafting was now slightly higher.

Pulsating his soulforce, Bai Yunfei activated the cauldron with a slight 'bang'. Fire started to roar out from the center in large waves, bringing the temperature of the area high enough so that even the audience could feel it.

Bai Yunfei took a step back to sit down on the ground. His right hand waved in the air, bringing out all sorts of materials into the world. Wrapped in elemental fire, they laid out over one another in one neat row. Whenever Bai Yunfei pointed at a material, it'd flow into the cauldron.

The crafting was starting.

Everyone was extremely silent as they watched the items be burned up inside the cauldron. The seven students were most especially observant. Their eyes shined with extreme concentration to watch every single motion Bai Yunfei made. Every single second was spent focusing on him, and every so often, they would make sure to file away a thought for later reflection.

Elemental fire began to pour out from the cauldron after the first row of materials were poured into the cauldron. Likewise, the intensity of the flames start to rise as the materials were decomposed and mixed together to form a concentrated drop of liquid within the cauldron that rippled every so often.

This was where Bai Yunfei was starting to focus now. His right hand revealed a golden stone in his hand, pulsating strongly with elemental metal when it appeared. From just the energy alone, everyone in attendance could tell that it was comparable to even a high-grade primal stone or even a mid-earth tier soul armament.

It was a strange-looking stone. Rather than having edges and corners like any normal stone, it was completely smooth and spherical, making it seem almost 'soft' with how Bai Yunfei's right hand looking as if it was half an inch into the stone.

Soft aurinium ore, a rare metal-type material that rarely was excavated by human hands. Its origins laid deep within the earth where only the Crafting School saw it being useful. A palm-sized chunk would mean having a purity level achieved by after a millennia of untainted growth. And having one would mean having a material that was worth as much as a low-earth tier soul armament.

The one Bai Yunfei had in his hand was one that would need at least three millennia to form, which was about the same in price as a high-earth tier soul armament.

This was one of the many materials the academy had provided for Bai Yunfei. When Bai Yunfei first saw this item in the warehouse, he immediately gave up the other materials he had in mind to use that one instead.

With this item, crafting a high-earth tier soul armament wouldn't be a problem at all.

In order to guarantee his success, Bai Yunfei was using enough materials for two soul armaments to create one. It was a bit wasteful, but the importance of his success here was imperative.

The aurinium ore was placed into the cauldron for it to process. The fires within the cauldron immediately intensified with its addition, and the elemental fire around the cauldron was now even more intensive. The audience kept quiet, but even they could feel

that the temperature in the area had risen again.

For a while after the aurinium ore was deposited into the cauldron, Bai Yunfei didn't move. His two arms stayed pressed against the cauldron with his eyes closed. The only thing he was doing was regulating the flow of soulforce from his body to the cauldron to transmute the inner contents, though his actions had several people think he was in a meditational trance.

It wasn't for another hour when the audience heard a sign of activity from the cauldron in the form of crackling. The fires within the cauldron roared to life once more with such intensity that several people were entranced with its dancing movements.

Bai Yunfei's eyes flew open at the same time. His right hand waved again, commanding several types of materials float over to him and into the cauldron like a commander ordering his soldiers.

The replenishment of materials in the cauldron was the start of Bai Yunfei's refocusing on the cauldron. Still motionless, his hands were now manipulating the soulforce flow to control the flame.

Slowly, but surely, it went from midday to evening....

But Bai Yunfei didn't move again for the entirety of that period!

Those people who were most excited about crafting slowly started to wane in interest. From excitement, they turned to confusion, and then ultimately disappointment.

So this is what the art of crafting was like. Tedious and boring.

A small portion of the audience had already left by the time evening hit, unwilling to stay there any more.

There were still a good amount of people that were watching Bai Yunfei with interest still. Perhaps it was the everchanging flames within the cauldron that excited them.

The seven students had been the most patient. They were prepared for the wait, and not once did their attentions weaken.

They watched Bai Yunfei earnestly, and even though Bai Yunfei wasn't moving, the seven of them were making careful note of how his internal soulforce was moving, and how the cauldron itself was altering its contents.

Evening was replaced with night, and the entire academy was basked in darkness except for the arena, where the fire from the cauldron was as bright as the midday sun.

It wasn't until midnight when Bai Yunfei finally 'woke'. He added a few more supplementary materials into the cauldron before again going into a state of stillness....

Night was replaced by day, and the audience found itself thinning again. There were several that came back, but more that left. Many of the audience had finally decided that the 'enigmatic' art of crafting was a 'disappointment' and no longer wanted to waste any more of their time watching such a boring process.

But those that didn't leave saw minute changes happening in the cauldron. The fire coming from the cauldron was more and more frequent now, and the aura from it stronger and stronger as if something on the inside was about to be 'born'.

There were also a rarer few that saw a change on Bai Yunfei's expression. He looked surprised almost, but definitely....excited.

Chapter 535: Armaments That Change the World

Bai Yunfei was excited; the result that was his crafting was far better than he expected....it was going completely without a problem!

He had never such a success before!

There wasn't even a single slip up in the entire process so far—he hadn't even needed to add in any materials to stabilize or revise the synthesis thus far! If crafting was a complex musical performance, then his prelude was perfect, and the ensuing rhythm was completely flawless!

There wasn't any special reason for why he was having this success. Right now, Bai Yunfei was in a never-before experienced 'state' of mind. A state of clarity and achievement beyond all else he felt!

Bai Yunfei forgot about the world when the soft aurinium ore was placed into the Lightningfire Cauldron. Right now, there was him and the cauldron, or more specifically, him and the soul armament being crafted in it.

Everything happening within the cauldron was being memorized by Bai Yunfei as it did. When the aurinium ore was melted in the cauldron, whenever the mixture changed slightly, whenever a new material was added, whenever the liquid mixture changed in purity, whenever it pulsed with energy, and whenever it changed shape....

Bai Yunfei didn't even know just how many soul armaments he crafted since the beginning, but this one attempt alone was special in that Bai Yunfei felt something 'special' in it.

It was as if he could do anything he wanted without anything going wrong.

Under his expert manipulation, the soft aurinium ore was liquified into the already-present mixture. With each impurity processed out from it, the liquid start to compress in size, from the size of a wash basin to a soccer ball, to a bowl, and then to the size of a palm.....

He hadn't even noticed the passage of time flow around him. Oblivious to the world, Bai Yunfei's eyes were only on the soul armament in front of him, slowly changing in shape and taking material form....

.....

Not even a hundred people remained by the time of the second night of when Bai Yunfei started crafting. All those that did remain though were those strong enough to understand what was going on. Each one of them were staring at Bai Yunfei and what he was doing with eyes filled with shock and uncertainty.

From what they could see, Bai Yunfei's current state was especially special. Even if they knew very little about crafting, they could at least see that Bai Yunfei's crafting attempt was going swimmingly.

The most important thing was the amount of power radiating from the cauldron in front of Bai Yunfei. The amount of power coming from it was immense, and it was still growing.

The soul armament hadn't even finished crafting yet, but people were already sure of one thing—this was a high-earth tier soul armament!

Somehow, Bai Yunfei had the power to craft a high-earth tier soul armament!

This conclusion was shared by almost everyone there. Not only the instructors, but even the 'outsiders' had the same feeling. As people who had extensive knowledge of the world in general, they knew bits and pieces of what crafters were capable of. With Bai

Yunfei's strength as a mid-stage Soul Exalt, they all felt that it'd already be extremely commendable for him to craft a mid-earth tier soul armament.

So no one expected him to go a step beyond that and craft a high-earth tier soul armament.

Today, the people still in attendance—or even the groups they were affiliated with—would leave this place today with a completely new impression of Bai Yunfei.

.....

“Bang!!”

Flames burst forth from the cauldron as if no longer restrained by an invisible barrier. Jettisoning into the skies, the flames roared loudly enough to startle everyone watching.

“Did he succeed?!”

Someone cried out in anticipation.

They saw Bai Yunfei's eyes flutter open, and the energy that was pouring out from the cauldron was fully affecting everyone's senses.

The answer was as they said. Bai Yunfei had succeeded.

A pleased smile was etched onto Bai Yunfei's face. This time, his crafting was an overwhelming success. This one soul armament in the cauldron right now was a high-earth tier, but it ranked higher than most of its kind in quality.

All Bai Yunfei needed to do was put out the fires in the cauldron and let the cauldron burn off the rest of its energy. From there, he could pull out the soul armament and admire the finished product.

But before he could do either of these two things to finish the process....the cauldron started to behave differently!

“What?!” The moment when the soul armament should've been fully crafted, Bai Yunfei felt some of his soulforce suddenly drain

away from him into the cauldron, which then started to shine with light!

“This is....”

When he realized what was happening, Bai Yunfei’s eyes began to shine with utter delight!

This feeling was....the feeling of an effect being activated! The Lightningfire Cauldron’s effect was being activated!!

.....

“What? What’s going on?!”

Everyone in attendance began to gasp, unsure of what was happening. They had been so sure that the performance was finally over with the cauldron erupting what seemed to be a volcanic burst of red light. But now, a golden beam of light like a sword was shining out from the cauldron to pierce into the skies!

The beam of golden light shot straight into the skies like a tower of light. For kilometers around, a wave of soulforce pulsated outwards from the epicenter that was the tower. Elemental metal materialized into the world in the form of golden wisps of light being drawn towards the cauldron beneath the golden tower of light!

Everyone was stunned, unsure of what to say or even think at this sight. Then, a late-stage Soul Exalt elder suddenly jolted in his seat as he realized something about this situation. “Is....could this possibly be....a Worldly Phantasm? Elemental energies are starting to materialize....this isn’t a high-earth tier soul armament, this is....a heaven-tier!!!”

“A heaven-tier soul armament!!”

Everyone around him gasped, repeating the words themselves.

Earth-tier soul armaments were incapable of this phenomena, as the energy used to create one—even if it was a high-earth tier—

would be incapable of producing any kind of change onto the world. Only heaven-tier soul armaments would be capable of producing a change onto the energies of the world and draw in those energies to finish off their creation.

Such a change was known to many as when an ‘armament changes the world’. They were signs that a heaven-tier soul armament was crafted, and only those who were familiar with the Crafting School would be familiar with such a term.

And the reason why such a phenomena was happening today was because of....the soul armament Bai Yunfei crafted!

The change was felt in the surrounding world for kilometers around. Elemental metal continued to materialize as it was being drawn to the cauldron, whirling around it and the pillar like a whirlpool of energy. At the center of it all was the cauldron, sucking in energy like a blackhole, but only that of elemental metal.

Those watching were speechless. All they could do was sit there and watch as metallic light shined from the cauldron and illuminated even their figures.

.....

In a small area a kilometer above in the skies, a figure suddenly appeared out of nowhere without warning. Watching as the elemental energy continued to flow towards a certain area, the man had a suspicious look in his eyes.

It was Mo Huangkong.

“A heaven-tier soul armament, how peculiar....” He muttered. With his level of eyesight and knowledge, even he had to sigh in shock and admiration at the sight. “I underestimated him. That Bai Yunfei has outperformed every single one of my expectations so far....”

Tendrils of elemental metal continued to be sucked into the pillar

as he watched.

“I really do look forward to what this crafting class will offer....”

Chapter 536: Crafting a Heaven-tier Soul Armament

Moments after Mo Huangkong appeared, the space around him started to warp again as several people stepped out into being. Their entrance had been strange—almost like a ghost even—and no one below had noticed. They floated there silently in the skies without either flying soul armament or elemental energy keeping them up in place.

They were Soul Kings!!

Bai Yunfei's successful creation of a heaven-tier soul armament had drawn in the attention of even the Soul Kings!

Twenty Soul Kings stood there now, transfixed upon the sight of so much elemental energy being drawn in by Bai Yunfei's actions. Those that realized what was going on heaved heavily in their admiration while those that didn't know who Bai Yunfei was stared suspiciously at him.

But they did nothing other than watch. When they saw Mo Huangkong, the Soul Kings bowed politely to him, some of the Soul Kings looking even a little reveration at him.

.....

Elemental metal continued to draw in to the cauldron for one whole minute before the whirlpool of it started to shrink. Being fully sucked in by the cauldron now, no more elemental metal appeared into the world now.

Even with the world returning back to normal, the audience were still in a state of shock and unable to comprehend what had just happened.

They weren't the only ones. Bai Yunfei, who had been standing right next to the cauldron, looked even more shocked than everyone else!

Naturally, Bai Yunfei was stunned by the results of his crafting and the activation of the Lightningfire Cauldron's effect. His reaction to it was better than the others and was quickly suppressed. Now that the cauldron was beginning to finish up, his entire body started to shake with extreme trepidation.

Power like none ever felt before when he was crafting started to flow out from the interior of the cauldron. He knew. He knew that the soul armament that'd be in the cauldron would be....a low-heaven tier soul armament!!

It was a low-heaven tier! He had somehow managed to craft a low-heaven tier soul armament!

No one expected this outcome. Not Bai Yunfei, and not the audience watching him. And yet only Bai Yunfei knew the secret behind this.

By all rights, the soul armament currently in the cauldron should've been a high-earth tier. The reason why it had been elevated to a low-heaven tier was solely because of the additional effect of the Lightningfire Cauldron!

Lightningfire Cauldron's stats:

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Fire, Lightning

Upgrade Level: +10

Special Effect 1: Increase chance of success when crafting by 300%.

Special Effect 2: 15% chance to add lightning affinity to item when crafting.

+10 Additional Effect: 10% chance to boost the overall stats of an equipment by 20% when crafting.

Soul Compatibility: 13%

Upgrade Requirement: 110 Soulpoints

The effect that had been activated was the one where the cauldron would increase the stats of the item by 20%!

Never had Bai Yunfei such heavenly luck with the activation of

its effect before. But it did its job. Without that activation, the soul armament would've been stuck as a high-earth tier. But with its activation, the 20% boost elevated the stats just high enough to become a heaven-tier!

This wasn't the result of Bai Yunfei upgrading the stats of an item to improve it. This was a brand new equipment that was already a heaven-tier!

Without the Lightningfire Cauldron, attaining such a result simply wouldn't have been possible! This was Bai Yunfei's very first heaven-tier soul armament he crafted!

Trying his best to quell his emotions, Bai Yunfei waved his right hand, summoning the soul armament. It flew out from the cauldron in a bubble of golden light before then falling neatly into his hand.

It was a surprisingly small soul armament—being only the size of his hand. It wasn't a weapon like a sword or saber, or even a piece of armor like a breastplate or bracer. It was....a glove!

The glove was silky smooth, though he could see the golden glow coming from the fingerless gloves!

After using such a large chunk of soft aurinium ore, was the resulting product really just a tiny glove?

Bai Yunfei touched the golden glove, waiting for its stats to pop up in his mind expectantly.

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Attack: 2100

Defense: 2200

Soul Compatibility: 20%

Equipment Effect: Increase damage dealt to wood-type enemies by 20%.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

As expected, this was a low-heaven tier! It was barely enough to

qualify, but it was one nonetheless! Furthermore, it....had an equipment effect!

Even the Ardent Sun Glove on his right hand didn't have an equipment effect!

And it could increase the damage dealt to those with a wood affinity....this surely had to be because of the Five Elements theory where Metal overcomes Wood. The concept of 'generating' and 'overcoming' between the Five Elements wasn't very clear to many until these said elements crossed against one another. The Ardent Sun Glove for example, held an affinity for fire. In the Five Elements theory, Fire overcomes Metal so the glove was very effective towards those with an affinity for metal. It wasn't normally clear for Bai Yunfei in these cases, but the 'effect' of this new golden glove was clearly saying it was effective towards those with an affinity for wood!

There was also something else completely unexpected to this item. It had 20% soul compatibility before it was even upgraded!

Bai Yunfei's heart shivered with joy. Not only did the stats of the glove made him happy, there were two other things that added to his glee. One was the sense of pride and accomplishment for crafting a heaven-tier soul armament, and the other more important reason was because....of the sudden understandings he just gained in regards to the art of crafting.

Putting away the golden glove into his space ring, Bai Yunfei took in a heavy gulp of air. Turning around at the stunned people around him, Bai Yunfei looked then to the seven students standing behind him. "Crafting this time was a success. Now that you've seen the art in its entirety for yourself, you should know now how arduous and tedious it is to craft. If you still wish to stay in my class, prepare yourself for a similar process.

"That concludes class for today. As I said before, write down your thoughts and understandings from today and hand it to me the

next class....let's say in a week from today.”

He looked up to the skies. “It's getting late. Class is dismissed.”

Bai Yunfei left the students there. Without caring for the people gossiping around him again, Bai Yunfei stored away his cauldron and strode for the outer gates to look for Zheng Kai so they could both leave the academy together.

His sudden departure had been a little disconcerting to everyone. They didn't even have the time to talk to Bai Yunfei before he left in such a ‘hurry’, though they could understand why. He looked exhausted, and that much was to be expected. It was normal to feel as such after spending two whole days and nights to craft a soul armament, and a heaven-tier one at that. If he didn't want to stick around to talk, then the others didn't want to risk angering Bai Yunfei in talks. They could talk with him another day.

But still, everyone was determined to talk with him eventually. Interpersonal talks and connections with him would be for the best —someone who could craft a heaven-tier soul armament was someone worthy of respect from even Soul Kings.

And so today marked yet another day where Bai Yunfei's name was made known through the Capital, the world of soul cultivators, and beyond....

Chapter 537: Upgrade +1

Later that night, Bai Yunfei was back in his room in Zheng manor.

Both Zheng Kai and Bai Yunfei sought for a restaurant for dinner first after they left Tianshun Academy. After eating their fill, the two returned back home.

Zheng Kai had been watching Bai Yunfei with great confusion on their way back, as if finally seeing Bai Yunfei for who he was for the first time since they met again. When asked about his accomplishment, Bai Yunfei had simply said that his state of mind when crafting had been optimal enough for that small chance of major success to take place, allowing him to craft a heaven-tier soul armament.

That was in fact the truth of the matter.

He was a little absent-minded in fact, and that much showed when Bai Yunfei didn't respond as quickly to Zheng Kai's questions on the way back, prompting his friend to wisely shut up. When they reached Zheng manor, Bai Yunfei had requested that he'd be going into 'seclusion' and that no one should bother him as he thought about the ordeals of today.

Though slightly surprised by the request, Zheng Kai acquiesced to it. He'd manage everything else for Bai Yunfei while he went into seclusion.

Now back in his room, Bai Yunfei had his three soulbeasts stand guard outside his room with instructions not to let anyone in to disturb him.

This reason behind this was simple...he really wanted to ruminate on the understandings he had today.

Today's successful crafting had pleased him to no ends. He had been in the most ideal state for crafting, and after such a long time

spent during it, Bai Yunfei was able to deduce several more things about the art to a degree unlike any previous time.

But the most important thing aside from the aforementioned reasons was the soul armament he crafted today itself.

There had been a murky feeling Bai Yunfei had when he started crafting two days ago. Those feelings gradually grew more and more clear the more he progressed with the crafting. And then when the heaven-tier soul armament unexpectedly came out, that feeling he had turned into a realization that grew into something intense after he finished.

This soul armament was....special. Very special. It was hard to describe it in words but....Bai Yunfei felt like he understood every single notch, marking, and composition of the glove. Not to the same level as he would a lifebound armament, but to a particularly strong degree nonetheless.

How could he explain? It was as if he....understood the inner intricacies of the glove, like how each change happened to the glove, and how he could....make even more 'changes'.

.....

Bai Yunfei didn't care for the fact that he was tired after spending two whole days and night crafting. Sitting crossed-legged on his bed, he held the golden glove in his hand and stared intensively at it.

Right now, Bai Yunfei was preparing for something. Something he thought of and tried many times before, but never once succeeding yet.

But right now as he stared at the equipment in his hand, Bai Yunfei felt an intense apprehension. This time, he'd succeed!

There was no doubt in his mind that his confidence was stemming from the understandings he gained today. He wouldn't let go of this precious moment. Focusing, the glove in his right

hand began to shine faintly with golden light....

.....

Time slowly went by, night turning to day without anything strange coming from Bai Yunfei's room. The three soulbeasts were still standing guard so that even the servants here to bring Bai Yunfei his food were stopped. And even Zheng Kai himself could only stand out in the courtyards in curiosity.

Saying that he was curious didn't even cover most of it. Zheng Kai really wanted to know what Bai Yunfei was up to, as a faint stream of elemental energy was leaking from his room. Though Zheng Kai wanted to use his soulsense to peer into the room, the permafrost mastiff's own soulsense was preventing him from peering past it.

Plenty of people came that day to Zheng manor. Every single one of them being reputable soul cultivator from the Capital clearly wanting to pay their 'respects' to Bai Yunfei.

Unfortunately for them, Bai Yunfei was in seclusion and was in no mood to be receiving guests.

The guests left in disappointment, though they were patient enough to want to come back. Some of them though were displeased even by this seemingly 'arrogant' refusal by Bai Yunfei, thinking him as a man who was overvaluing himself.

But in the end, Bai Yunfei wasn't even aware of these guests. All he could concentrate on was the glove in his hand. After spending an entire day of not moving, there was finally a glow of light from his body as the soulforce started streaming into the glove just like how an upgrade stone would.

The next day went by, and then the third. Then finally, the fourth day came by....

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +1

Attack: 2100

Defense: 2200

Additional Attack: 100

Additional Defense: 100

Soul Compatibility: 23%

Equipment Effect: Increase damage dealt to wood-type enemies by 20%.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

A string of notifications popped up into Bai Yunfei's mind.

It was the stats of a +1 upgraded glove.

But! Even with the normality that was the stats, there was a look of great glee on Bai Yunfei's face!

It was a look of glee not unlike that of when he got a piece of equipment to +13! His body began to shake so intensely that if any outsider were to see him now, they would've been worried that something was wrong with Bai Yunfei....

The reason why he was so happy about it being +1 was because....he didn't use the Upgrade Technique to 'upgrade' it!!

That's right! He never gave the order to 'upgrade' the glove and instead 'altered' the glove itself. This time....it came out as being +1!!

"I...did it. I really did it! It's possible!!" Bai Yunfei's eyes shined furiously, "I don't need to use the Upgrade Technique, I can 'manually' upgrade it!"

Correct! What he did was a manual upgrade!

After spending so much time and energy in studying the Upgrade Technique, Bai Yunfei had....finally made a breakthrough in his research!

The Upgrade Technique....Bai Yunfei had finally reached upon the very nature of what the 'Equipment Upgrade Technique' was!

There had always been a mysterious 'power' whenever Bai

Yunfei upgraded equipment. He never figured out what it was exactly, but he had a guess that it could ‘manipulated’! The Upgrade Technique always did the upgrading automatically, but right now, he could control it!

Because of his increasing strength, Bai Yunfei began to sense the presence of that mysterious power more and more. The mysterious power wasn’t something that appeared for ‘no reason’ whatsoever, and no matter how mysterious it was, Bai Yunfei knew there was a cause for its existence, and a reason!

This notification in his mind now was a very profitable result to Bai Yunfei. The research for ‘clues to the origin’....had finally born fruit!

It was a simple +1, but it was a historical step in Bai Yunfei’s story that would allow Bai Yunfei to throw open the doors to the rest of the world beyond....

Chapter 538: A Change!

From the time when he finished crafting the low-heaven tier soul armament to today, Bai Yunfei had only one day left until his next class.

In this entire time of ‘vacation’, Bai Yunfei hadn’t even stepped a single step from his room, and neither did Zheng Kai come to see him. Though after almost an entire week of not seeing Bai Yunfei, Zheng Kai was practically dying of curiosity at what in the world Bai Yunfei was doing.

.....

In Bai Yunfei’s room in the western parts of Zheng manor.

Bai Yunfei was seated crossed-legged on his bed, though his face was looking fatigued. His eyes were a little sunken in, and his entire body was radiating with red light as he stared intensively at the golden object in his left hand.

While his left hand held the golden glove in it, his right hand was a mere two inches above it with five fingers slightly arched over it, as if manipulating something with each finger twitch. Soulforce was streaming from his body into the glove, but the flow was slightly irregular.

His actions had been practically zero, and it was unknown just how long Bai Yunfei had been in such a state. After a long amount of time, he finally opened his bloodshot eyes. His right arm dropped down to his side as the glove started to emit a transparent ripple of light around it. It was barely discernible to the naked eye and was practically invisible if one wasn’t looking for it.

Sighing, Bai Yunfei dropped his head, allowing the pooled sweat on his forehead to be wiped away before he looked back to the glove.

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +10

Attack: 2100

Defense: 2200

Additional Attack: 1000

Additional Defense: 1100

Soul Compatibility: 60%

Equipment Effect: Increase damage dealt to wood-type enemies by 20%.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to deal 300% damage with the next strike.

Cooldown of 1 minute.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

A string of notifications popped up in his mind shortly afterwards, prompting Bai Yunfei to smile even more at it.

After spending nearly an entire week, Bai Yunfei had finally manually upgraded the glove to +10.

It sounded a little strange just thinking about it. Taking a week to get to +10? It normally took him just a few minutes to do that, so why a week this time?

It was simple. The reason why it took him all but a week to upgrade these gloves to +10 was because....he was manually upgrading it--he wasn't using the Upgrade Technique!

From +1 to +10, this golden glove had been manually 'upgraded' by him!!

The moment he learned that he could upgrade the glove manually, Bai Yunfei didn't stop for a moment to try and upgrade it even more. Without rest or stop, Bai Yunfei attempted many a times. He 'failed' several times to upgrade the gloves, but in the end, he managed to reach +10 without once using the Upgrade Technique!

"Triple attack?" He was elated to see such an effect on the glove; the ability to attack with three times the strength! This was an extraordinary effect. Something he wanted to try. If for example, he were to activate its effect when using the Eighty-one Fold Fist

Force, then....just how strong would the outcome be?

“And....” A smile crawled onto his face, “60% Soul compatibility!! This is a soulbound armament!!”

The glove started out having about 20% soul compatibility when it started. And after it became +10, it gained another 40%!

In normal times, upgrading an item to +10 with the Upgrade Technique would see to the soul compatibility rising by around 10% usually. This was a huge difference!

Was it because of the unusual circumstances behind the creation of this soul armament? Or was it because of his ‘upgrading method’? Or was it because of the two reasons combined....

But now Bai Yunfei had yet another soulbound armament to his arsenal!

He rested for a moment first before refocusing on his work. Now wasn’t the time for him to stop, he had to keep on going.

From here, the most important part of his research was about to start....

Shaking his right hand, an upgrade stone was taken out from his space ring.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: None

Equipment Effect 1: Allow the successful upgrade of any equipment +11 and under once.

Equipment Effect 2: Increase the tier of an equipment when crafting by one (Low-heaven tier being the highest).

Cannot be upgraded.

This. This was a +11 Guaranteed Upgrade Stone!! And the most precious upgrade stone had in his possession!

Biting his lips, Bai Yunfei hesitated for a moment, thinking about

if he should really try to use it on the glove.

But in the end, “Upgrade!”

This time, he was using the Upgrade Technique!

There was a flash of white light as the upgrade stone was reduced to ‘white smoke’. Swirling around his left hand, the white smoke slowly begun to drain into the golden glove in his left hand.

Upgrade Successful

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +11

Attack: 2100

Defense: 2200

Additional Attack: 1300

Additional Defense: 1400

Soul Compatibility: 70%

Equipment Effect: Increase damage dealt to wood-type enemies by 20%.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to deal 300% damage with the next strike.

Cooldown of 1 minute.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

Bai Yunfei didn’t care for the notifications running through his head. As soon as the white smoke was drained into the glove, Bai Yunfei’s eyes were staring closely at the glove and trying to feel for what was going on inside it.

For a good while, Bai Yunfei’s eyes remained closed as he ruminated.

Then suddenly, his eyes flew open, his eyes were completely unfocused! As if he had just seen something, his eyes looked as if they had glazed over.

Almost absent-mindedly, he took out another upgrade stone, one that was the size of his fist as he looked at the glove.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: High Earth

Elemental Affinity: None

Equipment Effect 1: Increase the chance of success when upgrading by 700%. Effect cannot be stacked with the effect of another item.

Equipment Effect 2: Increase the chance of success when crafting by 500%. Effect cannot be stacked with the effect of another item.

Cannot be upgraded.

It was an ‘ordinary’ upgrade stone, one he had gotten from the warehouse of Tianhun Academy. But only just one.

If he had taken out the upgrade stone now, that must’ve meant he was....

As if following a plan of some sort, Bai Yunfei pressed the upgrade stone in his right hand over to his left hand. With a slightly aloof voice, he spoke aloud, “Upgrade.”

He was going to try and upgrade the golden glove!!

The upgrade stone he was using right now wasn’t a Guaranteed Upgrade Stone, it was just an ordinary one!! Even with the stone increasing the chance of success by 700%, would it be enough to get the glove to +12? Even with that increase, it would still surely be hard....

If he failed, then this soulbound armament would be reduced to dust!

.....

The upgrade stone turned to smoke as it surrounded the glove again. As it was being absorbed into the glove, it started to shine white in light.

Bai Yunfei’s eyes were still a little hazy, though he was still staring at the glove in his hand. His face was devoid of any emotions, making him seem very strange to look at.

Two seconds later, the white smoke had entirely drifted into the

glove. Golden light started to shine out from the glove, though it was spasmodic as if something was going wrong!

Upgrade Fai--

Failed!! This upgrade attempt failed! A power soul armament was going to be reduced to dust and ashes in less than a second....

But in that one moment, Bai Yunfei's eyes suddenly shined with a brilliant gleam of light! As if anticipating such a result, his right hand flew forward to two inches above his left hand. In that split moment, it felt as if something sort of invisible entity was being invoked....

His movements had been fast enough that even the 'failure notification' that popped up in his mind hadn't yet fully read out the two words of failure!

It seemed as if the notification came to a halt in his mind with that moment. And then, the glove started to emit a golden light ten times stronger than before!

Upgrade Successful

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +12

Attack....

Chapter 539: Critical Glove

To the northeastern parts of Zheng manor. A secluded courtyard with old-fashion housing.

An elderly white man sat next to an incense table, his eyes closed in meditation.

This elderly man was quite old, and his hair was grizzly-white and in various amounts around his face, though it failed to retract from his hale and hearty facial expression. He was an elderly man in every sense of the word, but his body was vibrant and muscular with life.

But the most particular detail to him was the serpentine two-inch black scarring on the left side of his neck. It looked quite aged, though however way or however long it was he got this injury, it looked still quite strangely.

In the middle of his meditation, the eyes of the elder suddenly flew open!

“This...the Planar Laws!”

Shifting his eyes to the southwest, the elder’s aged face showed an expression of confusion onto it.

A short moment later, his eyebrows knitted together, “Eh? It’s gone?”

“Strange....” The elder muttered, “Was I just imagining things?”

The force he felt was extremely weak, and it was only just for a moment. The elder hadn’t even been able to ascertain where it came from other than the general direction.

“How strange, I’ve never felt a type of Law like this before. It’s weak enough to not be noticed by anyone else....” The elder sighed. “Perhaps some young Soul King has found themselves upon some luck by accidentally or purposefully touching upon one of the

Planar Laws.....”

Silent for a moment longer, the elder shook his head and returned back to his meditation.

.....

The western courtyards where Bai Yunfei resided in.

Upgrade Successful

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +12

Attack: 2100

Defense: 2200

Additional Attack: 2000

Additional Defense: 2100

Soul Compatibility: 85%

Equipment Effect: Increase damage dealt to wood-type enemies by 20%.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to deal 300% damage with the next strike.

Cooldown of 1 minute.

+12 Additional Effect: Consume soulforce to grant the ability to deal 400% damage with the next strike.

Cooldown of 5 minutes.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

With that one ‘action’ of his hand, Bai Yunfei had been given a different string of notifications.

In that one moment, the ‘upgrade failed’ had been replaced by another!!

He had....‘changed’ the outcome of the upgrading result!

This....

Bai Yunfei’s eyes blinked several times at his achievement. His eyes were no longer glazed over, focused light now back in them.

He had looked a little vacant in the moment before, though. As if

realizing something, his eyes hovered over onto the equipment in his hand.

Scanning over the stats of the equipment, Bai Yunfei's eyes glistened excitedly. His body shivered with emotion, his heart pounding equally fast.

“I....I finally did it!!”

Bai Yunfei screamed internally, his mind filled with emotions. With his haphazard state and bloodshot eyes, Bai Yunfei looked a little ‘crazed’ at the moment.

He couldn’t be blamed for that, however. This was an outcome that was extremely important!

His study in the Upgrade Technique had finally a true and useful discovery!

Manually upgrading equipment from +1 to +10 was a little ‘superfluous’ at first glance. After all, if the Upgrade Technique could do it faster and easier, what point was there spending precious time and energy with manually upgrading it?

The answer came to him in the form of this achievement. It wasn’t too useful prior to +10, but afterwards, manually upgrading an equipment was useful!

What manually upgrading offered him now was the amazing ‘assistive’ ability to ‘change’ the outcome of upgrading!

There was a reason why Bai Yunfei opted to try and use this ‘assistive’ ability during the Upgrade Technique rather than manual upgrading from +11 and +12 was because of an assessment Bai Yunfei had. After researching for the past week, Bai Yunfei knew that manually upgrading to +10 was already extremely difficult. To try and repeat the attempt to +11 by manually upgrading would be insanely difficult.

He had been in a trance when this miracle happened. It was an extremely rare situation, one that if missed, Bai Yunfei would’ve

have to wait for an extremely long time before the chance would be offered to him again. By using the Guaranteed Upgrade Stone to upgrade the equipment to +11 and then soaking in the gained insights to try again, Bai Yunfei was able to go into this special trance to try and upgrade again. And then while he was still soaked in these insights, Bai Yunfei was able to touch upon an unknown ‘power’ to forcibly alter the results!

It was a series of coincidences that required plenty of luck for any single one event to happen. But with luck backing him, Bai Yunfei was able to come out on top over everything else.

The heavens favor the bold. If one was willing to take the risks, then they would naturally receive the rewards.

The special trance he had been in was long gone now. Excited that such a success happened, and that his research was successful, Bai Yunfei felt his energy drain from his body and flopped back onto his bed.

He was tired.

Almost an entire week had gone by since he last ate or drank. This was a feat that'd be extremely hard for most people to even imagine, but the fatigue he was feeling was far too much for Bai Yunfei to resist, and without any further ado, Bai Yunfei fell asleep....

.....

Bai Yunfei wouldn't awake for another ten hours when it was evening. Blinking his eyes open slowly, he sat back up on his bed.

A rate of recovery like this would be equally astounding to others. The coloration in his face was back to normal now, and Bai Yunfei's physical appearance was looking much healthier than before.

Before looking at the +12 golden glove, Bai Yunfei flipped through his space ring to take out a normal mid-earth tier soul armament to

concentrate on.

His eyes were sharply focused on the soul armament for a while before disappointment shone in them.

As hard as he might, Bai Yunfei knew he couldn't reenter that 'trance' he had been in before. Even manually upgrading this soul armament to +1 would take an extraordinary amount of effort now compared to when he was manually upgrading the golden glove.

This unprecedented level of success one after another had to be mainly in part due to the special background of the golden glove. Without that special background, Bai Yunfei wouldn't have had succeeded so smoothly.

Elsewise, using manually upgrading or even using the ability to 'change' the outcomes so easily would be an enormous stroke of luck for his future....

Still, not being able to pull off that ability wasn't too much of a disappointment for him. He had the 'experience' now. No longer did he have to 'guess' his way around how the Upgrade Technique worked. Bai Yunfei had faith that he'd be able to pull off today's successes without difficulty with time.

His hand back on the golden glove now, Bai Yunfei couldn't help but smile in glee at the results. He had now another +12 soulbound armament!

Critical strike!!

Both of the glove's effects related to the ability to have 'critical hits'! And the +12 effect granted him a critical strike four times his normal strength! And at any time he wanted!

This meant that as long as Bai Yunfei wanted, he'd be able to attack someone with four times the strength possible!

And to make it even better, the two additional effects didn't contradict with one another! He could activate the +10 effect with the +12 effect for....an attack with seven times his normal strength!

TL Note: Author is thinking additively rather than multiplicative.

Seven times!! Just how strong was this? Wouldn't he be able to kill any soul cultivator at his level in one blow?

Gingerly wearing the golden glove on his left hand, Bai Yunfei clenched it reflexively. It fitted his hand quite well and didn't cover his fingers completely, being fingerless gloves. It also covered just shy of an inch over his wrist, and without the light shining from the glove, it'd look like any ordinary glove with a golden tint to it. But even with that golden luster, many would be hard-pressed to note that this glove had been created with a metal affinity to it.

Pleased, Bai Yunfei nodded his head. "Critical strikes...then in that case, I'll name you the 'Critical Glove!'"

Chapter 540: Heading Outside to Relax

“Creak....”

There was a creaking sound as two doors to a room opened softly to reveal a person walking from the room within.

Twilight was setting in on the world now as Bai Yunfei strode out from his room. Inhaling the outside air, Bai Yunfei felt himself feel at ease.

“You’ve finally come out from your room, brother Bai!!”

Not even a second after Bai Yunfei came out from his room, the pleased voice of Zheng Kai called out to him from the gates to his courtyard where he stood.

Slightly surprised, Bai Yunfei replied, “Er....brother Zheng, have you been waiting here for me the entire time?”

“Course not,” Zheng Kai waved his hand airily, “I don’t have enough perseverance to wait an entire week for you to come out your room.....I only thought that since you have class tomorrow, you’d come out sometime today. Good thing for me it only took an hour for you to come out. So, how goes it? Your training go well?”

“Chirp chirp!!”

A small prismatic bolt of light dove from the skies above to land onto Bai Yunfei’s shoulders. A small feathery head popped out from the light to rub at Bai Yunfei’s cheeks affectionately.

It was Xiao Qi.

“Haha....” Bai Yunfei stroked the feathers of Xiao Qi with equal affection, “Thank you for your concern, brother Zheng. I did quite alright.”

“You look a little tired to me, though??” Zheng Kai blinked in confusion. Though Bai Yunfei had already recovered somewhat from his week, Zheng Kai could still infer just how well he really

was.

“Just a little tired, nothing too serious.” Bai Yunfei nodded with a smile.

“Growlll....”

Suddenly, a loud strange noise erupted into the air. Pausing briefly, both persons looked around for a moment before Bai Yunfei rubbed at his stomach in embarrassment. “Haha, I won’t lie, brother Zheng, but I haven’t eaten anything for almost a week now. Could I ask for you to have someone bring me a meal?”

Zheng Kai was stunned. Just what in the world was Bai Yunfei doing for him to forego his meals?

“No need for that, brother Bai,” Zheng Kai replied, “I’ll take you to a good place to eat. Since tomorrow’s your next class, you should take it easy today!”

Pausing for a moment to think, Bai Yunfei nodded his head. It’d do him so some good to take it easy today.

And so without any further ado, the two left the courtyards.

Since the three soulbeasts had been hard at work standing guard in front of Bai Yunfei’s room, and Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm not willing to stay behind in Zheng manor, Bai Yunfei decided to take them two out with them.

.....

The two walked to a good restaurant and waited for their meals to come before they started eat. Under Zheng Kai’s amazed eyes, Bai Yunfei began to eat at such a fast and great rate that it didn’t take long for him to finish enough food for ten men before Bai Yunfei was satisfied.

“Ah, brother Zheng, has anything happened in the past few days?” Bai Yunfei asked after finishing a bowl of soup with relish.

“Hm?” Zheng Kai asked, not quite all the way there at the

moment, “Ah, there was actually. You weren’t aware of it, of course, but our doorsteps are practically gone with how many people have been stepping over them. You’re a very well known celebrity now in the soul cultivator circles of the Capital, you know.”

A fleck of admiration entered Zheng Kai’s eyes. “A soul cultivator that can craft even a heaven-tier soul armament...no soul cultivator wouldn’t want to have a figure like as their friend. Almost every single soul cultivator group that matters here in the Capital have been asking for you, some of them more than once, though we declined them on your behalf.”

He paused to take a breath. “But you know, brother Bai, there’s several powerful factions I feel you should get to know sooner or later. If you’re staying in the Capital, it won’t be too bad of a thing to get to know them. Even the Royal Family will try to get in touch with you eventually.”

Bai Yunfei nodded, “You’re right, brother Zheng. When I’ve the time, I’ll deal with those matters.”

“There’s also something else, brother Bai....” Zheng Kai looked a little embarrassed, “there’s a few elders in my family that want to meet you, if you’re willing...”

“Not a problem,” Bai Yunfei laughed, “I should’ve meet them earlier with how long I’ve been at your place.”

“That works, since you’re staying here, feel free to meet them whenever you want.” Zheng Kai nodded. “Well let’s not talk about such annoying stuff. You haven’t come out in so long, it’s time for you to live it up tonight!”

“.....” Bai Yunfei said nothing. “Is it because you were stuck at home the entire time that you wanted to drag me outside to ‘relieve’ your boredom?”

A thought suddenly struck him, “Ah, are Huang Bin and the

others doing well? Why haven't we seen them recently? Aren't you usually with them?"

The Four Lords of the Capital were known for being as thick as thieves, but Bai Yunfei hadn't seen head nor hair of them ever since the first day they were in the Capital.

"Ugh. It's because of what happened last time." Zheng Kai sighed, "Some of their members actually tried to talk with you the past few days because of your assistance last time, but they had to go back since you were secluding yourself. It won't be for another while that they get their 'freedom' back."

Suddenly, Zheng Kai asked Bai Yunfei a question, "Ah, actually, you might as well come with me somewhere. I'm sure fourth brother will be there."

"Hm?" Bai Yunfei looked up, "Where?"

"Hehe, you'll know when we get there...." Zheng Kai smiled surreptitiously. "It's a very fun place. We normally spend our time there."

"....."

One of Bai Yunfei's eyebrows perked up before his face flushed a bit--was it that kind of place?

Zheng Kai looked a little surprised at his reaction, but then he realized just why Bai Yunfei had reacted thusly, "Ahaha, brother Bai, you thought I was going to bring you to a brothel?! Please, we're the Four Lords of the Capital you know? Think about it, what woman isn't willing to be with us if we want? Why would we go there? What an imagination you've got there, but hehe, brother Bai, was that really your first thought? Were you interested? I won't say no, we can go there if you want?"

"Er...." Bai Yunfei shook his hands furiously in denial, "No no. I'm fine. I'm not interested."

.....

Exiting from the restaurant, Zheng Kai led Bai Yunfei down to a street that was even busier than most streets in the daytime. With how turbulent it was on the street, a directionally challenged person like Bai Yunfei not even knowing which direction was which. Bai Yunfei sighed to himself, thinking that the Capital was extremely large. With how long he had been stuck indoors, being brought to a place like this would definitely see to him getting lost....

About a scant five minutes later, the two came to front of a spacious building.

Looking at the nameplate hanging above the building, Bai Yunfei was surprised at what he saw.

Never did Bai Yunfei expect that the ‘fun’ place Zheng Kai mentioned would be this of all things...

Chapter 541: Casino Jin

Bai Yunfei read the nameplate of the building to reveal two words.

Casino Jin

It was a casino of all places?!

Jin....was most likely referring to the house of Jin, to which Jin Manlou was a member of. Zheng Kai had said earlier that Jin Manlou was probably here, so did that mean the casino was being overseen by him?

In Bai Yunfei's mind, a casino was a place where commoners usually found fun in. Did Zheng Kai and the others really enjoy spending their time here?

But even while he was debating that question, Bai Yunfei saw something strange--the people that were walking into the building were all soul cultivators!!

Was this....was this place where soul cultivators gambled?!

Noticing the gobsmacked expression on Bai Yunfei's face, Zheng Kai chuckled. "Brother Bai, this is the biggest casino in the Capital. As you can tell, the clientele here are all soul cultivators. Many of them enjoy themselves here."

"Do soul cultivators really enjoy gambling for gold and valuables here?" Bai Yunfei asked.

"Gold and valuables? Haha, that's not it, brother Bai. Who said anything about gambling for money or whatnot? Soul cultivators have another type of 'currency' they can use."

Bai Yunfei quirked an eyebrow, "Primal stones?"

"Primal stones." Zheng Kai confirmed. "We use stuff like that here. Primal stones are the most common choice, but stuff like soulgems, soul skills, soul armaments, and even precious materials

and herbs....whatever a soul cultivator might need or use can be gambled away here.

“There’s no need to fight to the death for them, and neither do they need to spend time looking for it. All you need is a bit of luck and you can find yourself landing the jackpot of things needed for your training, so why not? That’s why so many soul cultivators visit this place.”

So it was that way....

As surprised as Bai Yunfei was about it, Zheng Kai’s words did make some measure of sense.

“But....do you gamble normally with stuff like dice or something?” Bai Yunfei asked. For people like soul cultivators, would gambling with stuff like dices to see which number was what make any sense at all? All they had to do was use their soulsense and they’d be able to tell right away.

Seeing where Bai Yunfei was getting, Zheng Kai shook his head. “There’s not much difference in the way gambling works in normal casinos, but the chances for ‘cheating’ is a lot harder....come on, I’ll show you.”

Bai Yunfei nodded and followed Zheng Kai up the stairs to enter the casino.

The two soul cultivators guarding the gates were clearly well acquainted with Zheng Kai, as they spoke out their greetings to him when they neared and allowed them entry. But they did, however, give the three soulbeasts with Bai Yunfei a strange look. It wasn’t that soulbeasts were a strange sight to see in the casino, but three of them following one soul cultivator was a first....

.....

When they entered the casino, Bai Yunfei felt himself grow surprised.

It wasn’t that the casino had something special. It was just that it

was....too ordinary.

Just from the looks alone, Bai Yunfei couldn't see anything different to this casino than any other! He had seen his fair share of casinos before, and from what he could remember from the times he was in them, this one looked no different.

They were in a very spacious place with people as scattered as the stars in the skies. Tables for gambling were everywhere, and every so often, the people around them would either cry in happiness or in disappointment.

The only noticeable difference Bai Yunfei could note so far was the fact that rather than coins being traded, it was....primal stones.

Most of them were just low quality primal stones, though there were a few that took out other objects for the casino staff members to accept and convert into primal stones. Of course, if there was a previous agreement between the gambler and the casino, other things could be betted with.

If not for the strong aura coming from them that marked them as soul cultivators, Bai Yunfei would've thought that they were ordinary commoners instead.

And their aura were strong. They weren't Soul Apprentices or even Soul Personages. Only a rare few Soul Warriors were here. Soul Sprites took the majority with a few Soul Ancestors, but there were also a good few Soul Exalts!

This....was a rare sight to see. Bai Yunfei was finding it hard to believe what he was seeing in front of him.

But the more he looked with his two eyes, the more he realized the difference in this place.

He had noticed that whenever there were soul cultivators, none of them were revealing their soulsense. Aside from the fluctuations in the air that marked their presence with soulforce, everyone had suppressed their soulsense so they couldn't see with anything but

their eyes.

“I get it now....” Bai Yunfei realized, the gamblers of this casino were forbidden from using their soulsense.

If no one could use their soulsense, then they would be able to gamble like normal people.

He also realized that some of the tables had items on them that seemed to hum and glow strangely. They were preventing the usage of soulsense!

When he first walked into the casino, completely ignorant of the ‘rules’ of the house, Bai Yunfei had sent out his soulsense at first, only to have plenty of people look strangely at him, prompting him to stop right away. If not for the fact that Zheng Kai was with him, the workers surely would’ve come up to him already.

.....

“Haha, second brother!! You’re here!”

Not long after, a rather fatty person in golden robes came walking out to meet them. It was Jin Manlou.

As Bai Yunfei thought, Jin Manlou was actually here overseeing the place and even welcoming some people.

“Haha! Fourth brother, you’re here too!” Zheng Kai smiled, “I knew you’d be more than likely here, so I brought brother Bai here to come play a bit.”

It was then that Jin Manlou realized Bai Yunfei was there. Eyes sparkling, he boomed with laughter, “You’re here too, brother Bai? Welcome! Welcome! You’re a well-known person in the Capital now, you know?”

“Haha, it’s been a while, brother Jin.” Bai Yunfei smiled, “I’m nowhere as well known as you say I am, though.”

“Ah, the modesty of you, brother Bai. Who doesn’t know your name here in the Capital? Hehe, I feel quite honored to be one of

people that knew you first!” Jin Manlou clapped his hands, “Tonight you can gamble as you want, brother Bai! It’ll be on me if you lose!”

“Er....” Bai Yunfei waved his hands, “Thank you for your kindness, brother Jin, but gambling isn’t something I’m interested in. I’ll be fine just watching.”

But Zheng Kai and Jin Manlou were already dragging Bai Yunfei over to a nearby table. “That won’t do, brother Bai, how can you not gamble when you come here? It’s a good time to relax. Besides, who cares if you win or lose? Gambling like commoners isn’t too bad of a thing, give it a try!”

Zheng Kai took out a few mid-grade primal stones and placed them onto the table, “I call Big!”

The casino usually used low-grade primal stones, but a single mid-grade primal stone could be converted to a hundred low-grade ones, which by itself wasn’t such a bad sum. The people here seemed to know Zheng Kai however, as several of them smiled and greeted him before placing a bet of their own.

“Do you not have any primal stones on you? I can have some people bring you some, brother Bai...”

“No no, that’s fine....” Finding it slightly hard to refuse his kindness, Bai Yunfei still managed to bring out a mid-grade primal stone and placed it onto the table.

Zheng Kai and Jin Manlou were both surprised. Not at the fact that Bai Yunfei was betting, but rather what he was betting on. Rather than the usual ‘Big’ or ‘Small’ bets with the highest probabilities of winning, he had placed it on the Specific Triples number, the ‘All Five’....

“Ah, brother Jin, I heard from Zheng Kai say that you’re being ‘confined’? Are things not settled yet on why those people came after you?” Bai Yunfei asked. He wasn’t at all paying attention to

the table as he spoke to Jin Manlou.

A bitter look crossed over Jin Manlou's face, "Ugh! Actually, the three of us are being confined. Only second brother is able to go outside under the pretense of 'helping' you, brother Bai....Our houses haven't found anything of worth yet, we don't even know where they came from, who we might've angered, or who would even dare go against us four...."

He shook his head with a sigh, "Well let's not talk about this....brother Bai, I heard you became an instructor at Tianhun Academy? Haha, you're an amazing person!"

"Haha, it's nothing really. I don't even know if I'll be a good instructor or not...."

The banker at the table unveiled the cup just then before calling out to the gamblers there, "All Fives! Leopard!!"

Chapter 542: Fortune

As he was talking with Jin Manlou and Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei noticed that the two of them were now looking at him in shock. Blinking several times in confusion, he looked down at the table where the banker was now pushing a pile of primal stones towards him.

“Er....” Still blinking, Bai Yunfei looked at the dices inside the dice up, “What! Did I really win?!”

The gamblers at the same table only gawked at him. To land a Leopard like that was just far too good of a luck, wasn’t it?

“Er...haha, never took you to be super lucky at gambling, brother Bai? Landing a Leopard is a rare thing to come by.” Jin Manlou coughed once before smiling, “It’d be a shame to not continue playing when you’re so lucky. Give it a try, brother Bai, no need to hold back on my account, I can stand to lose a bit.”

“Well...it was just luck, I guess. I never gambled before.” Bai Yunfei smiled in embarrassment, his hand on his winnings. Absentmindedly, he pushed them to a spot onto one of the options. He didn’t really care about losing--these were from the casino to begin with, losing them wouldn’t hurt him in the slightest.

He didn’t look where he had pushed his winnings onto, but....it was the ‘All Fives’ spot again!!

Lips twitched from the gamblers all around him. “Are you kidding me? You don’t have to do that if you want to lose! Those are twenty mid-grade primal stones you’re gambling!! That’s enough to last me ten whole days!”

Now that he had ‘betted’, Bai Yunfei looked back to Jin Manlou, “Ah well, brother Jin, I wanted to ask you something.”

Jin Manlou snapped out from his ‘fervent’ look, “What question is it?” He asked.

“The items you’re using...” Bai Yunfei pointed at the dice cups, “What do they do? Do they block soulsense from reaching inside? Are they a special type of soul armament?”

He had been curious about these things ever since he walked in. Items that could stop soulsense was a very peculiar thing--he had never seen or heard of them before!

“Oh, those.” Jin Manlou smiled, “They’re made from a special material that can stop soulsense. But it’s not very effective. They can only stop the soulsense of Soul Sprites and lower, plenty of Soul Ancestors can easily overcome them. Since what we’re using can’t really be extracted easily, that’s all we can do with them. Our casino really only use them for the sake of convenience, since it’s easy to tell if a person is cheating or not with them. If you’re interested brother Bai....I can gift you some. I know you’re from the Crafting School, so you should be interested in how they’re made?”

“It is as you say....thank you brother Jin.” Bai Yunfei nodded, slightly disappointed in the answer. He had thought that he could use the material to create a few special soul armaments, but if they can’t be used that way, what was the point? But without research, he couldn’t say it was a dead end just yet.

The dice cup opened again, but this time, it took the banker two seconds of dazed staring to call out the combination.

“All Fi--All Fives....a Leo--Leopard!!”

“.....”

Everyone around the table seemed to turn to stone as they stared transfixed at the three dices in the cup. It was as if they had all seen a ghost.

Several spectators from the other tables were starting to float in to see the spectacle as well.

“Eh? A Leopard? Wow....the banker was lost automatically then

huh?"

"Hold on! Look at the table! Someone betted on it! And....holy f*ck! Hold me--is that....are those mid-grade primal stones?!"

"What?! Someone betted on a Leopard? And with twenty mid-grade primal stones?!"

"No way?!"

"....."

The mutterings of the other spectators caught the attention of even more people, and soon enough, everyone was coming over to take a look.

The banker at the table had gone completely green in the face, looking as though he was hoping he was in a dream of some sort. Practically pleading, he gave a look to Jin Manlou for assistance.

"Uhm....." Jin Manlou's face twitched several times before he laughed, "Haha!! Brother Bai....you're...you're something else, aren't you?! You won twice in a row?! I should bow my head to you...."

His words relieved the banker. If the young master was speaking on his behalf, then he could afford to relax a bit. Shakily, he pushed a few primal stones towards Bai Yunfei.

These stones were....high-grade primal stones!!

The surrounding clamor grew even louder. Winning high-grade primal stones was a rare sight, and usually only those big gamblers would be able to win high-grade primal stones after gambling long enough at the high stakes table. So it was highly unusual that someone from the ordinary tables would've won a few of those primal stones so quickly.

Bai Yunfei was surprised too. He had only started out betting with just one mid-grade primal stone. Somehow, that one mid-grade primal stone had turned into four high-grade primal stones

after two bets?

Author Note: I did a random conversion rate, it's not important, so please don't pay too much attention to it

It took awhile for him to understand the reason behind his winning--the Luck Pendant!!

The only way this extreme 'fortune' could be explained was with the Luck Pendant. Bai Yunfei hadn't expected it to have a use like this.

"Haha! Brother Bai, you're amazing! Such a great profit after two rounds! Haha, looks like fourth brother will be bleeding money tonight!" Zheng Kai laughed, slapping Bai Yunfei on the shoulder in admiration.

"Well...it was just my luck that time...."

It really was luck, but he had a lot of it!!

Several of the other patrons stared enviously at him.

"Ah, brother Bai! Come quick! Let's go to the VIP rooms! We can't waste your luck here! In here, 'wealth' is king, and you can beat out everyone else!" Zheng Kai cried out in excitement, pulling Bai Yunfei to the innermost gambling tables.

Having only just collected his winnings, Bai Yunfei watched as Zheng Kai pulled him away with a helpless expression on his face.

Jin Manlou followed from behind, a relieved sigh barely escaping from his mouth. Bai Yunfei was a strange one; if he won even more here, then he really would've lost more money than he was willing to lose. Luckily, Zheng Kai was pulling Bai Yunfei to the VIP games where gamblers bet against each other rather than the house. Whether he won or lost, Bai Yunfei wouldn't be burdening Jin Manlou's financial situation.

Some of the people still watching were disappointed that he left though. They were planning to follow his bets to strike it rich

themselves, but now that chance was gone....

.....

Zheng Kai was evidently very familiar with the casino, as he led Bai Yunfei through the place to where there were less and fewer people, and the ‘gambling chips’ on the table were becoming greater and greater. Furthermore, the people in this area were a lot stronger than those before.

“Brother Bai, this is the ‘VIP Room’. It’s where the richest people in the Capital come to gamble against one another. The lowest denomination of currency is usually mid-grade primal stones. Most tend to use high-grade primal stones, soul skills, or even soul armaments to gamble. Sometimes the four of us come here to play around.”

Zheng Kai gave a brief run down on the things here in this room. Bai Yunfei was surprised, he still was actually since he won those high-grade primal stones.

How in the world did things like primal stone lose their values here? How absurd, was this really how ‘rich’ the people of the Capital were?

“There’s some people here, let’s take a look.” Zheng Kai paused for a moment to speak to Jin Manlou and Bai Yunfei before opening a door.

The entrance of them three caught the eyes of the people in the room straight away. The inhabitants smiled and greeted Zheng Kai and Jin Manlou first with a friendly greeting.

Bai Yunfei swept his eyes across the room: it was quite spacious inside with a large table in the center. Aside from the workers standing by the walls of the room, there were also six patrons seated by the table, each one of them having a dice cup of their own. Likewise, they each had a pile of mid-grade primal stones, some of them even having a few high-grade primal stones.

Just then, a surprised but furious voice spoke out to Bai Yunfei, “Bai Yunfei! It’s you!?”

Chapter 543: Another 'Challenge'?!

This sudden voice startled the inhabitants of the room, each of them turning to the violet-robed young man seated to the right side of the table.

Likewise, Bai Yunfei blinked a few times before looking at the person, "You? What are you doing here?"

This person was the fourth prince of the empire, Wu Yang!

The very same person he met back in Tianhun Academy and knocked out in one blow....

Of all places, the two of them were meeting here in a casino? Did even the empire's princes come here to gamble?

Infuriated, Wu Yang spoke, "Why can't I be here?! If anything, I'm the one that should be surprised you could even get here."

Wu Yang was still feeling extremely angry with Bai Yunfei. Their last 'duel' where he had been knocked out before doing anything by a strange soul armament had led to a great deal of humiliation for him. Back then, he wanted to chase after Bai Yunfei and take revenge, but his second brother had for some reason forbidden him to!! He couldn't understand how his second brother would side with the one who hit him of all people, and neither was he willing to listen to the reasoning. Forbidden from doing anything to Bai Yunfei, Wu Yang swallowed his anger decided to first investigate who this person was before deciding on how to deal with him.

It was afterwards that he came to realize this person was Bai Yunfei, a person that came to the Capital with Zheng Kai and was....a student of the Crafting School! And a new instructor in Tianhun Academy no less!!

But even if Bai Yunfei was an instructor, that wasn't enough for Wu Yang to give up on his revenge. He couldn't shirk away from

something like that, so he decided to go to Bai Yunfei's first day of class and make a more in depth analysis of how strong he was.

But then he saw Bai Yunfei easily defeat the other instructor Zhou Yu in battle.

He was only there starting from the middle of the battle, but that was still enough to show him that even a peak late-stage Soul Exalt like Zhou Yu wasn't a match for Bai Yunfei. He couldn't believe it at first, but with time, he thought more about his own fight with Bai Yunfei.

Even if he didn't want to accept it, the truth was there for him to see: he was no match for Bai Yunfei.

He left before Bai Yunfei finished crafting his soul armament, but news that it was a heaven-tier soul armament reached him shortly afterwards, leaving him in shock once again. Then when Bai Yunfei went into seclusion, he became the talk of the Capital again, leaving Wu Yang quite depressed. Revenge onto Bai Yunfei wouldn't be easy anymore.

No matter how high Bai Yunfei was rising in the Capital, that didn't change the fact that Wu Yang didn't like him. And the fact that his crush, Mo Wanxia, was added into Bai Yunfei's crafting class made him even more jealous. It was an act akin to Bai Yunfei stealing his wife, and Wu Yang was consequently so angry he made a straw figure of Bai Yunfei to use as a pincushion.

His inability to take revenge on Bai Yunfei made him twitchy with stress. So tonight, he decided to relieve his stress by going to the casino.

And yet, he came across the very source of his stress, Bai Yunfei.

The fact that Wu Yang was looking at Bai Yunfei as an enemy wasn't lost on the people there. Some of them sighed at first, but then when they realized Wu Yang had called out the name of 'Bai Yunfei', they all looked to Bai Yunfei in bewilderment.

Zheng Kai's eyes narrowed at the sight of Wu Yang. Clearing his throat, he said, "Ah, so the fourth prince is here too? I invited my friend brother Bai here today, does the fourth prince wish to chase him out?"

"Hmph!" Wu Yang glared at Zheng Kai angrily. He and Zheng Kai had their 'problems' before, and so he didn't care at all to be polite to him.

Jin Manlou looked embarrassed slightly embarrassed. "Everyone, everyone!" He clapped his hands, "Please allow me some face here, we are here to enjoy ourselves, not to be angry and hurt another. It's best to resolve any misunderstandings before we start so we can gamble happily without spoiling the mood."

He casted a glance over to Zheng Kai, as if trying to signal if they should switch rooms to avoid a confrontation.

There was a twinkle of light in Wu Yang's eyes as he suddenly thought about something. "That's fine, I can do at least that much for you, master Jin. Since we're all here to gamble, the new may as well solve our problems through said gambling....Bai Yunfei, I challenge you! We'll settle this through gambling!"

"Uh...." Bai Yunfei wasn't sure how to respond. "Just how much do you like to 'challenge' me?! And here of all places?!"

He wanted to change rooms, actually. But before he could voice that request, Zheng Kai spoke up for him. With the problems between him and Wu Yang, Zheng Kai found himself getting angry on Bai Yunfei's behalf. "Hmph! If that's how the fourth prince wants to play, then that's how we'll play then."

He glanced to Bai Yunfei next with a face that most likely wanted to say, "We're counting on you, brother. Your luck is great. Teach that Wu Yang a lesson and beat him so badly he won't even have his underwear left."

Feeling helpless in his situation, Bai Yunfei knew it was too late

to retreat. “Alright,” he nodded, “then let’s play.”

The two of them sat down by the spots of the table closest to the entrance while Jin Manlou took up a large bench behind them. He was just going to be a spectator.

Bai Yunfei watched as a worker placed a cup with three dices in front of him, “How do we play?”

“It’s very simple, largest number wins. Everyone will call their stake and then roll their dices. Tally up the numbers and that’s that.” A thirty-something year old young man explained with a friendly smile.

It really was very simple....Bai Yunfei nodded his head, “Thank you.”

The man cupped his hands in greeting, “No need. We’re both instructors here, so such politeness isn’t necessary.”

“Eh?” Bai Yunfei uttered, “Are you an instructor at Tianhun Academy too, brother?”

He stared to Zheng Kai who only shrugged his head with uncertainty. He only cared for the females of the academy, why would he bother paying attention to the instructors? Plus, there were far too many courses, sections, and divisions to bother paying attention to, and Zheng Kai clearly wouldn’t be able to pay attention to them all.

“I am the wind course instructor for the sixth years third class, Mu Youqian. I happened to watch you craft a heaven-tier soul armament the other day, it was an enlightening experience, instructor Bai.”

Bai Yunfei cupped his hands in return, “Ah, instructor Mu, is it? Pleased to meet you.”

Now that everyone in the room had confirmation that this person in front of them was the very same Bai Yunfei that was making waves through the Capital, they were stunned. None of

them had thought that the person capable of crafting a heaven-tier soul armament would be so young.

Bai Yunfei took that moment to take a look around the room. Aside from the guards and workers there, there were a total of eight people seated at the table including him and Zheng Kai. To the right side was the fourth prince Wu Yang, and a person Bai Yunfei distinctly remembered as being the young man in green that was normally seen walking with the fourth prince. To their left was a twenty-six to twenty-seven year old man in black. Then there was Mu Youqian in front of them, a rather lazy-looking forty-something year old uncle to his left, and then a rather pudgy middle-aged man to the right.

.....

The rules of the game was very simple. Everyone would first place how many mid-grade primal stones they were willing to bet before they rolled the dice. Winner takes all. But the winner could only win as many primal stones from the other gamblers as they themselves put out. In simpler words, if one gambler staked thirty mid-grade primal stones, and the second gambler staked fifty, the first gambler would only be able to win thirty of those primal stones from the second. Naturally, this meant if one gambler lost, they stood to lose either most if not all their primal stones. If there were two or more people with the same cumulative sum, they can roll again to decide the victor.

Aside from that, since it was a game where it pitted one gambler against another, the two gamblers can opt to make a private bet against one another as long as both parties were willing.

The gamblers in this casino were stringent to the rules usually and relied on luck just like their commoner counterparts. Even methods to shake the dice within their cups were generally frowned upon and gamblers choosing to just shake the cup several times.

Both Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai placed twenty mid-grade primal stones as their opening bet and shook their cups twice. Setting the cup upside down onto the table, they waited for the others to make a move.

Just then, Wu Yang spoke out to Bai Yunfei, “Bai Yunfei, let’s make another bet!”

“Oh?” Having guessed something like this would happen, Bai Yunfei smiled, “What kind of bet?”

Wu Yang snorted, “I heard you craft a heaven tier soul armament the other day? I’ll bet you for that! If I win, I want you to hand it over to me!”

Was he that cruel that he wanted to steal over the work that had brought Bai Yunfei’s name to light?

Slightly surprised, Bai Yunfei’s lips curled upwards with interest. “Then....what will you bet for it?”

Chapter 544: Gambling With Heaven-tiers

Wu Yang's lips curled into a sneer of disdain. "Don't think the Crafting School is the only place with plenty of soul armaments, I have some too!"

A silver dagger popped out from his space ring as he spoke. Its blade was surrounded by a frosty air noticeable at a glance, and everyone who saw it blanched with surprise.

Bai Yunfei was no exception. "Low-heaven tier!"

"That's right, it's a low-heaven tier!" Wu Yang crowed, "I'll use this to bet!"

As expected from a prince of the empire. Heaven-tier soul armaments were within his capabilities to bring out and to use even to bet without a sweat. Bai Yunfei had to admit, he was surprised just like everyone else. Even he wasn't so cavalier to bet heaven-tier soul armaments so easily like that.

Wu Yang was pleased by their reactions. It took him a lot of effort to acquire this particular soul armament. It wasn't his main soul armament, but it was still a very expensive one among his collection and one he was loathed to bring out unless to impress.

Bai Yunfei's answer a moment afterwards had been equally surprising, "A dagger type soul armament....I don't need that. Have you anything else? A piece of armor would be best."

"You!!" Wu Yang's breath hitched in his throat, "Are you kidding me?! Can you even afford to be picky!? Am I a grocery stall of soul armaments?"

Bai Yunfei shrugged, "You're the one that wants to bet with me. You want something of mine, so it's only fair that I get something I want in return. Either way, I don't really care. If you don't want to bet, then we don't bet."

The knot in Wu Yang's throat tightened even more. Wasn't this

just saying his soul armament wasn't good enough?!"

"Armor, is it? Fine!!" Wu Yang's teeth gritted against each other as he replaced the dagger for a silky-like piece of armor into his hands.

Bai Yunfei's eyes lit up—a low-heaven tier armor with a metal affinity!!

He had only been saying that in the spur of the moment and hadn't expected Wu Yang to really agree to it. The Recovery Armor he was wearing had served him well, but it was reaching the end of its lifespan with it being unable to keep up with him. In that case, if he could obtain an even better one....

The expression on Bai Yunfei's face had struck a nerve in Wu Yang, but he managed to calm himself enough. "How about it? Defensive soul armaments are rarer than offensive ones. It's a low-heaven tier piece of armor, that better?"

"Ah, yes. Not bad...." Bai Yunfei nodded and then shook his head straight afterwards, "But it's still not enough for my Critical Glove."

"You...." Wu Yang's voice sounded oddly strangled with fury, "Are you f*cking with me?!"

"No no...." Laughed Bai Yunfei, "but why is the fourth prince interested in my glove? Why don't I make a change then? Take a look at this, it's not any worse than your armor."

With a shake of his right hand, a golden sword appeared onto the table.

This was the soul armament he got from the fourth elder of the Beast Taming School, Huang Lin. It was his reserve soul armament and was a high-earth tier soul armament when he got it. But after a period of upgrading, Bai Yunfei had it to the same level as a low-heaven tier. And with the additional effects of it where the attack was boosted, Bai Yunfei was sure this specific soul armament was a

lot better than most other low-heaven tier ones.

The shining light radiating from the tip of the sword was captivating to look at, and even Wu Yang's eyes were caught onto the sight of the sword. He really enjoyed using weapons like the greatsword since he felt like using such items was very intimidating when used in battle. And this golden sword was very impressive if he had to say so.

He ruminated on the idea. "Fine! It's settled!"

But then Bai Yunfei spoke out again, "One second!"

"Now what?!"

Bai Yunfei smiled, "Fourth prince, the way I see it, we should play a little longer since we're betting for heaven-tier soul armaments. Why don't we make it best of three sets? Winning just one doesn't feel very fun. If its three though, that's when it gets exciting."

Wu Yang said nothing. What Bai Yunfei said did make a little bit of sense. Best of three sets made it slightly thrilling, and if one had bad luck and lost once, there was time to make up for it.

In the best 'generous' sounding voice he could muster, Wu Yang spoke, "Fine then. If you're that afraid of losing, we'll go with what you said."

Bai Yunfei smiled but said nothing afterwards. He was secretly delighted by Wu Yang's answer. The man had fallen for his trap, even though he didn't realize it yet.

The Luck Pendant had its uses in terms of gambling, and Bai Yunfei could confirm that now. But still, having luck didn't mean certain victory. Nothing was certain in this world. But....if he could raise the amount of rounds, Bai Yunfei could guarantee a higher chance of winning!

Bai Yunfei had confidence in his upgraded equipment. Why wouldn't that hold true for his +11 Luck Pendant?

Luck Pendant stats:

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: None

Upgrade Level: +11

Additional Attribute: +40 Luck

Soul Compatibility: 20%

Equipment Effect: 60% Increase in rate of cultivation.

+10 Additional Effect: Double the chance of an equipment or additional effect triggering.

Upgrade Requirement: 150 Soulpoints

Author Note: Bai Yunfei used a +11 Guaranteed Upgrade Stone back in the Soulbeast Forest to upgrade it to +11. There might be a few readers that've forgotten, so I figured I should clarify again.

.....

And now that the deal between Bai Yunfei and Wu Yang were done, the other gamblers began to open up their cups to reveal the dice underneath.

“Haha! I win!”

“Haha, my number’s bigger, I win!”

Two ecstatic voices cried out: one of them being Wu Yang, and the other being the twenty-something year old black-robed man to the left.

Out of the eight people gambling at the table, the one in black robes had the highest number. And since he was the one who staked the highest amount of primal stones, he was the one who earned the entire pot.

But the reason why Wu Yang was happy was because he had a sum higher than Bai Yunfei.

Of the three sets, Wu Yang just won the first one.

Bai Yunfei's heart skipped a beat in disappointment, but also slightly in relief. As he expected, 'luck' did not equate to 'victory'. Him losing this round was a normal outcome.

While he was happy, Wu Yang felt himself feeling slightly regretful—why had he agreed to having a best of three set? If it was just a one time deal, he would've won already!

Gambling was all about weighing the personal gains and losses, and acting accordingly.

The young man in black robes was practically giddy with joy. He had staked everything in this one round, and he had made out like a bandit! Winning two hundred mid-grade primal stones like this just gave him the confidence that he'd be able to sing loudly today and win back everything he lost earlier!!

And so the second round started.

.....

"Haha....I win."

Bai Yunfei smiled after he opened the dice cup and revealed his dices underneath.

Five, five, and six. This was a result pushing the upper limit and was the highest of the eight there.

Bai Yunfei smiled to himself at this result, his hand subconsciously touching at the Luck Pendant behind his robes.

He might've looked indifferent, though the truth was anything but that. When the time came to reveal their dices, Bai Yunfei had been extremely nervous—betting heaven-tier soul armaments was a very nerve-wracking thing!

Wu Yang's face darkened. "What are you happy about, we've one more round still. Come on!!"

The third round....

"My apologies, but it's my win again."

Bai Yunfei smiled, revealing the five, five, and six dices under his cup.

“.....”

Everyone stared blankly at the results. Rolling a high result twice in a row was a rare sight.

Wu Yang’s eyes were wide open, his face in complete disbelief at the dices of Bai Yunfei. He looked back down to his own dices, a one, three, and three. His face hardened.

He lost. Not only did he just lose several mid-grade primal stones, he also lost a heaven-tier soul armament.

But he wasn’t a sore loser. The golden armor was tossed to Bai Yunfei with a snort, “Impressive luck you got there. We agreed on it, so here, it’s yours!!”

Receiving the soul armament, Bai Yunfei stored it into his space ring, “You’re a straightforward one, fourth prince.”

No matter how Bai Yunfei smiled, Wu Yang took it as schadenfreudic smile. Not willing to give up, Wu Yang spoke, “That’s just one win! Don’t be so happy!! Let’s go again!!”

Bai Yunfei raised his eyebrows, “Oh? What are you going to bet this time, fourth prince?”

Chapter 545: Losing Badly Hurts

“Haha, my apologies, but I win again.”

Bai Yunfei announced with a smile towards the ashen-faced Wu Yang as he revealed his dices again.

This round, the primal stones had all gone towards the kindly-looking uncle. But in terms of his bets with Wu Yang, he won again. It was a loss of ten mid-grade primal stones, but a gain of late-stage class six soulgem.

And in terms of his bets, Bai Yunfei won two out of three again.

.....

Already, the two of them had betted against each other for ten sets already. And of those ten times, Bai Yunfei won at least six of those sets.

Just from looking at the results, it was clear to see the outcome.

Wu Yang's face was exceedingly dark.

The very first thing to go was his metal affinity armor. Heading straight into the second match, Wu Yang lost a low-heaven tier lightning affinity dagger. An unfortunate loss both times....

Then came the third loss in the form a silver shortsword.

Fortune came back around for him in the fourth round, seeing to the return of his shortsword.

But it wasn't meant to be, as the fifth round saw to him losing it again...

And then in the sixth round, he lost a precious fire-type class six soulgem....

.....

“You....you.....” Wu Yang stuttered out from anger after he lost a precious fire-type soulgem. Anger wracked at his body as he

started to speak out, “Impossible!! How can I keep losing to you?! How is your luck that good?! You....you’ve got to be cheating! You...!”

“Fourth prince!” Bai Yunfei interrupted, “Please pay more attention to your words, fourth prince. Accusing someone else of cheating is improper to do. We are all admirable soul cultivators here, and several are stronger than I am. Whether or not I cheated is something that can easily be found out.”

He honed in on Wu Yang’s face, “Fourth prince, remember your station as a prince. A bet is a bet. As a prince, a small matter like this shouldn’t matter much to you, shouldn’t it?”

“A small matter? I lost three heaven-tier soul armaments to you and a late-stage class six soulgem, can you really say it’s a ‘small’ matter?!”

Wu Yang was angry. Angry to the point where he wanted to lash out at the world around him. Though he lost plenty of his possessions, he didn’t lose all of his rationality. Breathing in and out several times, he tried to calm himself down.

“Fourth prince....” The indifferent-looking man to Wu Yang’s right spoke up, “Please don’t act on rash impulses.”

It wasn’t known if it was that warning that snapped him out from his anger, but Wu Yang’s eyes flew open to stare darkly at his companion. “Relax,” He spoke in between gritted teeth, “I know how to behave!”

Today was another day where he found himself suffering at the hands of Bai Yunfei. The first time he had fallen to him, it was when he was knocked out. And this time, he had lost several of his more precious treasures.....

How could he let that go!!

But there wasn’t anything else he could use to bet with Bai Yunfei right now....

The things he had betted with and lost were his own personal ‘stock’ and were dispensable, even if it hurt to lose them. The rest of his stuff were far more precious and couldn’t be used in a bet. That much, Wu Yang was aware of.

The fact that Wu Yang hadn’t forgotten about that gave his calm companion some measure of relief. He hadn’t interfered with Wu Yang’s gambling since there hadn’t been a need so far, but if things got a bit too out of hand, he was there as both a friend and bodyguard to ensure that it wouldn’t continue.

Deep in thought, Wu Yang sat still for a moment before ultimately shooting up from his seat. “We’re leaving!” He spoke to his companion.

He was leaving! This time, Bai Yunfei was the surprised one. “What? Are you not going to stick around and play some more, fourth prince?”

He was answered with a heavy glare, “Don’t patronize me. You’ve already won plenty off me, that should be enough. I’ll pay you back twofold for this one day!”

And with that, he whirled around and left the room and quickly out of sight.

Bai Yunfei had to admit, he was a little disappointed. He hadn’t thought that the fourth prince would leave so soon, he still wanted to win a little bit more....but then he scolded himself. Winning so many times was already a good thing, being greedy for more wasn’t.

.....

When he looked back to his winnings from the other games, Bai Yunfei was surprised to see a small mountain of mid-grade primal stones. There had to be almost a thousand of them, meaning roughly ten high-grade primal stones! He had been so focused on his bets with Wu Yang that he hadn’t noticed that he won so many

primal stones from the other six people there.

He looked to Zheng Kai next to him, “Brother Zheng, we should leave as well. We have to be at the academy tomorrow after all. It’s always good to stop when one’s ahead after all.”

Zheng Kai lost a good amount of primal stones himself, but the fact that Bai Yunfei had straight up slaughtered Wu Yang in their bets had been more than enough to wipe his own losses from his mind. A bit reluctant to leave, Zheng Kai acquiesced, “Alright then. If you don’t want to keep playing, let’s leave.”

Mu Youqian took that moment to speak up then, “Haha, in that case, let’s adjourn here for tonight. I had more than enough excitement for one night, haha! Instructor Bai, your luck is astounding! The primal stones I won today were all completely taken in by you.”

Bai Yunfei had the courtesy to look embarrassed, “It’s just luck, that’s all. Luck was looking out for me today.”

As everyone was preparing to leave, a voice suddenly called out to him, “Hold on!! I want to make a bet with you!!”

Pausing, everyone turned around to look at who spoke. It was the twenty-something year old young man in black to the right. Both of his fists were clenched tightly as he stared hatefully at the spot in front of him in dissatisfaction.

He had clearly lost most of his things. And unfortunately for him, he didn’t have Wu Yang’s tact to leave before it was too late, so he had lost it all almost.

“Friend, gambling has always been something that is fun in small amounts and harmful in big amounts. Betting too much is just as bad as betting too little. With your bad luck, I think you should give up for tonight.” The gray-robed uncle shook his head, trying to calm down the other person.

“Who cares about what you think!! My luck can’t be bad today! I

won a great amount a while ago, I can still turn this around! Let's go again!!" The young man snarled, adamant that he could still win back what he had lost.

The other man shook his head, but said nothing more.

People like him weren't rare in the casino. Losing a dreadful amount of their possession tend to affect their cognitive abilities. The more they gambled, the more they lost. And then in the end, they'd have nothing left....

As the person in charge of this place, Jin Manlou chose then to speak up, "Friend, this session is done for today. Let us leave and let this matter wait for another time. You already have nothing left to gamble with...."

"Who says I don't?!" A scarlet streak ran across the young man's face. Determined to win back everything he lost today, the man shook his right hand to bring out a pile of things onto the table.

Every single person found it hard to hide their exasperation from their faces. The objects he took out wasn't exactly precious, but....they were all just miscellaneous goods. A few low-grade primal stones, a few soul armaments--the highest quality one being a low-earth and most of them being human-tier ones even--there were also a few class three and four soulgems. There were also a few ordinary herbs and plants and a few precious materials....

This man had definitely lost it all. However much he started out with today, it was clear to see that he had squandered even his family's fortune....

Ostensibly, he gave a dark glare to the people around him, "I still have this! Bet with me one last time!"

Everyone sighed. As a soul cultivator, he should have some semblance of self-dignity. Even if he was the son of a wealthy family, it was shameful how he was acting.

But ultimately, even soul cultivators are human in the end. They

had human-like characteristics, being human themselves, and losing so much from gambling, whether it be money or treasure, was something that'd be hard to accept. Primal stones were specially precious to every soul cultivator. To lose so many of those to the point of complete regret and the loss of rationality was something that could even be said to be normal.

The miscellaneous goods he brought out weren't something any of the people here wanted to even look at. Jin Manlou was about to repeat himself when Bai Yunfei's eyes flickered with suspicion. Hurriedly, he spoke up, "Alright, I'll bet with you one more round."

Chapter 546: Uncle Dan Teng

The night was already at its peak, with the moon shining brightly from its perch up above in the skies. But Casino Jin was still taking in plenty of patrons, but a group of people were just then coming out from the inner rooms.

It was Bai Yunfei, Zheng Kai, and Jin Manlou.

“No need to send us off, fourth brother. Hurry back to your place, I’ll bring brother Bai back home. He has classes tomorrow.” Zheng Kai waved to Jin Manlou.

“Have a safe trip,” Bai Yunfei smiled, “let’s have Huang Bin and Chen Qiantan come next time together.”

A smile cracked onto Jin Manlou’s face, “Haha, sounds good! I’ll see you off here then, brother Bai! Take care of yourself, and come back when you want to have some more fun! Seeing you win so much tonight was extremely satisfying to watch, haha!!”

“Haha, I’ll be coming back here quite frequently, I’m sure.” Bai Yunfei bowed before leaving with Zheng Kai onto the roads leading to the right.

“Brother Bai, one moment.”

Just two steps down the steps, Bai Yunfei and the others were stopped by someone calling out after Bai Yunfei. Turning his head, Bai Yunfei watched as the laid-back gray-robed uncle from before came walking after him.

“Is there something I can do for you, uncle?”

“Haha, nothing really. Just wanted to get to know you, brother Bai.” He laughed, “Your gambling today has broadened my horizons, brother Bai. It’s simply amazing how lucky you were. I don’t come here often, but I’ve never seen anyone with that kind of luck, so I wanted to see if we could be friends.”

Sensing the oddity in his words, the man hurried to say, “Ah, but don’t misunderstand me, brother Bai. I’m not someone wanting after something of yours. I am but only a shopkeeper of a teahouse near Tianhun Academy. I like to think myself as a rather laid back person who’d rather make friends than power. Since you’ll be an instructor at the academy, please feel free to come on by my teahouse, the Soothing Heart, on North Seventh Street. It’s a quaint teahouse, but I’m proud of it.”

Zheng Kai’s ears perked up at the name, “Ah? So you’re the shopkeeper of the Soothing Heart?”

The man nodded, “Haha, indeed, master Zheng. The Soothing Heart is a teahouse I opened.”

Noticing the confused look on Bai Yunfei’s face, Zheng Kai explained it to him, “The Soothing Heart is well-known in Tianhun Academy. They don’t serve ordinary tea, but ones that have therapeutic effects. Many soul cultivators that are in a bad state of mind can come here and be soothed. It also helps with training....”

“Oh?” Bai Yunfei uttered, he hadn’t thought that such a place would exist. Politely cupping his hands to the other man, Bai Yunfei smiled, “Might I ask for your name, uncle? The heavens must have decided it that we sit at the same table tonight. If your teahouse is next to the academy, then I will definitely come by soon enough.”

“You are always welcomed to my teahouse, brother Bai. Of course, the very best Soul Forming Tea will be served for you!” He laughed before introducing himself, “My family name is Dan, and my given name is ‘Teng’, as in the character to ‘soar’.”

“.....”

Noticing the astonished look on Bai Yunfei’s face, Dan Teng looked curiously at him, “Is there something the matter?”

“Ah, No, not at all...” Bai Yunfei wiped any emotions of his face before replying.

This uncle’s name was very ‘strange’.....Dan Teng....?

TL Note: Character’s name is 旦腾 (Dan Teng), which is a homonym to 蛋疼 (Dan Teng), meaning pain in the ass.

This of course, was a fact only Bai Yunfei knew. This world didn’t have slang like ‘pain in the ass’ here.

.....

After saying goodbye to uncle ‘pain in the ass’, Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai continued on their way back to Zheng manor.

Bai Yunfei’s relative silence had been picked up on by Zheng Kai, who asked, “What’s wrong? Brother Bai, you seem to be thinking about something.”

“Ah, it’s nothing.” Bai Yunfei shook his head, “Just thinking about what I won today. I never thought that in just a short few moments, I’d be able to win this much....”

“Haha! I see!” Zheng Kai barked with laughter, “It is a little ridiculous....but that’s just your luck, brother Bai. People who have more money than brains like Wu Yang are hard to come by, so it’s not a bad thing. You definitely don’t see stuff like this happening every day, man....three heaven-tier soul armaments! If it was me, I’d die of joy.”

Zheng Kai was looking very pleased at the loss Wu Yang had incurred.

“Hey, brother Bai, I’ve a question actually.” Zheng Kai suddenly remembered something. “That last guy, why did you agree to bet with him? The stuff he brought out weren’t even good, winning against him was pointless....”

“Haha, just felt like it, I guess. That guy basically lost it all, but did you see how he wasn’t willing to give up? That look of as if he

became enlightened? I hoped he learned his lesson from this, that you can't be too excessive when gambling....”

“Tsk, I see. You’re a shrewd one, brother Bai. But there’s no saving people like those who try to win back what they lost, only to lose even more. They won’t even give up until all their valuables are gone....that’s just human nature, no matter if they’re commoners or soul cultivators....”

Zheng Kai shrugged, “Well, whatever. Brother Bai, you really gave it to Wu Yang tonight. With all those treasures he lost to you, and then the previous grudge he has with you, he’s not going to live that down. You’d better watch your step, brother Bai. Angering a person like him isn’t something many people can get away with and live. Aside from me, that is, haha!!”

“Oh, really?” Bai Yunfei smirked back, “What, you think Wu Yang’s going to send people to assassinate us?”

Zheng Kai waved his hand absentmindedly, “Well...nothing that extreme. But in the end, he’s still the fourth prince. He has plenty of people at his command, assassination’s just one of tho—”

“Watch out!!”

Before he could even finish speaking, Zheng Kai was pulled into the air by a very grim-looking Bai Yunfei!

“Pcht! Pcht! Pcht....”

No sooner than a second later when Bai Yunfei leapt into the air with Zheng Kai, the ground where they had been standing on was impaled by over a dozen black stone spikes!!

If either of the two had been even a second late, their bodies would’ve had even more holes than a hornet’s nest....

The blue-eyes wyrm and permafrost mastiff had been traveling just far enough behind the two to safely dodge the spikes.

With the ground beneath him filled with spikes, Bai Yunfei was

prepared to use his elemental energy as platforms to kick off from. But before he could do so, the surrounding area began to shine orange before locking Bai Yunfei in place, preventing him from moving!

The solidification of the elemental earth in the area had been quick enough to stop Bai Yunfei from escaping into any direction!

Panic filled Bai Yunfei's eyes as he felt the elemental energy lock his feet in place. Right besides him, Zheng Kai's eyes narrowed, but his right arm had been touching Bai Yunfei's shoulder before they could stop moving. Concentrating, Zheng Kai's eyes flashed with light before Bai Yunfei felt himself back on solid ground again. Looking around himself, Bai Yunfei realized they had somehow escaped the elemental prison and were back on the ground next to the blue-eyes wyrm and permafrost mastiff!

Teleportation!!

At the moment they teleported away, the elemental earth gathered above them revealed the silhouette of a person that then leapt towards the two!

Seeing the figure appeared out from nowhere, Bai Yunfei's eyes widened in shock, “A Soul King!!”

Chapter 547: Ambush!!

The attack had been far too sudden, even for Bai Yunfei whose senses were more acute than most. That first attack would've left him open to an injury, and then he would've been in danger against the follow ups!

Their ambusher was a person Bai Yunfei couldn't believe was attacking them....a Soul King!

A Soul King was here to attack!

Both Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai had grim looks on their faces. Whether they liked it or not, they had to retreat!

But before the two of them could even try to attempt that, the Soul King in the air lifted his hand and pressed it in the direction of the two of them!

“Hmph!”

A grunt came out from Zheng Kai’s mouth. His face started to pale rapidly in color and sweat drops the size of small beans were already forming on his head as if from pain.

At the same time, both the blue-eyes wyrm and Xiao Qi started to howl and chirp out in pain!

Bai Yunfei had felt a faint stab of pain in his mind—or the soul—a feeling that shook his body and left him a little breathless from the aftermaths.

The +12 bracelet that added spirit-resistance on his right hand and the Soul Sentinel Scarf on his forehead both flashed once with light before disseminating a strange energy through him, flushing the pain almost entirely out from his body!

“A soul attack!!”

Bai Yunfei’s heart skipped a beat. He knew that Soul Kings were capable of attacks that could damage the soul!

The Soul King was already closeby now. In his hand was a blade made entirely from elemental earth to strike down Bai Yunfei and at the same time grab onto Zheng Kai!

“Roar!!!”

A streak of white light flew towards the elder before he could succeed with his attack. A roar rumbled through the air as the white streak landed right in front of Bai Yunfei to protect him!

The roar had sent a shiver to the body and soul of the Soul King. The blade of elemental earth crumbled under the roar, prompting the Soul King to come to a screeching halt and leap away to the right of his initial destination in shock.

“A class seven soulbeast! Impossible!!” The Soul King finally spoke before a white light shot around his body to trap him.

White and orange traveled in every direction through the air, the permafrost mastiff sometimes roaring out loud under Bai Yunfei’s commands. With its strength, the mastiff was strong enough to disallow the other Soul King from attacking him.

It was a good thing the Soul King was only an early-stage, else the permafrost mastiff wouldn’t have such an easy time.

The street they were on wasn’t too crowded compared to the other streets in the Capital, but there were still several passersby on there. When the Soul King appeared, they had all been scared to death almost and fled. With the abundance of soul cultivators in the Capital, fights were pretty common, so many people knew that the only thing to do in this case was to run away and wait for the guards to come deal with it.

“Boom!!”

The earth shook heavily as elemental energy spread throughout the area. One of the nearby two-storied buildings was blown apart by the energy, but thankfully, the people inside of it had already fled, so no one was hurt.

The permafrost mastiff was quick and nimble, flying here and there as a way to ‘surround’ the Soul King. It rarely used any elemental attacks and was instead used to prevent the Soul King from attacking Bai Yunfei or Zheng Kai or even leaving.

“Wh—wheeze...”

His hands on his knees, Zheng Kai was stooped over as he tried to catch his breath. The attack on his soul just now had been very draining on him.

“Brother Bai, we have to go! We have to wait for reinforcements! Or else—”

Zheng Kai looked up to the battle taking place in the skies and then Bai Yunfei as he spoke. But before he could finish his sentence again, Bai Yunfei’s face changed expression once again. Grabbing onto his shoulder, Bai Yunfei leapt into the air once again!!

“Crackk, crackkkk....”

The moment after the two men leapt into the air, a white sheen of light covered the ground with an odd crackling noise. The white light turned into frost, plunging the temperature around the area several degrees!

Ice!!

A layer of ice about a meter thick had formed where Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai’s feet used to be!

The two of them had been fortunate enough to dodge the ice attack, but the blue-eyes worm hadn’t been so lucky. As soon as the ice touched its feet, the wyrm was immediately encapsulated within the ice and turned into an ice sculpture!

All the peak late-stage class six blue-eyes wyrm could do was move its eyeballs from within its icy prison, unable to do anything else!

A power capable of doing something like that had meant only one

thing....a Soul King!

There was another Soul King!

Before he could even properly digest what was going on, Bai Yunfei felt the space twenty meters away start to distort, revealing a figure in white coming straight for him!

“Hmph!!”

The newly arrived Soul King snorted gently when he noticed that his attack failed, but to the ears of Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai, his snort was as loud as lightning. Paling in the face, Zheng Kai’s soulforce began to deplete rapidly so that only half remained! Even Xiao Qi was affected by whatever it was the Soul King was doing and began to plummet to the ground with a chirp of pain!!

Another soul attack!!

An even stronger one than the first!

This new person was....a mid-stage Soul King!!

The attack onto his soul was faster than Bai Yunfei realized. A feeling of despair welled up inside of him when he realized just how strong and fast this person was. He hadn’t even been able to move or use his Cataclysmic Seal to defend himself when the person was already in front of him!

But the pain in his soul had only been for a while before the Soul Sentinel Scarf flashed once more with light, flooding his body with a warm sensation and driving away most of the pain. But by the time the pain was alleviated, his soulforce was already....at the halfway point of his usual reserves!

Despite that, Bai Yunfei was relieved that the attack on his soul was no longer there! It was as if.....the attack on his soul had been ineffective against him and had been flushed out!

“Hmph!!”

And this time, the elder in front of him uttered a sound of pain

rather than the cold snort of indifference from before!

He came to a stop just five meters away from Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai, allowing the two of them to see just who it was. There stood an old man with a look of pain and shock on his pale face. The amount of aura radiating from him was now just two-thirds of what it used to be after his attempt on their lives!

From his appearance, it seemed that his failure to take down the two of them with his soul attack had weakened him.

Bai Yunfei was only surprised for a moment before he realized what had happened—the +10 additional effect of the Soul Sentinel Scarf!!

Soul Sentinel Scarf's stats:

Equipment Grade: Low Divine

Elemental Affinity: Water, Darkness

Upgrade Level: +12

Defense: 11000

Additional Defense: 10000

Soul Compatibility: 100%

Equipment Effect 1: Decrease damage taken by all spirit-related attacks by 50%.

Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

Equipment Effect 3: 100% Increase in soul stabilization rate.

+10 Additional Effect: 30% Chance to completely deflect a spirit-based attack.

Cooldown of 10 minutes.

+12 Additional Effect: 200% Increase in spirit-based attacks.

Upgrade Requirement: 500 Soulpoints

The ice-type Soul King had suffered from his very own soul attack because of the +10 additional effect of the Soul Sentinel Scarf! Not only had it saved Bai Yunfei from peril, it completely turned the tables onto the Soul King!

It had 30% chance to activate, but with the Luck Pendant's ability, that turned 30% to 60%. The fact that its effect would activate now of all timing had been unexpected, but not

unwanted....

From when the second Soul King appeared and attacked Bai Yunfei's soul, Bai Yunfei felt like he had stepped across the gates to the underworld to the first layer of it.

But now that that feeling was gone, Bai Yunfei felt extremely happy. Kicking off from the ground, he took Zheng Kai backwards with him while sending the Cataclysmic Seal forward in a flash of red. As it flew through the skies, the brick grew with size to slam into the Soul King in a burst of fiery light!!

Chapter 548: A Desperate Situation

The ice-type Soul King hadn't expected to be hit with his own soul attack since he had disregarded the two puny Soul Exalts in front of him as being inconsequential and didn't hold back. But unfortunately for him, him putting so much power into his attack meant being hit with an equal amount of backlash, hurting him enough to drop a third of his normal fighting efficiency. It wasn't a fatal amount, but still something that noticeably weakened him.

He didn't know how to expect such a thing. He hadn't any idea that this could even happen. As a Soul King, he had to admit he was absolutely shocked. And by the time he could reattune himself to reality, a giant 'wall' was already coming straight for him!

"Mid-heaven tier soul armament!!"

The power behind the Cataclysmic Seal was astounding, and before he could do anything but put both arms up to defend himself and try to retreat to widen the distance between him and the wall.

"Boom!!"

Despite his best efforts, the brick was flying far too fast for him to escape. Mercilessly, the Cataclysmic Seal crashed into the front of him, sending him flying forward with the brick as it traveled. The two of them slammed into the ruins of a nearby building with a resounding crash.

The feeling of contact was felt by Bai Yunfei through the connection. It hadn't done much damage, but it did its job. Waving his right hand, Bai Yunfei called the Cataclysmic Seal back to him in its regular size so that it didn't use up any more soulforce.

By now, he and Zheng Kai were both standing on the rooftop of a building two hundred meters away from the Soul King.

Now that the Cataclysmic Seal was gone, the ice-type Soul King

stood there among the ruins with a blank look on his face. When he looked up and saw Bai Yunfei standing there, anger registered in his eyes. The Soul King hadn't expected to suffer any damages by the hand of these two little Soul Exalts. Furious, the man sneered and flew towards Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai with the power of flight!

Because of the backlash from his previous soul attack attempt, the Soul King was afraid of using another soul attack without knowing more about the situation or having a secondary piece of insurance. In either case, he'd use his own strength and control over elemental energy to beat the two Soul Exalts. In those two aspects, he was still a lot stronger than them.

.....

"Damnit!! Who are these people?! They're even willing to fight us while inside the limits of the Capital!" Zheng Kai cried out in exasperated anger. "We have to run, brother Bai! If we can just buy ourselves some time, the Soul Kings in the Capital will come! There's plenty of them among the guards, and a battle like this will definitely catch their attention. We're safe as long as they get here!"

But Bai Yunfei didn't seem to agree with Zheng Kai's plan. "If they're willing to attack us, don't you think they've planned it out already? Do you really think we can outrun a Soul King? There's no time but to protect ourselves!"

He called the fireseed within the Cataclysmic Seal to him. Letting it enter his body, Bai Yunfei felt his strength explode into the stage of a peak late-stage Soul Exalt!

He was going into Berserk Mode!

While he was powering up, the ice-type Soul King was already making his way towards them with the speed of a demon!

The sudden increase in strength from Bai Yunfei alarmed Zheng

Kai, but not for long. Forcing himself into a state of calm, he withdrew a black folding fan from his space ring and prepared his remaining soulforce to fight against the Soul King.

A feeling of dread washed over the two Soul Exalts before the Soul King was even there. Icy crystals were already spreading through the area as if trying to freeze the entire place.

“Chirp!!”

There was a furious chirp from Xiao Qi as it flew back into the air. With a flap of its wings, five large blades of space shot towards the Soul King in order to prevent him from reaching Bai Yunfei.

“Eh?” The Soul King uttered in slight surprise at the fact that Xiao Qi was capable of such an attack. But before it could reach him, the Soul King concentrated slightly before flashing forward in a burst of strength, almost making it seemed like he teleported twenty meters in one single stride to get to Bai Yunfei! The Spatial Edges of Xiao Qi hadn’t even been close enough to touch his robes and sailed harmlessly away from him!

His speed had already been very hard to get a hold of beforehand, but now that he was even faster than before, both Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai were both completely caught off guard. In his fear, Zheng Kai moved to swing his fan to send out a cut in space, but before he could go through with the action, a white ray of elemental energy shot straight through his right wrist!

Grunting in pain, Zheng Kai dropped his fan, unable to hold it anymore!

Another ray of white light had shot towards Bai Yunfei as well, only to have Bai Yunfei try to smack it away with his Fire-tipped Spear. But when the two made contact, the concussive force from the impact had nearly dislodged Bai Yunfei’s spear from his hands!

Sneering in disdain, the ice-type Soul King lashed out with his right hand towards Bai Yunfei’s throat, threatening to tear it out!

His strength would be more than enough to do that, no matter how strong Bai Yunfei's defense was!

No matter how fast Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai's reactions were, they may as well been a child in front of the Soul King!

Like the claw of an eagle, the Soul King's hand drew closer and closer to Bai Yunfei's throat. If he didn't do anything, then Bai Yunfei would have his throat torn out!

As he was about to bring up his left arm to defend himself, Bai Yunfei felt someone's arm grab onto his right arm. The world blurred in front of him for a brief moment before he was teleported forwards thirty meters so that his back was no facing the Soul King!

Teleportation!

His enemy hadn't been the one to teleport, it was Zheng Kai who brought the two of them away from danger in the nick of time.

But barely any time after they teleported, the ice-type Soul King turned around and chased after them again!

Exhaustion filled Zheng Kai's face. Teleportation required plenty of energy, and with his wounds, the exertion was even worse. He couldn't use it again and again either since in front of a Soul King, short-ranged teleportation wasn't very useful....

In a short two breaths, the enemy was already back on them. His forefingers were pressed together like a sword, elemental ice flowing outwards from the fingers to stab into Bai Yunfei's throat!

Gritting his teeth, Zheng Kai was about to try and teleport the two of them out of the way again when he felt Bai Yunfei's person split....into three!

The Bai Yunfei on the right grabbed hold of Zheng Kai and then threw him away to safety!

The other two raised their spears up high to then stab at the

incoming Soul King from slightly different angles!

+12 Additional effect of the Fire-tipped Spear, Doppelganger!

A dangerous glint entered the eyes of the ice-type Soul King, “You insignificant worm!!”

Waving his left hand in front of him, a single blade made from ice materialized in front of him. Cutting into the head of one of the doppelgangers, the Soul King noticed the Bai Yunfei in front of him move to strike him through the heart with his spear. Rather than moving, the Soul King opted to aim for Bai Yunfei’s throat!

In his eyes, the spear wouldn’t be capable of breaking through his elemental ice barrier. And his own hand would more than enough to lacerate and tear apart Bai Yunfei’s throat!

Chapter 549: Damage to the Soul!

The ice-type Soul King was pleased with how this exchange was shaping up. He could easily kill Bai Yunfei through a strike in the throat with the power of the elemental ice gathered around his right hand, but Bai Yunfei could not say the same with his spear.

But before his hand could even strike Bai Yunfei, the Soul King's eyes widened in abject horror and surprise.

The reason behind his surprise was simple. The crimson red spear that should've been stopped by his barrier had simply gone straight through it as if the barrier hadn't even existed!

His elemental barrier was strong enough to defend against most low-heaven tier soul armaments, but it was good as gone when the spear stabbed through it!

This was a surprisingly unexpected hair-raising situation for him. His back grew slick with sweat as the spear continued towards him. Even with how strong he was physically, getting stabbed through the chest with a spear would be extremely painful.

The Soul King realized then that his current attack to kill Bai Yunfei would be foolhardy in the face of this spear. Bringing his hand back as quickly as lightning, he brought the hand to his chest to try and defend himself with the elemental ice.

“Clang!!!!”

There was a sound of collision as both Bai Yunfei and the ice-type Soul King froze in place in the air.

The Fire-tipped Spear had stabbed straight through the elemental ice around the Soul King's hand, but it stopped just half an inch away from the Soul King's heart!

It hadn't stabbed into him!!

The Soul King had stopped the Fire-tipped Spear from going any further in by clamping it in between his two fingers!!

With just those two fingers, he had stopped Bai Yunfei's almost-certain killing move!

Bai Yunfei had been so excited when the spear stabbed through the Soul King's barrier, but then when it was stopped by him, the look of excitement immediately turned into one of horror. The strongest move he had in his arsenal had been stopped almost effortlessly.

The ability of the Fire-tipped Spear to ignore elemental defenses had worked multiple times in the past, and none of Bai Yunfei's foes had been one the wiser when hit with it. But.....this Soul King had grabbed at it so easily between his two fingers! How could Bai Yunfei not feel bad?!

The shock hadn't slid off the face of the Soul King either. Though he made it look simple, catching the Fire-tipped Spear between his two fingers had actually needed him to use more physical strength than he was normally accustomed to using. He rarely used his physical body to fight ever since he became a Soul King, but there was no helping it this time. His elemental defense had 'failed', leaving him no order choice. It was only fortunate that he managed to defend himself, else he would've been sorely hurt....

Noticing the look of shock on Bai Yunfei's face, the Soul King's eyes flashed dangerously with a hint of ice. Murderous intent flooded the air as he stared at the Soul Exalt who had forced into such a state. Not only was this humiliating, it was unforgettable. He'd make sure this whelping would die in the most painful way possible for him to actually feel appeased.

"Die!!"

The Soul King roared, his right hand twisting so that the Fire-tipped Spear was wrestled away from Bai Yunfei's hands and knocked to the side. And then, now with his hand freed up, the

Soul King slammed his right hand onto Bai Yunfei's chest!

His hand had been filled with elemental frost when it slammed against Bai Yunfei's chest. Even if Bai Yunfei didn't have his organs broken to pieces, he'd be rendered into an icicle anyways.

And because of Bai Yunfei's earlier usage of the +13 additional effect of the spear, Bai Yunfei's soulforce was already a quarter of what it normally was. He was left unable to defend himself with his Fire-tipped Spear being too far away to be brought close, so he could only grit his teeth and take in the stockpiled soulforce in the Violet Soul Ring into his body. He took a half step back with his left leg, drawing elemental fire to the Critical Glove on his left arm. All charged up, Bai Yunfei lashed out to punch at the Soul King's palm!

Such an action wasn't lost on the Soul King. A Soul Exalt who was trying to compete in strength against a mid-stage Soul King? It was a surprising way to die, but if Bai Yunfei wanted to do so, then so be it.

He sneered, the murderous intent in him growing even heavier. He could tell from the golden light shining from Bai Yunfei's left arm that the glove on it was a powerful soul armament, but that didn't dissuade the Soul King. The sneer on his face grew even more sinister as his eyes flashed dangerously, the white light around his right hand immediately turning into a baleful wisp of black energy!

The change had been instantaneous. The moment when both their hands clashed with one another, the black energy around the Soul King's right hand was transferred over to Bai Yunfei's left hand!

But at the same time, Bai Yunfei snarled, the soulforce in his body draining into the glove even more to make it shine unbelievably bright!

+12 Additional effect of the Critical Glove, activate!!

Consume soulforce to grant the ability to deal 400% damage with the next strike.

Cooldown of 5 minutes.

Eighty-one Fold Fist Force!!

“Boom!!!!”

There was an ear-deafening explosion as white, yellow, red, and a bit of black light flew into any and every direction, with both Bai Yunfei and the Soul King also being blown away from each other.

The only difference was that while the Soul King had been forced to stagger backwards, Bai Yunfei was....blown off his feet and through the air!

The Eighty-one Fold Fist Force with four times the strength was dreadful to even think about, but the +10 additional effect of the glove hadn't activated, so it wasn't the strongest it could possibly be. Though with just those two, the power behind the strike was more than enough to surprise even the Soul King. He wasn't fatally hurt, but his right hand was already wracked with pain as the force of the blow traveled up his arm and into his body in no time at all.

The Soul King couldn't believe his eyes, Bai Yunfei had surprised him once again. The power behind the Soul Exalt was far stronger than what any other Soul Exalt the Soul King knew was capable of.

But even with that shock, the Soul King was already certain that Bai Yunfei would be dead now that his right hand had connected....

.....

Likewise with Bai Yunfei, the shock he was experiencing was many times that of the soul King. The collision between the two soul cultivators had left Bai Yunfei in both shock and then fear as he watched himself be launched through the air without any control over his body.

He felt the black energy from the Soul King's hand the very instant he touched it. In the next moment, it was as if an

unbelievably cold frost had invaded his bones and froze his body. But the more startling thing was the black aura that was sapping away at his energy!

Black....as in elemental darkness!

As soon as it entered his body, Bai Yunfei felt the energy 'eat away' at his energy....and sapping away at his soulforce!

Even more dangerously, the foreign energy was withering whatever it touched throughout his body as it made its way towards....his soul!

Pain strong enough to tear at his soul started to erupt from him. Wide-eyed and shaking all over, it took all Bai Yunfei had not to cry out in pain!

This...this was.....

"The Soul Refining Palm!!" Bai Yunfei mentally howled those four words. This was the signature move of the Soul Refining School, the Soul Refining Palm!! He had felt it once before, but this time the strength behind it was many times stronger than before!

"Ah!!!!"

Flying a hundred meters away, Bai Yunfei let loose a roar as his soulforce started to go haywire in his body. Even the two fireseeds responsible for keeping Bai Yunfei in his Berserk Mode was starting to shake. The fires started to go out of control outside of his body, wrapping around his body to flicker, die out, and reignite over and over....

He couldn't even hold onto the Fire-tipped Spear, letting it drop to the ground as he clutched at his head with his hands. His eyes were turning red with blood as he continued to scream at the top of his lungs as the immense pain from the Soul Refining Palm ravaged his body.

This was a pain he had never experienced before! Words couldn't even describe the pain! It was as if his soul was being torn apart bit

by bit!!

Chapter 550: Retreat!

The ice-type Soul King nodded in self-satisfaction at the heart-wrenching scream Bai Yunfei was giving. No longer caring for the soon to be dead Bai Yunfei, the Soul King turned his attention to the doppelganger of Bai Yunfei with Zheng Kai.

But before he could stalk towards the two, the Soul King shifted twenty meters to the side. Several blades of wind came rushing through where he had been in just moments ago before striking down onto the ground one after another.

“Chirp!!”

The chirp that came from Xiao Qi had been furious at the Soul King. Flapping its wings, it sent another three Spatial Edges to take advantage of the Soul King when he moved out of the way.

Unfortunately for Xiao Qi, the Soul King didn’t at all feel threatened by it. He only needed a moment to shift away from the range of the Spatial Edges and be completely unharmed.

“A variant soulbeast with a space affinity? That’s a rare one....”

Sparing a quick glance at the bird, the Soul King quickly decided that Xiao Qi wasn’t an enemy to fear. With a wave of his hand, he materialized three icicles above his head and sent them flying towards Xiao Qi!

Not even caring to see if his attacks landed or not, the Soul King turned his attention back to Zheng Kai on a rooftop not too far away. There was a calculative glint in the Soul King’s eyes as he checked the time. Three minutes had already gone by since they first appeared and launched this attack. According to their original plans, they should’ve had Zheng Kai in their hands by now, but unexpected roadblocks came into the way. There wasn’t any time to delay, they had to kidnap Zheng Kai and get out of dodge quickly before the other Soul Kings in the Capital were alerted and came to

obstruct them. Escape would be near impossible then.

.....

The exchange of blows between Bai Yunfei and the Soul King had been almost too quick for Zheng Kai to watch. He had only stood there on the rooftop after one of Bai Yunfei's doppelgangers took him away from the battle. By the time he fully realized what was going on, there was an explosion of different elemental energies and Bai Yunfei's howling screams of anguish!!

Blanking in the face, Zheng Kai then cried out in fright after his friend, "Brother Bai!!"

He was already aware that the Soul King was looking at him, but without care for the man, Zheng Kai disappeared from where he was to teleport over to Bai Yunfei and caught him into his arms.

Protecting his body with a layer of elemental energy, Zheng Kai was able to ward off the fire around Bai Yunfei's body. Now in contact with him, Zheng Kai could now see the shape Bai Yunfei was in. His entire body was trembling heavily, his face was twisted in pain, and the screams of pain from him was already turning more hoarse like a soulbeast.

In his hurry to catch Bai Yunfei, Zheng Kai had temporarily forgotten about his surroundings. By the time he was aware again, a chilling air had already descended down onto him. Looking up, Zheng Kai was startled to see the ice-type Soul King just a short ten meters away. Frozen in place, all Zheng Kai could do was watch as the elder drew closer to grab onto his head!

Right as the hand was about to make contact, Zheng Kai bit down onto his tongue hard enough to draw blood. Having the pain jolt his body, Zheng Kai took Bai Yunfei and teleported away!

"Hmph!!"

The elder harrumphed in annoyance. Soul cultivators with an affinity for space were very annoying. They didn't have any 'speed'

to boast about, but their ability to teleport at will was very annoying to say the least. A soul cultivator who could wield spatial energy like that had the ability to teleport with even more proficiency than a Soul King who was able to understand spatial energy.

But even with that advantage, Zheng Kai's teleportation skills wasn't high enough for him to evade the Soul King's senses. They had only just blinked out from sight when the elder turned to the right. Just a hundred meters away in that direction, Zheng Kai appeared with Bai Yunfei in his arms.

Zheng Kai's face was extremely pale now, his eyes shining bitterly with exhaustion. Teleporting several times in quick succession was very tiring, and combined with his already weakened state, he was only able to take Bai Yunfei to the rooftop of a nearby three-storied building. He stumbled slightly when his feet touched solid ground again, but Bai Yunfei didn't slip much to Zheng Kai's relief. Bai Yunfei wasn't screaming anymore, and his eyes were starting to regain a bit of light back in them as a sign of him recovering.

But the danger in front of them was still there, and their situation wasn't any better than before. The Soul King was already coming straight for them!

The slightest bit of panic was in the eyes of the Soul King now. He could sense several large bursts of energy heading in his direction!

He had to make his escape!

Eyes shining furiously, the Soul King shot straight for Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai like a bolt of lightning. But then before he could get there, something from the corner of his eyes forced him to give up on that approach to leap backwards!

“Roarr!!”

A white figure leapt up in between him and the two Soul Exalts. Roaring loudly, the figure slashed at the Soul King with its claws, only to miss and swipe at the air.

The permafrost mastiff!

.....

The ordinary Soul Exalt would've died a long time ago if they were hit by the Soul Refining Palm of a Soul King. But....Bai Yunfei wasn't most Soul Exalts. He had gained a bit of experience with how to deal against the Soul Refining School, and while this Soul Refining Palm was stronger than usual, it wasn't enough to be fatal for him.

A warm light was pulsing outwards from the Soul Sentinel Scarf on his head. Transmitting its energy inside Bai Yunfei's body, it counteracted against the corrosive energy trying to tear apart the body and was slowly 'mending' Bai Yunfei's soul.

The pain was roughly half of what it used to be. Bai Yunfei's face was still worse for wear, but he was fully cognizant. He felt quite strange, the pain coming from his soul was a bit numbing almost, but there was an underlying throb of chaotic energy that made things hard to control....

With how rushed the situation was, Bai Yunfei didn't have enough time to consider what was going on inside his body. As soon as he was fully aware of what was going on outside of his body, Bai Yunfei saw that the Soul King was coming at him and Zheng Kai again. Sending a command through the Beast Taming Ring, Bai Yunfei had the permafrost mastiff break away from the earth-type Soul King to come and obstruct the ice-type Soul King instead.

Narrowing his eyes, the Soul King took a step back to withdraw a soul armament. It was a pure-white staff about two-thirds of a meter long. Holding it in his hands, the Soul King swung the staff at the mastiff!

“Bang!!!”

There was the sound of metal hitting flesh and then a pained roar before the permafrost mastiff was sent flying away in the direction of the Soul King’s swing. On the left side of the mastiff, a long red streak was already bruising on its white skin.

But to his amazement, the permafrost mastiff turned around in midair and kicked off into the opposite direction of its flight to block his forward path again as if it hadn’t even been hurt!

The annoyance the elder was feeling multiplied even more . This early-stage class seven soulbeast wasn’t strong enough to be a threat to his life, but it also wasn’t a weakling he could kill in a few seconds. He needed time to kill the permafrost mastiff, time that he didn’t have!

“Blast!!”

The Soul King cursed to himself as he debated his options for a brief two seconds. When he came to his decision, he barked out a command to his other Soul King, “We’re going!”

Not too far away, several specks of light were already quickly approaching while several other spaces in close proximity were warping in on itself--several Soul Kings were teleporting in! And from the looks of it....there were at least seven or eight Soul Kings!

As unwilling he was, the ice-type Soul King had to leave now before it was too late!

Chapter 551: Stop!!

The ice-type Soul King was already going through the motions to leave when he called out to his companion. Flying hundreds of kilometers in no time at all, he waved his right hand, opening up a ripple in space before he disappeared through it. He reappeared several kilometers away before repeating the process, and in no time at all, he was gone from sight....

The earth-type Soul King had only just managed to disentangle himself away from the permafrost mastiff. He originally planned to help out the other Soul King kidnap Zheng Kai, but then when he realized the danger they were in when order to retreat was given. Without hesitation, he took off after the ice-type Soul King as soon as he felt the incoming reinforcements approach.

He was only an early-stage Soul King and hadn't a proper grasp on spatial energy, meaning he was unable to teleport. Thus, he had to rely on his flying speed to get away. Even without teleportation, the Soul King would still be fast enough to escape before the Soul Kings could get here.

But there was one thing he hadn't accounted for. A good few meters away, Bai Yunfei's eyes widened as he realized what was going on. His anger reaching his breaking point, Bai Yunfei began to tremble where he stood. The two fireseeds in him began to expel even more elemental fire to his hands as he lifted a single finger to point at the escaping Soul King!

“Stop right now!!!!”

He roared, furious beyond belief as he ranted at the Soul King. But then something strange happened. There was a strange pulse of light from his Charm Bracelet along with the Soul Sentinel Scarf on top of his head!

In the next moment, the earth-type Soul King shivered, his entire body coming to a stop. The color drained away from his face as if

something unbelievable was happening to him, and a look of fright appeared onto it!

“Stop!!”

A voice like lightning cracked through his mind. It wasn’t a voice the Soul King heard with his ears but....a voice he heard from the depth of his soul!

It was like if some ‘man’ was yelling at him from within his mind. Howling with a voice that echoed through his soul with murderous fury. Then came the buzzing sounds, making the Soul King feel like his entire body was vibrating!

This ‘attack’ had appeared out from nowhere, and struck him dead on before he could even realize it!

But he was a Soul King, so it only took him a second to shake his head clear of whatever it was. Still, that one second was enough to leave his forehead wet with sweat and left him unable to think properly....

“Roar!!”

Beneath him, a soulbeast roared aloud, transmitting an attack towards the motionless Soul King and hitting him with it. Straight away, the Soul King realized just what kind of attack it was and paled!!

The permafrost mastiff was attacking his soul!!

This was the soul attack of a class seven soulbeast!

The Soul King had been prepared against a soul attack from the permafrost mastiff earlier. He’d be able to shrug it off and continue escaping. But then when he had suffered that strange ‘attack’ on his mind, his mental awareness had been shuttered for a second. But that second was long enough to press the Soul King into mortal danger!

He and the permafrost mastiff were both of equal strengths. But

when he was caught off guard and hit by the soul attack, his eyes went blank for a moment as his soulforce struggled to fight it off. With how much soulforce he had already used, the soul attack did enough damage to nearly knock him unconscious.

A white streak of light shot towards him from the corners of his eyes, forcing the Soul King to bring his right hand up to block in his daze. There was the sound of something being torn apart as the white light streaked by, and then, blood began to drip in large amounts.

Now fully free from the effects of the mastiff's soul attack, the very first thing the Soul King did when he was back to full awareness was let loose a loud scream of pain!

“Ah!!!!”

Three bloody streaks of mangled flesh hung from the right side of his abdomen, revealing just parts of his internal organs. And his right arm had its skin and muscle torn off, revealing the white bone underneath!

The permafrost mastiff reappeared thirty meters away from the Soul King its right claw dripping red with blood. Turning around in the skies, it let loose another roar towards the earth-type Soul King!

“Roar!!”

A two-meter sphere of elemental ice began to form just an inch in front of the mastiff's mouth. As soon as it fully formed, the mastiff shot the sphere towards the Soul King!

Terrified at what had just happened to him, the Soul King attempted to raise both his injured and uninjured hands. Blood dripped from his mouth at the attempt before a barrier of orange formed in front of him. The sphere of elemental ice smashed against it, exploding with an ear-deafening explosion and sending elemental energy everywhere.

But before the Soul King could relax, there was another source of energy coming from beneath him. Looking away, he was just in time to see two tremendous dragons fly up at him and attempt to swallow him whole!

The Dual Dragon Burst!

.....

On the ground below, Bai Yunfei's fists were both raised into the air, wisps of smoke trailing from them after he released the two dragons. The fire around his body was still furiously hot, just like the murderous light in his eyes.

Even with his considerable injuries, Bai Yunfei had released a Berserk Mode enhanced Dual Dragon Burst!

“Boom!!”

The two dragons exploded upon contact with the Soul King, turning the area into a giant maelstrom of fire as bright as the sun itself. Light illuminated the area for an entire kilometer around before weakening in intensity and colored the area in a red glow.

It was fortunate for the buildings below that the explosion happened seven to eight hundred meters above the sky, else they would've been blown apart by the explosion.

“Whoosh!”

Suddenly, an orange ball of light erupted from the center of the fiery maelstrom. A disheveled Soul King came flying out from the maelstrom as he tried to escape. But before he could even get a hundred meters higher into the skies, a second ball of elemental ice was shot at him!

“Crack....crack....”

There was a sound of impact as the Soul King was struck by the elemental ice. In the blink of an eye, the Soul King was frozen within a ball of ice!

Frozen inside, the Soul King's eyes started to betray a hint of despair and desperation! Orange light flooded out from the Soul King's body within the ice, and several crackling sounds later, the ball of ice was starting to crack apart.

But then....

“Chirp!!!!”

A furious chirp was heard as a prismatic bolt of light dove from the skies. Reaching the ball of ice, Xiao Qi flapped its wings to cut down the sphere!

The Spatial Edge!

“Whoosh! Whoosh! Whoosh....”

Several Spatial Edges flew forth from Xiao Qi's wings across the ball of ice before quickly disappearing into the night....

From within the ball of ice, the earth-type Soul King was....cut into pieces!!

Chapter 552: Escaped!!

Already tens of kilometers away, the ice-type Soul King had only just finished teleporting away again when he decided to look behind, only to be bewildered by what he saw.

Despite being so far away, the ice-type Soul King was still able to see through the pitch dark skies to see that his companion had....been killed!

“What....what happened?!”

The Soul King simply couldn't believe anything that happened within the last few minutes. He had to abort the mission and flee for safety, but he had distinctly warned his companion ahead of time to run away. Furthermore, his companion had moved to leave not too long after he did, so....how did he die in less than half a minute?!

“Blast!!”

He really wanted to go back and check just how this situation came to be, but the people chasing after him would definitely catch up to him then--several of the Soul Kings were already on the verge of catching up to him right now. So with a snort, he turned around and continued to flee....

.....

Zheng Kai stared blankly at the dissipating fiery maelstrom in front of him, and then the chunks of frozen ice as it fell to the ground. With each chunk that fell, moderate amounts of blood dripped down to the ground, though Zheng Kai found it hard to register that.

What....had just happened?

He could only vaguely remember Bai Yunfei yelling out loud and pointing a finger at the escaping Soul King. Then he remembered seeing the Soul King freeze up, and then the permafrost mastiff

chasing after it with a bolt of elemental ice.... After that, two brilliant flames flew out from Bai Yunfei to smash into the Soul King, and then the Soul King was frozen and shattered into pieces....

All those events had only taken a short few breaths in time, but even then, they were taking place far too fast for Zheng Kai to catch up.

If his eyes wasn't leading him astray, then....the earth-type Soul King had been killed just....like that?!

Zheng Kai found it a little hard to believe. The ones who had appeared out of nowhere to attack and force the two of them into such dire straits had been forced to run away while the other one was killed when he attempted to run?!

As he thought, Zheng Kai's mind wandered over to the words Bai Yunfei roared a second ago.

“Stop!!”

Things, as it were, was going exactly like Bai Yunfei demanded. The man had stopped, though the remaining pieces of his body were falling down to the ground rather than stopping in place...

He shook his head before looking to Bai Yunfei, only to see him drop the ground in exhaustion.

“Brother Bai!”

He cried out in fright. Flying over to him, Zheng Kai checked for Bai Yunfei's pulse, only to see that Bai Yunfei had only been knocked out. His face was pale with fatigue, and a black serpentine-like wisp of smoke was trailing out from under his skin. His eyes were closed shut in seeming pain as his soulforce circulated through his body. He was no longer holding onto the power of a late-stage Soul Exalt, and the elemental energy around his body was also weakened now that Bai Yunfei wasn't producing any more of it.

“Whoosh....”

Four separate noise of people descending down from the skies was heard as Soul Kings began to drop in onto the place, looking around the area before finally to the two soul cultivators remaining there.

“Xiao Zheng, what happened?”

A voice spoke out from Zheng Kai’s side. Recognizing that voice, he spun around to see a purple-robed young man appear nearby. “Brother!!”

This young man was Zheng Kai’s older brother and the eldest son of the head of the Zheng, Zheng Cheng.

Zheng Cheng had a grim expression on his face as he registered the hole in his younger brother’s wrist, “What happened here?”

“I’m....I’m not very sure, we were just suddenly attacked....” Zheng Kai hurried to explain, “Brother! Please check up on brother Bai, he was hit by the ice-type Soul King and is severely hurt!”

Zheng Cheng raised an eyebrow at that before finally turning to look at Bai Yunfei. The expression on his face hardened a bit at Bai Yunfei’s state. He moved to press his right hand against Bai Yunfei’s shoulder, but the moment his hand touched, Zheng Cheng brought his hand back as if zapped by lightning. At the same time, Bai Yunfei uttered a faint groan of pain.

“Is this....elemental darkness?!” Zheng Cheng hissed in surprise, his mind racing to think of the possibilities. “No! This isn’t ordinary elemental darkness, this is....the Soul Refining Palm of the Soul Refining School!!”

He was only here to check up on Bai Yunfei’s condition, but the diagnosis he made had been said aloud accidentally, prompting the other Soul Kings to take notice of what was said.

“What?! The Soul Refining School?!” Zheng Kai gasped, “But....but how! Brother, please save brother Bai! What do we have

to do to treat his wounds?"

Zheng Cheng grew silent for a moment to think of how to respond, "We can't treat him here, we have to take him home and ask grandfather for assistance!!"

Knowing how important Bai Yunfei was, Zheng Cheng couldn't simply ignore him to fend for himself. The wounds Bai Yunfei had weren't light by any means, but Zheng Cheng didn't have any method of treatment for him, and his father would most likely not either. That left only grandfather.....

Zheng Cheng turned his head towards the gray-robed elder behind me, "Uncle Qin, could I rely on you to take care of matters here? Coordinate with the Capital guards to investigate the place. Pay attention to anything that might lead to whom those people were."

The elder nodded his head, "Rest assured, young master, I will do my best here."

.....

Zheng manor. The western courtyards where Bai Yunfei's room was.

Still unconscious, Bai Yunfei was laid on top of his own bed, though his face didn't look comforted at all. It was still twisted in pain and drenched with sweat. His face was equally parts pale and equally red, though black smoke would occasionally rise up from him.

Five people stood in front of his bed. Fortunately, the room was large enough to accommodate them all.

The one pacing anxiously around the perimeter of the room was Zheng Kai, and the one next to him was his brother Zheng Cheng. The two males in front of them looked to be in their forties, meaning one of them had to be their father and head of the Zheng, Zheng Shiqiu. The other male was a tawny middle-aged man and

brother to the head of the house.

In front of them four was a white-haired elder who was peering down at Bai Yunfei carefully. He was the previous head of the Zheng and Zheng Kai's grandfather, Zheng Tianya.

In the corner of the room, the permafrost mastiff laid there weakly on the ground, white light surrounding its body as it tried to heal the nasty-looking wound on its fur. To the side, a small blue-eyes wyrm was currently biting onto the Fire-tipped Spear without letting anyone close to it, its eyes filled with humiliation. During the battle, the wyrm had been the only one trapped by the enemies and rendered essentially useless--this was something the wyrm did not like.

As for Xiao Qi, the bird was on the rafters of the roof to stare down at Bai Yunfei, its eyes filled with concern and sadness....

The room was extremely silent. Zheng Tianya stood in front of Bai Yunfei's bed for a moment longer before finally drawing his right hand back away from Bai Yunfei's shoulder to stand back up.

"Grandfather, how is brother Bai doing? Is he in danger?" Zheng Kai immediately leapt at the chance for more knowledge, pleading with his grandfather for information.

A look of grim concern was on Zheng Tianya's face when he did, "Not to worry, he's not in any mortal danger. The strength behind the Soul Refining Palm was major and should've killed Bai Yunfei by all rights considering. But this is an extremely strange situation, his regeneration rate isn't any slower than an early-stage Soul King...."

He sighed after that. "But nonetheless, recovering from such an injury won't be simple. His soul was damaged. Even after he wakes up, Bai Yunfei will be impacted by such an injury, and that'll be the troublesome part for him...."

Chapter 553: Recuperating

“Troublesome? How will it be troublesome for him?” Zheng Kai pipped up with concern.

Zheng Tianya shook his head, “It is difficult to say. He might see a decrease in his strength, feel weakened for a long amount of time, or at the very least, be prone to temperament changes due to his injured soul....”

“Temperament changes?? What does that mean?”

“He’ll find it difficult to control his emotions. Since his soul was harmed, his control has weakened. But this is only a trivial problem that’ll clear up with time.”

With his grandfather saying it wasn’t serious, Zheng Kai sighed in relief. He had faith in his grandfather’s words, and it didn’t seem like Bai Yunfei was in any danger anyways. Now that he was safe, it was as though a boulder had been lifted from Zheng Kai’s shoulders.

“Well....when will he wake up then?” Zheng Kai asked. As of right now, it looked like Bai Yunfei was experiencing a nightmare of sorts.

“That is hard to say as well,” Zheng Tianya answered, “But I would wager five to six days. With the Soul Refining Palm afflicted, Bai Yunfei’s body cannot accept the soulforce of anyone else, so I was unable to make a detailed diagnosis on his body. I can only say that his rate of recovery is better than most, perhaps due to how he trains. But once he wakes up, he should be fine for the most part.”

“Five or six days....” Zheng Kai muttered before facing the rest of the crowd, “Grandfather, father, uncle, and brother....I hope that you’ll allow me to use several of the medicines we have in our treasury. I was the target of the ambush, and if not for brother Bai,

I would've been in great danger....”

Zhen Tianya smiled. “But of course. He is the disciple of Zi Jin, him coming across trouble is a dereliction of duty when he is a guest of the Zheng. Pick out the right medicines when you head to the treasury and see to that Bai Yunfei recovers.”

“Thank you, grandfather!”

“Very well. We should let him rest in peace.” Zheng Tianya nodded, his face growing serious. “We will head to the main halls. Xiao Zheng, tell us everything that happened as detailed as you can recall. The ones who tried kidnapping you today may very well be companions to the group from before. Any group that can afford to send two Soul Kings and launch a kidnapping attempt in the Capital of all places is by no means a weak faction, especially if the Soul Refining School is involved....Say everything that you remember, and if there are any clues, your brother and uncle will go investigate.”

With instructions of their own, everyone walked out from Bai Yunfei’s room to do what they were told.

Zheng Kai came back a while later, several rare medicines in his hand to apply to Bai Yunfei before he left again.

.....

Very little had changed in Bai Yunfei’s status over the first day. His face was still contorted with pain and his eyebrows locked together as if to repeat that fact.

The second day went by, this time with a more noticeable change. Whether it was the medicines Zheng Kai was administering, or by Bai Yunfei’s own strength, his face was looking much healthier. The wrinkles on his face was less pronounced and his face was gradually turning back to its normal expression.

Much to the surprise of the Zheng, Bai Yunfei woke up on the

third day, a time nearly half of what Zheng Tianya predicted.

He had been very weak when he woke up. Unable to even move around much, Bai Yunfei had Zheng Tianya come around to diagnosis him before being told to stay in bed and recuperate.

Bai Yunfei hadn't expected for the very first encounter he'd have with the elders of the Zheng to be like this....

It was on the fourth day that Zheng Kai walked into Bai Yunfei's room to see Bai Yunfei sitting crossed-legged on his bed.

"Eh? Brother Bai, you can get up now?!" Zheng Kai rushed to his side at once, "How are you feeling? Feeling sore anywhere? Do you want me to call my grandfather to check up on you?"

"No need, I'm fine." Bai Yunfei waved his hand. He didn't want to bother anyone. "I can feel myself recovering pretty fast, so don't worry. I'm sure it won't be long until I fully recover."

"Really? That's good then...."

He pulled up a stool to sit down on, "Brother Bai....I....really got you into a fine mess this time. Thank the heavens you're alright, I'd never be able to live it down if you weren't."

"Haha, don't be like that. We're friends, aren't we? Sharing good times and bad times should be expected. I'm alright now anyways, so don't feel guilty." Bai Yunfei smiled, though a sliver of suspicion crossed his mind.

Was that person really after Zheng Kai?

"Alright! Since you said you're fine, then I won't say otherwise. We are brothers! Brothers that'll share good times and bad times!" Zheng Kai pounded a fist to his chest solemnly.

Bai Yunfei smiled and nodded his head. "How long was I out for?"

"Three days. Grandfather had said that he expected you to be out for five or six days almost, but your recovery is really abnormal."

“Three days....” Bai Yunfei mused, “What happened in those three days? And the academy, do they....”

“Don’t worry, the academy already knows what happened. The chairman actually came to see you yesterday when you were still out. He’s postponed your classes until further notice so you can take it easy and relax. He’s willing to push it back even more if you’re not feeling back to normal, so don’t worry thinking about it.”

“I see. I feel relieved then.” Bai Yunfei nodded. “And what about those two men?” He asked, “Have....have any clues been found yet? That ice-type Soul King was from the Soul Refining School.”

“Yes, we know of his affiliation with the school, but....just like last time, we don’t have any other clues.”

Bai Yunfei grew silent, his eyebrows knitted together as if thinking about something.

“Ah, right. Brother Bai, this is for you.” Zheng Kai handed him a space ring. “It’s the space ring of that earth-type Soul King. We’ve already looked through it for clues, but found nothing. There’s a few soulgems and soul armaments though.”

“For me? What for?” Bai Yunfei asked in confusion, “Wait, hold on. The earth-type Soul King? What happened to him?”

“Eh?” Zheng Kai blinked, his eyes widening by a fraction, “Do you not remember what happened?”

Bai Yunfei grew even more curious, “Remembered what?”

“.....” Zheng Kai was speechless for a moment. “Right before that earth-type Soul King left, he was killed because of what you did...”

“What I did!?” Bai Yunfei cried, but he slapped his head as if a memory just occurred to him. “I remember after I got hit by the Soul Refining Palm, I couldn’t think very well. I had the mastiff block the ice-type Soul King before he left. And when they were about to leave, I remember wanting one of them to stop, but....”

“Exactly. When you wanted that earth-type Soul King to stop, he did exactly that. I’m not sure how you did it, but your mastiff and Xiao Qi killed him right afterwards.”

“Is that right?” Bai Yunfei shook his head as he tried to recall the memories of that night, “I think I lost control of myself during that moment....”

“Probably because of the wounds you got during the battle. Don’t try to think about it, it’s not very important. Just focus on recuperating, we can talk later about that.”

Taking the space ring from Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei dipped his head. “I’ll do as you say, brother Zheng. But if in the future you come across any clues relating to the Soul Refining School, please inform me.”

“Why?” Zheng Kai was curious, “Did something happen between you and them?”

“A grudge.” Bai Yunfei replied.

Surprised, Zheng Kai acquiesced to the request. “That works. Once my uncle and the others comes back, I’ll make sure to find out what they know.”

He rose out from his seat, “Then I’ll leave you to recuperate, brother Bai. Be sure to call upon the servants if you need something.”

Bai Yunfei nodded.

After Zheng Kai left, Bai Yunfei grew silent for a very long time as he thought to himself. Ultimately shaking his head, Bai Yunfei decided not to think about those things and focus on healing once again....

Chapter 554: Ruminations

Because of when Bai Yunfei's fist clashed with the ice-type Soul King, a sliver of elemental ice had crept inside Bai Yunfei's body as well, leaving his muscles and flesh to be injured somewhat. Those wounds were already healed back to normal levels so he could move normally, but the one thing that hadn't yet fully healed was....his soul.

His soul was damaged.

He hadn't really thought about it before, but now the consequences of it was very clear to him.

He felt empty. As if something in his body was missing. Something invisible, but there.

If he had to put the situation into material description, Bai Yunfei would say that there was a 'gap' in his soul. When he was hit with the Soul Refining Palm, his soul had been torn apart. But he healed sufficiently enough so that the torn parts of the soul could be mended back together. But....there was still a small sliver of a gap missing.

With that gap missing, Bai Yunfei felt confident that it'd mend over and be back to normal. But that would need time, and Bai Yunfei wasn't confident about how long that'd take.

The more curious thing about this situation was that Bai Yunfei couldn't tell the difference now that there was a 'gap' in his soul. He was still as strong as a mid-stage Soul Exalt, his body was operating like normal, and aside from the feeling of having a part of his soul missing, Bai Yunfei didn't know what else there was to his body that was different.

Of course, the feeling of weakness was natural after being hit with an attack to the soul. Like if a commoner were to overexert their body, they'd need some time to themselves to rest and go

back to normal.

Would the effects of the Soul Refining Palm be dismissed so easily with time just like that though?

Bai Yunfei touched at the Soul Sentinel Scarf on his head, “It’s all thanks to you,” he muttered in thanks. “If not for you, I definitely wouldn’t be as good as I feel now.....”

It was because of the Soul Sentinel Scarf that Bai Yunfei was able to shrug off the dangers of the two soul attacks from the Soul Kings. And after being hit by the Soul Refining Palm, the second effect of the Soul Sentinel Scarf had activated to protect him.

Equipment Effect 2: 200% Increase in healing from damage done to the soul.

The glow of light from the Soul Sentinel Scarf had been comforting. As if like some sort of miracle cure, the light flooded Bai Yunfei’s soul, allowing it to heal faster than normal.

“I guess the only ones to ‘benefit’ this time were the two fireseed essences....” Bai Yunfei thought. Right now in his body, the fireseeds were still circling around one another rhythmically. Each one pulsed a wave of gentle elemental fire along with the flashes of energy from the Soul Sentinel Scarf, warming his soul.

Soulforce and elemental energy. The two were not identical, but they complement one another. Soulforce can control elemental energy, and elemental energy could supplement soulforce.

Neither of the two fireseeds had left Bai Yunfei’s body ever since that battle three days ago!

This was a completely unprecedented event. The fireseeds would always remain in his body whenever he practiced the Dual Flame Arts, but only for that duration. After the battle was over, one of the fireseeds would usually come back out. But this time, both of them had remained where they were!

Even now, neither of the fireseeds were doing anything that

would've let Bai Yunfei suffer from the backlash. It was as if the two had 'mutually agreed' that until Bai Yunfei was fully recovered, they'd work together to aid Bai Yunfei in his recovery.

It was his opinion that the two fireseeds underwent a 'ceasefire' as soon as his soul was attacked. If not that, then the fireseeds had suffered as well when his soul was attacked and lacked the energy to fight one another. As soon as his soul healed then, the two fireseeds would most likely go back to fighting one another.

But still, there was one thing that was known after this experience. The two fireseeds had grown closer now, and their effects were a lot easier to tell now whether in fighting one another or aiding Bai Yunfei's recovery.....

.....

Now that he was slowly letting his weakened soul heal, Bai Yunfei decided to think about the memories of what happened during the battle.

If he thought about it, the two Soul Kings were most likely after Zheng Kai since they never once tried to kill him and instead looked more like they were trying to grab him. But when Bai Yunfei thought about it a little more, he himself had been nothing more but an innocent bystander caught in the crossfire.

Or perhaps. Bai Yunfei thought. Their goal was indeed to capture Zheng Kai and.....to kill him.

He had already killed several men from the Soul Refining School recently. In his mind, he was already an enemy of the Soul Refining School. He was careful when killing any soul refiners, though. Like when he saved the blue-eyes wyrm, Bai Yunfei made sure to change his appearance after that so no one would know who he was.

But nothing was sure in this world. It might've been better to say that there was nothing in this world that could be said to be

guaranteed.....

“The Soul Refining School....why is it that there’s always one of them involved no matter where I go. What kind of group are they....” Bai Yunfei muttered. “If it happens once, it’ll happen again. They weren’t successful in their goals this time, but they’ll definitely try again with a more careful plan.

“In the end....I’m still not strong enough!” Bai Yunfei lamented, his fists tightening in his exasperation. “When will the time come when I’m strong enough to no longer fear them?”

He could say that he was able to kill two Soul Kings as of today, but at the same time, he hadn’t used his own strength to kill those two. He needed the permafrost mastiff to help kill the second Soul King, and even then, it was a cowardly tactic. In the end, he wanted to become even stronger. If he was stronger, he’d be able to fight even those on the higher realms of strength and fear no enemy or assassination plot.

Under the face of true strength, no other factor would be able to prevail. Any underhanded tactics would always fail. Unfortunately for Bai Yunfei, true strength was something that was still extremely far away from him....

.....

Zheng Kai had told him that the academy had postponed classes for him by a week already. This meant he had three more days until he could decide to postpone again or go teach again. By this day, Bai Yunfei already felt more or less back to normal, and the damage to his soul would probably heal up by the week’s end. He only just wished that he’d be able to make it to class. He didn’t want to postpone it.

Bai Yunfei didn’t leave his room in the next few days as he tried to heal. All the while, he also tried to think about what he should teach next.

Aside from healing and thinking of his lesson plan, the three other soulbeasts of his were also in a state of 'secluded' meditation.

Because of the wounds it sustained from the battle with the Soul Kings, the permafrost mastiff required a decent amount of time in order to heal from it.

As for Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm, the two of them were trying to hone their minds and train--the last battle had weighed heavily on them, especially the blue-eyes wyrm. Having been frozen during the battle had been a heavy blow to the wyrm. It wanted to get even stronger so that it wouldn't suffer this humiliation again.

But the both of them were at the peak late-stage class six level. To improve any more would be insanely difficult, and even after killing a Soul King, Xiao Qi wouldn't have enough to breakthrough. That didn't mean to say it had learned nothing from the battle, Xiao Qi did in fact have a decent amount of experience to go over.

Three days went by in a blur, and soon enough, it was the day for Bai Yunfei to return to class....

Chapter 555: The Lightning-type Ye Ming

Early morning in Tianhun Academy.

The first rays of sunshine was beginning to shine down on the campus grounds. A young man dressed in plain gray robes walked down the streets of the academy. Sometimes, he'd turn his head left and right to smile at the younger students walking around him.

He was already in the fifth year section but made no attempt to stop and instead ventured deeper to the sixth year section.

This young man was Bai Yunfei.

At a glance, Bai Yunfei was back to normal. Other than the lukewarm glow of as if he was still recovering, there didn't seem to be anything else that was wrong with him.

His recovery had been extremely quick. The Soul Sentinel Scarf on his head paired with the Dual Flame Art had been surprisingly effective for Bai Yunfei's treatment. In barely any time at all, Bai Yunfei went from having the glow of death on him to looking almost perfectly healthy.

Today was the promised date of classes. He didn't want to prolong his stay any longer and walked with Zheng Kai to the academy so he could go and teach.

The reason why he was alone now was because of Zheng Kai suddenly finding the need to have a 'heart to heart' talk with someone from the fifth years, thus why he disappeared like a wisp of smoke.

Fortunately, Bai Yunfei remembered the way to his class and trodded slowly there himself.

He, of course, was with Xiao Qi. The bird was perched on his shoulder while the blue-eyes wyrm and permafrost mastiff followed from behind. Because of the dangers he faced last time,

Bai Yunfei decided it best to have his soulbeasts with him to ensure his safety.

In the eyes of the other soul cultivators, only the blue-eyes wyrm looked like a proper soulbeast. Xiao Qi and the permafrost mastiff looked more like regular animal pets. Only a few bothered to stop and think about what kind of person would bring out so many animals, but none of them cared that much.

Very few people also knew that this young-looking man was also the highly gossiped about instructor for the crafting class.

.....

The people within the class six area was significantly lesser than those in the previous areas. One of the nearby buildings had a wide mixture of soulforce radiating it—presumably from the students currently in a lesson in there—but that made Bai Yunfei curious. What kind of classes took place in this academy? He was especially curious about the sixth year courses. The students were all Soul Exalts, what could they possibly learn?

He would ask later, Bai Yunfei decided. Perhaps he'd be able to take a look.

Walking a short distance longer, Bai Yunfei finally reached the area designated for his crafting class. There were already a few sources of soulforce waiting there, presumably his students. Somehow, they were there even earlier than he was.

Bai Yunfei was now in front of the building where his classes took place. But before he could walk in, someone called out to him.

“Instructor Bai, one moment please.”

Surprised by this sudden voice, Bai Yunfei paused mid-step and turned to look.

Right there a few meters away to his right stood a young man. He had been leaned up against the wall before Bai Yunfei appeared and was now walking towards him.

He looked like he was around twenty-five or twenty six. He wore a dark purple robe with his long hair tied up behind him. His eyebrows were sharp just like his eyes. He stood tall, but the look on his face gave the impression of him being a rather indifferent person, or at least, a proud but aloof person.

Author Note: It's hard to tell the actual physical age of a soul cultivator who are in between the ages of 25-35. I know I say this all the time, but I hope you all don't find it monotonous.

Bai Yunfei had never met such a person before, so he was by all rights confused on who this person was. “Do you have business with me?”

Striding up to Bai Yunfei, the young man had a strange look on his face, as if he wanted to say something but found it difficult to speak it out loud. He exhaled slowly, shaking his head before finally mustering up some courage. “I am a sixth year student from class one of the lightning course. My name is Ye Ming.”

“Yes, nice to meet you.” Bai Yunfei nodded politely. “Is there something I can do for you?”

The other man hesitated for two seconds before retrieving a small book over a dozen pages in length. “I wanted to give this to you, instructor Bai.”

“This?” Bai Yunfei grew even more curious, “What is it?”

“My experiences and insights from your crafting lesson two weeks ago. I wrote them down. If you could please look over them, instructor Bai.”

“Insights?” It took a moment for Bai Yunfei to realize. This had been the ‘homework’ he gave his students two weeks ago. He wanted them to write down whatever insights they had when they watched him craft and was to collect it on their next class.

But this person was from the lightning section. He wasn't a student of Bai Yunfei, so that meant he must've watched Bai

Yunfei as one of the audience. But what business had he doing this ‘homework’?

Bai Yunfei took the book into his hands, “Why are you giving this to me?”

It took half a second this time for Ye Ming to reply, “I wish to join the crafting class.” He spoke bluntly.

“Pardon?” Bai Yunfei thought he had heard wrong this time. “What did you just say?”

“Instructor Bai, I wish to join the crafting class and learn how to craft.” Ye Ming repeated firmly.

“You want to join my class? But....are you not a lightning-type soul cultivator? The art of crafting requires an affinity for fire, you’re....”

Before Bai Yunfei finished speaking, Ye Ming’s eyes flashed once with a red tint of light. Elemental fire surrounded his body, a ring of elemental fire lighting up his body just faintly.

“A dual affinity?!” Bai Yunfei sucked in a sharp breath when he realized what that meant. But....

“As surprising as it is that you have a dual affinity for lightning and fire, are you still not focused primarily in the path of elemental lightning?” Bai Yunfei asked. “You’re already a Soul Exalt in terms of elemental lightning, but your elemental fire manipulation surely can’t be any higher than a late-stage Soul Ancestor. If you were to focus on the art of crafting, your future path would see a huge roadblock. The art of crafting cannot have another element be balanced equally with it. I suggest that you continue focusing on your current path. You....are not suitable to learn the art of crafting.”

A crestfallen look fell onto Ye Ming’s face, but his eyes still held resistance. “I still wish to learn. Instructor Bai, please help me.”

“I....” He didn’t know what to say. He hadn’t ever come across

such a person like this before. It was praiseworthy how determined Ye Ming was, but his situation was regrettable. Having a focus on elemental lightning was unsuitable for learning how to craft. Bai Yunfei shook his head. “It’s not that I’m unwilling to teach, but you are truly unsuited to learning it. You should focus on your current path.”

Ye Ming was silent, his head dipped low in resignation and his eyes flickering with light.

A moment later, he straightened back up to look at Bai Yunfei as determined as ever. “If instructor Bai could first look over my insights in the meanwhile. I will come back for your next class. At that time, I hope instructor Bai will change his mind and allow me to join.”

Any sign of pride he might’ve had was gone now as he bowed to Bai Yunfei before leaving the area.

Bai Yunfei could only watch him go with a shake of his head. His hand still holding onto the book given to him, Bai Yunfei walked into the building.

As soon as he was inside, his eyes came across a spacious room about a kilometer in area. At the center, seven students were standing there, some of them looking around in boredom.

But that changed when Bai Yunfei walked in. All eyes immediately flew over to him, several of the students calling out in greeting to him and others walking on over.

“They really are students of the crafting class.” Bai Yunfei smiled, his own feet increasing in speed as he met with them halfway....

Chapter 556: The Students of the Crafting Class

Seven students. Four males and three females, all of them fairly young. They had all initially been standing on top of the stone platform, but when Bai Yunfei came, they started to gather around him.

Drawing closer to them, Bai Yunfei noticed that several of the students were actually older in age than he was, making him feel slightly awkward and nervous around them. As a teacher, he was undoubtedly less experienced in the way of the world than several of his students. He couldn't afford to slip up either, as an instructor required having dignity. For that reason, Bai Yunfei forewent shaving for two days so that he could look slightly older than he did. With all that he experienced so far in the world, his body was appropriately built and mature. And it was this external experience that Bai Yunfei felt himself having a huge difference in over the soul cultivators in the academy.

“Good morning, students.” Bai Yunfei nodded to the students in greeting.

“Good morning, instructor Bai.”

“This student pays his respects to instructor Bai.”

“Instructor Bai...”

“.....”

One by one, the students called out their varying greetings to him with a bow.

There was of course, one exception. The granddaughter, Mo Wanxia. The hostility in her eyes today was a great deal less than before, but the dislike she had for him was still palpable. With narrowed eyes, a crinkled nose, and a slight harrumph, she gave a reluctant bow to him like the other students.

Bai Yunfei felt himself curious with her attitude towards him.

Hadn't it been her who caused so much trouble for him? So why was she acting like it was the other way around?

In any case, the students were all closer to him now, allowing Bai Yunfei a better look at each of his students. They were all handsome men and pretty women, and though their exact ages weren't clear, the oldest didn't look any older than twenty-eight and the youngest just barely twenty. Their strengths differed from a little mid-stage Soul Ancestor to Mo Wanxia who was a late-stage Soul Exalt.

Bai Yunfei stood there, a strange feeling suddenly occurring to him. These people would be his students from now on?

"Haha, with all things considered, today shall be our first official class. But before that, I'd like to get to know each one of you." Bai Yunfei tried to act as 'dignified as a teacher' as he possibly could. "Why don't you all introduce yourselves to me, even if by just a little bit. We can become more acquainted in time."

His eye wandered over to Mo Wanxia, "You don't need to introduce yourself, Mo Wanxia. I recognize you. Granddaughter of the chairman and late-stage Soul Exalt. Admirable. I hope that you will achieve just as great of things in my class."

"Hmph! You don't look any older than I am, where do you get off talking like an old man, how pretentious!" Mo Wanxia wanted to say. If not for her grandfather, she wouldn't have joined the crafting class. She wasn't any weaker than Bai Yunfei was and was very unwilling to accept him as her instructor. But she was already clear that should she and Bai Yunfei fight, she wouldn't be a match for him.

Bai Yunfei had after all defeated the peak late-stage Soul Exalt Zhou Yu, and that fight was more than enough to emphasize just how strong he was in comparison to her.

Completely disregarding the bitter look on her face, Bai Yunfei turned to the younger girl next to her. “Let’s start with you then.”

“Oh—yes, well....” She straightened herself up, revealing her height to be of about 1.65 meters around with two pigtails on her head. Looking slightly uneasy, she began, “I...I’m Fang Yong. Early-stage Soul Exalt and previous sixth year student in class one of the fire section. It’s nice to meet you, instructor Bai.”

Bai Yunfei smiled and nodded before turning to the other girl besides her.

This girl looked quite younger than the two before her—perhaps just barely twenty—had snowy-white skin and hair that reached down to her waist. With a cute bow to Bai Yunfei, she introduced herself, “It’s nice to meet you, instructor Bai. I’m Fang Tianmeng. Mid-stage Soul Ancestor. Previous fifth year student in class four of the fire section.”

Up next were the four males, the oldest one of them giving a scholarly smile when it was his turn. “My name is Ouyang Yuyun.” His voice was charismatically magnetic, “Mid-stage Soul Exalt and previous sixth year student of class three of the fire section. I’ve heard of your name before, instructor Bai, please instruct us well.”

“Hehe, my turn my turn.” A younger boy next to him piped up straight away. He wore black robes and looked like he was twenty-one or twenty-two at most. His hair was slightly long and his bangs covered up his right eye almost. Contrary to his frail physique, his eyes shined brightly with vivacious spirit. It only took one glance to know that this was a lively male.

“I’m Mo Chen, a mid-stage Soul Ancestor. Previous fifth year of class five. I’ve always admired instructor Bai, that battle you had with instructor Zhou Yu and then the crafting segment was super cool!! I hope that one day, I’ll become as amazing as instructor Bai is!”

“Haha, I’m sure you can become even stronger as long as you

work hard.”

The sixth student to speak was a robust young man dressed in white. Smiling kindly towards his classmates and Bai Yunfei, he spoke, “My name is Dongfang Yuhui. Mid-stage Soul Exalt and previous sixth year student of class four.”

Nodding, Bai Yunfei turned to the last one. He wore purple robes and had long hair, though his face was completely blank with emotions. He had been completely silent until it was his turn, speaking only a few impassive words to Bai Yunfei. “Zhang Zhifeng. Peak late-stage Soul Exalt.”

He was a man of few words. He said those few words and then nothing more.

.....

And now that he was done with the introductions, Bai Yunfei now had a decent grasp on each of the seven students and their personalities. Nodding, he spoke, “Very well. Now that we all know each other now, I hope that we’ll get along with each other as I teach the art of crafting to you all.”

“Ah,” Bai Yunfei suddenly remembered, “Before I forget, everyone please take out your assigned ‘work’ and hand them to me.”

Clearly prepared for this, each of the seven students took out pieces of paper from their space ring. Some of them had over ten pages, some only a few, but they all handed their portion over to Bai Yunfei.

Now that Bai Yunfei had the ‘homework’ all together, Bai Yunfei spoke, “I’ll take a good look over them later. The insights you had over my crafting will be my first evaluations of you all.”

“Furthermore,” Bai Yunfei added on, “since this is my first assignment for you all, I will have a reward for the one I deem being the best.”

“Reward?!” This caught everyone’s attention.

It was Mo Chen who spoke up first, “What kind of reward, instructor Bai?”

“Haha, since this is the crafting class, of course it’ll be a soul armament. Hm....I can let you see it, I suppose. This will be the prize.”

His right hand shook once, retrieving a golden longsword that shined brilliantly in the light.

A sheen of sharp light exuded from the blade. Everyone was entranced by it; even the strongest one there, Mo Wanxia, couldn’t help but speak out in amazement, “This soul armament—is it a....heaven-tier....?”

“Correct. This is a low-heaven tier metal-type soul armament. This will be the first reward I will give.”

A heaven-tier soul armament as a reward!!

It had been upgraded to +10 beforehand and had a +10 additional effect of further increasing its attack, allowing it to be strong enough to be considered a heaven-tier. Although it wasn’t much in Bai Yunfei’s eyes, it was definitely quite something in the eyes of anyone else....

“Ah!! Instructor Bai, I suddenly just remembered I forgot to write some things down. Can I have my paper back, I’ll give it back as soon as I write them down!”

Mo Chen broke the silence as he pleaded with Bai Yunfei. The one who had written down the least amount of things had been him.

Bai Yunfei shook his head, “I cannot. Since I’ve collected them already, it will be a fair evaluation this way.”

He chuckled when he saw the mournful look on Mo Chen’s face. Putting away the sword and clapping his hands, Bai Yunfei spoke,

“We can start class for today then. I will be teaching you the most fundamental of things today, so let us go to a place more suitable to have class.”

Silent, everyone stared at Bai Yunfei. “Instructor Bai, aren’t we going to learn here?” Asked Fang Tianmeng.

“It’s unsuitable here. We’ll go to a different place to craft soul armaments.” Bai Yunfei shook his head again.

He turned around to walk out the building and to the left. Confused, the students followed suit.

Hurrying up next to Bai Yunfei, Mo Chen asked, “Instructor Bai, where are we going?”

Bai Yunfei pointed ahead, “To that mountain.”

“Behind? Why are we going there?!” Mo Chen’s eyes widened.

“To dig a hole!”

“.....”

Chapter 557: Dig a Hole!

A giant expanse of forest and mountain laid behind Tianhun Academy and a part of it inside the Capital.

The most noticeable thing about this area was the five hundred meter tall mountain peak that the students of Tianhun Academy called ‘Back Mountain’. The mountain was the only thing that separated Tianhun Academy from the wilderness beyond.

Both sides of the academy had actually forests, but those were very general types of forest while the wilderness behind the mountain was considered quite ‘special’.

That was because it had soulbeasts.

Soulbeasts that were ‘born and raised’ within a small expanse of land!!

They were there for students of Tianhun Academy to prepare on. It was the students who benefitted the most from this forest and mountain combination. Any student below the sixth year could come here, train, and get experience.

There weren’t many soulbeasts in this area either. The level and amount of soulbeasts were quite evenly distributed, and the ecosystem in this area was essentially self-sustaining.

In general, the class six soulbeasts were carefully handled by the academy, and not many flying capable soulbeasts were had here (For the sake of internal safety within the Capital). The perimeter of the forest had its watchers, and there were also people within the forest that watched over it.

There were legends that the strongest of the academy, such as the chairman or assistant chairman had their soulbeasts ‘stationed’ inside the area to watch over the other soulbeasts and let everyone live peaceful lives.

Even students coming to the mountains couldn’t kill soulbeasts

unless necessary.

People didn't come here to the mountains to train often. So for the most part, the mountains didn't have many people here, most of them being students from the younger years. Most of them were deathly afraid of this place, as it was one of the rumors that several of the younger year students once traveled up the mountain, only to be killed by a soulbeast.....

.....

Today was a special day, however. Eight figures traveled from the back of the academy all the way up to the mountain.

These eight were exceedingly quick. Every leap they made was at least ten meters traveled, scaling up the mountain with great speed. What should've took the normal person half a day to climb had instead taken less than a minute to reach the top.

These eight were Bai Yunfei and his students.

Bai Yunfei came to a stop at the very top of the mountain. It was a rather spacious mountain point with about fifty meters of area with a small platform of sorts already there that seemed to scale upwards like stairs to the highest point of the peak.

At the peak was another small area of thirty meters or so made from seemingly very durable stone.

Bai Yunfei looked around the area, pleased with what he was seeing.

One could see the entire academy and even farther beyond from above. From the buildings to the streets, Bai Yunfei could even see a magnificently large palace—the Imperial Palace where the Royal Family lived.

This point of the mountain was tall enough to have a layer of clouds and mist cover it. With the additional coverage of wind blowing here and there, the average person would've been unable to endure the cold temperatures. But for soul cultivators like Bai

Yunfei and his students, this type of weather wasn't anything much. In any case, this place would soon become a 'warm' place, and the clouds and mist would be expelled.

The students looked incredulously at Bai Yunfei, unsure of what he was thinking about. Mo Chen was the first to speak up, "Instructor Bai....what are we doing here?"

Bai Yunfei looked back to the students with a smile. "This is where we'll be having our classes from now on."

"What?!"

His words had a petrifying effect on them.

Could it really be? Classes here of all places?

None of the students could even respond to Bai Yunfei, stunned by his answer.

"Yes, this place will do. I'm quite pleased with it, class will be held here from now on." Bai Yunfei nodded. Since he was teaching the art of crafting, he had to pass on the customs of the Crafting School and sought out for a place to create a 'crafting hole' for the class.

But none of the students could believe it. With her eyes practically bulging out, Mo Wanxia declared, "Are you kidding?! We're going to have classes here? In the middle of nowhere?!"

Nodding almost as if it was to be expected that he should answer this way, Bai Yunfei replied, "This will be the crafting class' territory. The chairman has allowed me to choose anywhere I'd like for classes. I'll speak with him the next time about the arrangements. From now on, whether it's for classes or for training, it'll be done here."

"....."

When the students realized he wasn't joking, they all stared incredulously around the area as if trying to make sense of what

could be done here.

“Well then, let’s begin now. We can start class after we’re done.” Bai Yunfei clapped his hands before walking to the nearby cliff wall.

“Done with what?”

“Digging a hole, didn’t I say so?” Bai Yunfei quipped.

“.....”

Whilst everyone was still staring bemusedly at him, Bai Yunfei was already standing next to the wall, his hand touching at the stone to check its durability. Nodding, he gave a step back and then punched at the wall firmly.

“Bang!!”

There was a muffled boom and minor tremor in the ground as Bai Yunfei’s fist slammed against the wall. It hadn’t been very powerful, all things considered, but the stone in front of Bai Yunfei’s fist gave away to reveal a three meter deep ‘cave’.

“Ah? It’s that durable?” Bai Yunfei remarked in surprise. He hadn’t thought the mountain would be that firm. Staring at his own handiwork in displeasure, Bai Yunfei turned to Xiao Qi on his shoulder, “Xiao Qi, please help out.”

“Chirp chirp!!”

Chirping twice in confidence of itself, Xiao Qi flew into the air while Bai Yunfei stepped back. There was a glow of green light from the bird before it grew larger into the size of a large roc. Beating its wings once, Xiao Qi summoned a twister about several meters in diameter to strike exactly onto the area where Bai Yunfei hit. Dust and stone cracked away from the wall as the twister bore into the wall before trailing off.

Once all of the wind had cleared away, everyone could see that the hole in the wall was now a cave about five meters wide and at

least twenty meters deep.

Satisfied, Bai Yunfei petted Xiao Qi when it landed back on his shoulder, “Not bad, thank you.”

He turned back to the still mystified students behind him. “This will be our crafting cave from now on. Feel free to start making your own crafting cave.”

As if bewildered by this, the students looked at each other, unsure of what to do or think.

“Haha!! Interesting—I’ll go first then!! I’m going to choose the best spot!!”

Speaking up suddenly as if ‘enlightened’, Mo Chen leaped almost impishly at the chance to take part in this interesting activity. Charging forward to about ten meters away from Bai Yunfei’s cave, he swung his right arm around and around, charging up elemental fire with each revolution. And when his fist was entirely ablaze with elemental fire, he lashed out to give a furious punch!

“Boom!!!”

The resulting sound was quite loud, and the entire mountain top seemed to quake. Larger pieces of stone and dust flew through the air, revealing a surprised Mo Chen.

Right in front of him was a hole about four or five meters wide—a hole that went straight through the entire mountain!

Sunlight could be seen from the other side of the mountain, and also a faint breeze. Mo Chen had punched straight through the entire mountain!!

“Haha! My bad my bad! I used too much strength, instructor Bai....what should we do?” Mo Chen rubbed his head in embarrassment.

“....” Bai Yunfei quirked his lips, “I brought you all here to dig a hole, not blow parts of the mountain off. What do you think you

should do?"

"I...." Mo Chen flushed, his hand scratching his hair. "Oh!! I know an earth-type instructor, he's amazing! We can have him seal up the hole!!"

The realization that Bai Yunfei might be 'troubled' by his actions led to Mo Chen coming up with a method to undo the damages. And before Bai Yunfei could say anything, Mo Chen scampered off.

A little speechless by Mo Chen's actions, Bai Yunfei turned back to other students. "You should all get started, and keep in mind your strength. We don't want the mountain collapsing...."

"Yes...." Everyone replied. Now that they were given an example of what to do and what not to do, they all spread out to create their own 'hole'.

"You there! What are you doing?! Do you not know that entry to Back Mountain is limited?!"

An exasperated voice called out to the group, resulting everyone jumping where they stood. Turning around to look, they all saw a figure in black fly towards them to the mountain top.

Bai Yunfei raised an eyebrow; he hadn't felt this person approach them at all. And since this person wasn't using elemental energy as platforms to leap from, that meant this person was....a Soul King!!

Chapter 558: Unrivalled Swordsman

Bai Yunfei felt his heart skipped a beat, his body preparing for battle at the arrival of the Soul King. He exhaled slowly, his mind pointing out to him that this person was most likely not an enemy, with how he spoke before coming and did not have any signs of hostility to him.

The figure touched down not too far away from Bai Yunfei's group, and when Bai Yunfei had a good look at who the person was, he was taken aback....

This person was....quite weird.

He looked like a man in his forties and wore dirty gray robes—though Bai Yunfei would wager that the robes had once been white and was eventually turned gray with time. He wasn't tall and was a little more on the frail side. His hair, a grizzly white, was a mess behind his head. Compared to his rather large nose and pointy chin, the man's eyes were relatively small, though he tried his best to give everyone an angry look. The pensive light in his eyes only made him look quite strange though.

If Bai Yunfei had to describe this man's appearance with just one word, he'd have to say the man looked....wretched.

Especially wretched.

The type of man that one could probably see tricking kids out of their tanghulu from a corner somewhere, but he was a soul King.

Even more particular to this person was the 1.7 meter dark-blue longsword tied to his back.

The sword was practically longer than the man was tall. Tied to his back with a dirty black sash, the sword hilt loomed over his head while the tip of the sword was nearly poking the ground. In fact, the sword was a little lopsided when he landed, and his hand reached up to tightened the sash as if to adjust it.

It was strange, was it not? A soul cultivator should have a space ring or two, so there wasn't a point to having this sword being out in the open aside from just one reason alone: to show off.

Clearly, this sword was a magnificent one. Just from the looks alone, Bai Yunfei knew the sword was beyond extraordinary. It was a heaven-tier soul armament for sure, possibly a mid-heaven or even....a high-heaven tier one!

A Soul King showing off such a magnificent sword like this was a little...annoying.

.....

While everyone was looking at him in shock, the man in turn looked over at everyone else. His eyes first landed upon Bai Yunfei before sweeping over to the permafrost mastiff with a suspicious glint.

“Eh? This soulbeast is a class se—”

“Uncle Wu!! What are you doing here?”

Suddenly, a surprised voice spoke out—it was Mo Wanxia who had spoken to this middle-aged man.

Tearing his eyes away from the mastiff to look at Mo Wanxia, the man looked surprised, “Oh? It’s you, little Mo?! What are you doing here?”

His eyes wandered up and down Mo Wanxia a little more, “Ah, yes. Only a year it has been, but you’ve grown a great deal prettier. And you’ve matured greatly, especially in the chest area, not bad....”

“.....”

His words had brought the other people listening to him to nearly do a faceplant, their eyes staring strangely at this vulgar man.

“Uncle Wu—you!!” A streak of red flashed across Mo Wanxia’s

face, “You’re supposed to be dignified as an elderly person, why can’t you act your age!?”

Scratching at his frazzled hair, the man laughed, “How am I not dignified? You’re always so uptight, little Mo. Do you not like being called pretty? I remember how mischevious you were when you were young. You’d climb up onto my neck and wet yourself! And now look at you all grown up!!”

“.....”

The crowd barely held their laughters in.

Practically red like a tomato, Mo Wanxia’s eyes looked like they were about to spit fire almost. And just ever so slightly, Bai Yunfei felt a hint of murderous intent rise from her....

“Cough cough!!” Realizing that she was about to blow up with anger, Bai Yunfei decided to act like a teacher and ‘mediate’. Coughing twice, he bowed to the elderly man, “Might I ask who this senior is....?”

The man’s eyes landed on Bai Yunfei next, his eyebrows furrowed together. “Who are you? I’ve never seen you before, don’t you know who I am? I am the assistant chairman, the one who oversees the students and instructors, how do you not know me!?”

This middle-aged man spoke quite like how an old man would speak. How bizarre.

“Assistant chairman!?” Bai Yunfei repeated; he remembered that Mo Huangkong had two assistant chairmen to help him govern the academy, but he just never made the connection that this man in front of him would be one of those said ‘assistant chairmen’.

Fang Yong took that moment to whisper to him, “Instructor Bai, that’s one of the two assistant chairmen, Wu Dijian....”

“Wudi Jian!?” Bai Yunfei nearly choked on his own spit—how lowly can his person get?!

TL Note: Another pun. 吴迪建 (Wu Dijian) sounds the same as 无敌贱 (Wudi Jian), or ‘Cheap/Low without equal’

“Indeed!! I am Wu Dijian!” He straightened his back to stand stall. “The one people call the handsome, elegant, confident, graceful, and without equal, the ‘Unrivalled Swordsman’, is I! Little one, are you a new student of the academy?! You’ll be scrubbing the bathrooms for three months if you don’t know me, are you prepared for that?!”

“.....”

Fang Yong took the time again to ‘explain’ to Bai Yunfei. “People say that the sword on chairman Wu’s back is a high-heaven tier soul armament. It’s his most precious treasure, and even though he’s a mid-stage Soul King, he can kill a late-stage Soul King with that sword’s strength. He calls himself the ‘Unrivalled Swordsman’, but his skill with the sword is really good. I’ve never even heard of anyone beating him before....”

“Unrivalled Swordsman??” This time, the smirk on Bai Yunfei’s face was noticeable. He couldn’t help it. A nickname like that didn’t really....fit with the person....

“As long as you know me! Be sure to remember it!” Wu Dijian spoke. Taking Bai Yunfei to be the ‘leader’ of the group, he said, “Kid! You never told me who you are! And furthermore, don’t you know permission is required to enter the Back Mountain?!”

“Uh....” Bowing respectfully, Bai Yunfei said, “This junior is Bai Yunfei. Please forgive this junior for not recognizing senior Wu right away. This junior is the instructor of the new crafting class, and these are my students. This place is a far more suitable place to learn the art of crafting.”

This man was an assistant chairman and senior to Bai Yunfei. By all rights, Bai Yunfei needed to be polite to him.

“Bai Yunfei? The crafting class?” Wu Dijian repeated to himself,

“You’re the instructor of the crafting class? The Bai Yunfei being spoken about in the last few days?”

“I am, senior.” Bai Yunfei nodded.

“Oh ho, so it is you! I heard you were a young one, but I didn’t think you’d look like this....” Wu Dijian nodded his head as he gave Bai Yunfei a second lookover.

“....” Bai Yunfei didn’t know what to think—what was he supposed to look like?

“You’re having classes here, you said?” Wu Dijian asked.

“Yes. The chairman said I could choose whichever place I wanted. So I decided to come here to excavate a few caves for my students to use.”

“Oh? Is that right?” Wu Dijian seemed to accepted his answer far better than the students had, hinting that he had some knowledge on how the Crafting School worked. “In that case, feel free to do so. You’re not a weak one, you should be able to handle any soulbeast that might come your way.

“Continue as you are then, I’ve matters to discuss with the chairman, so I’ll be taking my leave.”

Readjusting his longsword again, Wu Dijian folded his hands and flew into the air to fly away.

.....

Wu Dijian’s interruption had been a brief interlude in Bai Yunfei’s plans. But now that he was gone, the students were free to situate themselves by the wall and carve out a cave for themselves. Explosions and dust were continuous throughout the day as the students each had their own different method of digging a hole.

As they worked, two rays of light were flying straight up the mountain from the ground below. One of the streaks was Mo Chen, and the other was seemingly the earth-type instructor Mo

Chen talked before. Somehow, that instructor had actually come to help them....

Chapter 559: The Earth-type Instructor, Xiao Nan

Soon, the two streaks of light came to a stop on the top of the mountain.

“Instructor Bai, I’ve brought help! He can help patch up the hole....”

Mo Chen scratched his head with a chuckle, “Instructor Bai, this is instructor Xiao, instructor for the fifth year earth section students of class three.”

He nodded to the other man, “Instructor Xiao, this is instructor Bai.”

The man smiled and bowed towards Bai Yunfei. “It is nice to meet you, instructor Bai. I am Xiao Nan, a fellow instructor. It’s an honor to meet you, instructor Bai. You are a talented individual of your generation...haha.”

This man looked to be in his thirties and wore a brown colored robe. Standing at about 1.8 meters tall, Xiao Nan had short black hair and a rugged face. His looks were rather average, though he did look mature and earnest. His eyes shined also with a warm light, making him seem like a fairly approachable person.

Bai Yunfei returned the bow, “You flatter me, instructor Xiao. I am but a regular person....thank you for taking the time to come, instructor Xiao.”

Xiao Nan waved his hand, “You’re too kind, this is but only a small matter, no need for thanks, instructor Bai. What exactly is your class doing here, if you mind me asking?”

He could see the holes all over the mountain wall, he just couldn’t understand the reasoning behind them.

Mo Chen answered him first, “This is the crafting caves for our

class, we'll be learning how to craft in here.”

“.....” Not sure how to respond, Xiao Nan smiled. “Well....your crafting class is quite....special.”

“Haha, instructor Xiao, I'm embarrassed by this poor showing. The process of crafting is rather special and will affect the other students in the academy. That's why I chose this place, it's isolated and is quite suitable to learn how to craft here.”

“I see,” Xiao Nan nodded in understanding. “in that case, what can I help you with?”

He looked up at the eight holes all already excavated. What exactly did Bai Yunfei want?

“Instructor Xiao, over here over here.” Mo Chen tugged at his sleeves to walk him over to the hole he made. “This....I was hoping instructor Xiao would help me seal up this hole, hehe, if you could please!”

Perhaps it was because of his relationship with Mo Chen, but Xiao Nan didn't rebuke the young boy straight away. “Ah,” he laughed, “is this your doing? It's a little....over the top, don't you think? When will you ever learn to curb your impulses?”

Mo Chen scratched his head with a sheepish laugh.

From the way they spoke to one another, one could tell they were both on good terms with each other.

Xiao Nan nodded his head soon afterwards, “This won't be a problem then, leave it to me.”

“Thank you instructor Xiao!”

Chuckling again, Xiao Nan walked up to the cave and pressed his hand to the wall.

There was a flash of orange light before his soulforce spiked from his body, drawing in the ambient elemental energy in the area. Elemental earth started to materialize in front of him before

enveloped around his person.

“What abundant elemental earth!” Bai Yunfei thought to himself in surprise.

The elemental earth Xiao Nan was gathering to him gave Bai Yunfei the feel of him becoming as indestructible as stone. Xiao Nan’s strength was already a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, but his soulforce was far beyond what any peak late-stage Soul Exalt should be normally capable of.

Was....was he already a Soul King?!

A sparse few seconds later, Xiao Nan’s eyes flew open from within his orange circle. The hand pressed against the cliff shook before orange light traveled down from his arm and into the mountain!

“Bzzz!!”

Bai Yunfei thought it was a mistake at first, but there was a buzzing sound coming from...underneath!

The entire mountain point was shaking!

Simultaneously, a large amount of elemental earth bled into the mountain and turned the surrounding hundred meters into a shining area of orange light. From what Bai Yunfei could sense, the earth was growing seemingly alive as it started to move.

“Crack, crack....”

There were a few crackling sounds from the hole Mo Chen made as the area around the opening started to rumble. Clods of earth started to form from the orange light, the opening slowly starting to close up as more and more earth started to replace what had once been air. In time, the opening was closed with the other side now a regular stone wall with orange light occasionally shining from it.

Mo Chen’s cave hadn’t been the only part that had been changed,

At the same time Xiao Nan was sealing up the cave, the entire mountain point was shaking almost like the ripples in water. It persisted for several minutes before finally stopping.

The light gradually faded away from the area, leaving Xiao Nan standing there next to the cliff wall. Setting his arm down, Xiao Nan sighed as he had his soulforce recede back into his body. Now that he was done, Xiao Nan still didn't even look tired.

Probing at the cliff with his own soulsense, Bai Yunfei was amazed to find that the mountain was exactly the same. But at the same time, there was something special now that wasn't there before.

The entire mountain was....more durable than before?

The eight caves that had been rather haphazardly made before had been smoothed out. The walls were glossy, the space was wider by an inch, and the caves were far more durable-looking.

In just a short few minutes, Xiao Nan had completely restructured the components of the earth on the mountain peak!

Bai Yunfei was amazed, he had no idea that this type of manipulation was possible. Xiao Nan, as it appeared, was not a man to look down on.

“Instructor Bai, is this....to your liking?” Xiao Nan smiled as he made his way back over.

Bai Yunfei bowed towards him with a grateful smile, “I really can't thank you enough, big brother Xiao. Crafting in this area will no longer be a problem, thank you!!”

“If you're going to call me big brother, then don't mind me if I lay off the formalities. My friend, if there's ever anything you need that I can do, feel free to call upon me.”

“Alright!” Bai Yunfei replied ‘boldly’, “I'll lay off the formalities too then. If you ever need me for something, just say the word, big brother Xiao!”

.....

After chatting with Bai Yunfei for a few minutes, Xiao Nan said that he still had some students to assist and left the mountain.

Bai Yunfei had a decent impression of Xiao Nan. Because of the fire instructor Zhou Yu, Bai Yunfei had initially a slightly negative bias towards the other instructors.

Looking back at the seven students, Bai Yunfei waved his hand, “Now that we’re done with the holes, this place will be our ‘base of operations’ from now on. Come with me to my crafting cave first. I’ll explain the basics of crafting as well as the basics of elemental fire manipulation.”

The light in everyone’s eyes glistened—after waiting for so long, they’d finally be able to learn the art of crafting!!

Without any further ado, the students followed Bai Yunfei into his crafting cave....

Chapter 560: How Unfortunate....

Later that night, Bai Yunfei was back in his room in Zheng manor.

Laid upon the table in his room was a single white stone that served as the only source of illumination for Bai Yunfei. In front of him were a stack of books, with one of them currently being read by him.

This was the ‘homework’ he gave to the class.

They were filled with the insights each of the student had about crafting when Bai Yunfei did it the other day.

Today’s class had gone pretty smoothly, if he had to say so for himself. He had been worried that he wouldn’t do a good job of teaching, but as time went on, Bai Yunfei realized that it was actually a lot simpler than he initially thought.

He just had to convey the meaning as clearly as he could so that the students could understand. They were very knowledgeable, just only not in the aspect of crafting. But with their great memory and capabilities of connecting the dots easily, the students were undoubtedly geniuses among their peers.

By the end of class today, Bai Yunfei distributed several copies of the Art of Firebending to the students. In the aspect of fire manipulation, the Art of Firebending was top-notch. In other aspects, it wasn’t as good as several other styles of training in elemental fire.

In the end, the Art of Firebending was only just another way of how to manipulate elemental fire and several applications of said way. It wasn’t revolutionary and it wasn’t an esoteric secret. If he was to teach the class how to craft, then the Art of Firebending would definitely have to be given to them.

It was Bai Yunfei’s hope that the students would be able to almost

master the Art of Firebending within the week.

Such a request was quite demanding, but they were all extremely capable soul cultivators. Having a higher bar for geniuses was only natural.

He had said that should they have even a rudimentary grasp of the Art of Firebending, he'd let them try crafting a soul armament themselves the next class.

The rate in which the seven were learning the art of crafting was already far better than what Bai Yunfei was capable of, but was that not what being a 'genius' meant? Their starting points were far different to Bai Yunfei with even the weakest of them being a mid-stage Soul Ancestor when they started.

.....

After class ended earlier that night, Bai Yunfei went looking for Zheng Kai in the academy, only to find him sitting with a female student to 'teach' her how to control her soulforce. By the time Bai Yunfei left with Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei could see the sheer reluctance the female had about Zheng Kai leaving her. What in the world Zheng Kai had been teaching, he didn't know....

They returned to the manor after eating a simple dinner at a restaurant. And without further ado, Bai Yunfei headed into his own room to start reading through the 'homework'.

And what he was reading had beyond what he expected.

In fact, they blew his expectations out from the water.

Their understandings of what they saw from Bai Yunfei's crafting attempt had been exceedingly detailed in several cases. What many normal people wouldn't see, the seven had noticed. What supplementary Bai Yunfei used to stabilize the process, the seven were able to identify and roughly guess their usages. What fluctuations in his soulforce, the seven were able to tell. And what changes in elemental fire, the seven were able to see, describe, and

even theorize about.

Even Mo Chen, who wrote the least of the seven, had been able to concisely write about many different details on what happened.

Bai Yunfei was in fact starting to doubt if the seven of them had spent some time as a student of the Crafting School before.

This was also to say that they held an exceedingly strong comprehensive ability on soul armaments and the art of crafting. And it also meant to say that the seven of them had fairly decent talent for the art.

Had they....once tried to take the examinations to enter the Crafting school before?

It was a random thought Bai Yunfei had, but it wasn't a very slim chance either.

.....

“Eh?”

The final book he was reading had surprised Bai Yunfei immensely, and he was only on the first page of the book!

There was about twenty pages to this book, and the more Bai Yunfei read, the more surprised he felt about it. In the end, Bai Yunfei couldn't even put his praise into words.

This book was....so detailed!!

From when he first placed down the Lightningfire Cauldron to the fluctuations in the air, to the formation of the heaven-tier soul armament, every single little detail had been written down!

Every single change in the fire of the cauldron had been noted, the intensity of the flames measured, and the amount of differing materials categorized, sequentialized, and even theorized on their potential uses and combinations.....

Not only was each step of the procedure written clearly, the author had also written in their own analysis and conjectures.

Some details were even unclear to Bai Yunfei on how to answer.

It was a complete and utter analysis on the crafting attempt Bai Yunfei did two weeks ago. Many of the conjectures the author came up with had been right for the most part, and as a whole, the book could practically be used as a teaching manual on the crafting process.

Bai Yunfei made his decision as soon as he finished reading: This analysis was without a doubt the best homework given to him.

He flipped the cover to look at who wrote it, but when he saw the name, Bai Yunfei froze in shock.

“Him?!”

On the top right corner of the cover had two words written neatly on there—Ye Ming.

The very same sixth year student from the lightning section that came up to Bai Yunfei before class today!!

At some point during the day, Bai Yunfei had put his book together with the books of the other seven students. And Bai Yunfei had gone through them all.

He had no idea that the one book that he'd be most pleased with would belong to the only one that....wasn't his student.

“What a shame!!”

Bai Yunfei sighed in disappointment before packing away the books.

.....

Allowing his soulsense to scan his space ring, Bai Yunfei's eyebrows knitted together when he felt something different, “Right, nearly forgot about this....”

Shaking his right hand, Bai Yunfei took out a pile of things from his space ring and plopped them onto the table.

These things belonged to the young man who he won against back in Casino Jin. The one man who had practically nothing but random trash to his name.

Low-grade primal stones, even lower class soulgems, human-tier soul armaments, and even clothes....'trash' in almost every sense of the word.

But Bai Yunfei looked over the pile of things he won with a pleased smile. Aside from wanting to put a complete stop to the young man's gambling addiction, Bai Yunfei had found something very 'special' among the pile of things he had....

After rummaging through the pile, Bai Yunfei took out a small 'white cloth' about thirty centimeters squared in size. On it were several black lines that crisscrossed with one another as if messily scrawled on.

Placing the shabby looking cloth onto the table, Bai Yunfei stared pensively at it, "Can't believe there's actually a second piece...."

Chapter 561: Mysterious Pattern

Now that he had the piece of cloth in front of him, Bai Yunfei began to rummage around his person for a moment before finally pulling out a black cloth. Pulling the drawstring open, he overturned the bag and allowed for almost a hundred space rings to come clattering out onto the table.

The Violet Soul Ring's effect allowed for it to store other space related equipment as long as the ones being stored didn't have a cumulative capacity larger than the Violet Soul Ring itself. At the beginning, Bai Yunfei was fine with storing them in there, but with time, the amount of space rings he had was far too many to store, and since he didn't have enough fingers, Bai Yunfei decided to just put them all in a bag around his person.

And where did all these space rings come from? Spoils of war from those who tried to kill him, of course.

His stunt in the Soulbeast Forest had been where most of his space rings were found. By scavenging all the ones where the Carnivorous Treeflies were around near the Crack in the Sky, Bai Yunfei had roughly two hundred of them.

Bai Yunfei shook his head in dismay when he looked at the rings. One by one, he started his search.

With each ring picked up, Bai Yunfei would have his soulsense peer into it and search around its inner contents. If it didn't contain what he wanted, he placed it to the side and replaced the ring with another. And another. Repeat.....

It wasn't until nearly half of the space rings had been searched when Bai Yunfei's eyes lit up, "Found it!"

In the one space ring currently held in his right hand, there was a white piece of cloth that was of equally shabby make as the first one. There was grime and dirt on it, but the black scribblings on it

looked quite strange still.

This piece of cloth was extremely similar to the piece of cloth on the table!!

.....

Back in the Crack in the Sky, Bai Yunfei had found this grimier piece of cloth among the space rings he found. At first, he figured it to be a ‘map’ of some sort and was excited to find out what it contained, and if it was a ‘treasure map’ of all things. But even after discerning the scribblings for a good part of the day, Bai Yunfei hadn’t a clue about it. The markings on the cloth didn’t match with any geographical terrain he was familiar with, and he couldn’t see any type of ‘path’ to speak of.

There was very clearly a bigger picture, so to speak, but whether it was a treasure map was still unknown. Finding the other parts of this cloth seemed impossible to Bai Yunfei, so he gave up on it and stored it away somewhere for him to eventually forget.

But then the other night in Casino Jin, Bai Yunfei’s eyes laid upon a near identical piece of cloth in the pile of things the young man had. It was only by accident that Bai Yunfei saw it, and he had first mistaken it for a regular handkerchief at first, but then he realized it looked very familiar to the piece he had in his own possession.

The second piece to the cloth had came to him!!

And that was why Bai Yunfei decided to play one last round with the man and took his items away.

He had wanted to look into the strip that one night, but with the ambush on their way back to the casino and his ensuing injury, Bai Yunfei forgot about it until now.

Now that he placed the two strips of cloth together, Bai Yunfei could confirm that they matched up to form a better picture. He could feel himself grow excited. Was this really a treasure map?!

Bai Yunfei could at the very least confirm that the two pieces of cloth were by no means random or ordinary. Even if it wasn't a treasure map, it was still hiding another secret of sorts. The pattern on the cloth was....definitely special in some way.

At a detailed glance, Bai Yunfei could see that the two cloths matched perfectly together. The lines followed from one piece to the other and fitted perfectly!!

Excited to an unnatural degree, Bai Yunfei felt his own guesses finally start to confirm themselves. There was definitely some type of 'treasure' behind this!!

"I can't....believe I have so much luck like this!"

Bai Yunfei exhaled slowly. He had heard many a stories where a person had found a legendary treasure map of sorts and found their treasure after searching so painstakingly hard after it. Those type of legendary stories had been ridiculed by many as being just myths, but here Bai Yunfei was with something 'similar', and Bai Yunfei couldn't feel any more delighted about it.

But after another ten minutes of looking, Bai Yunfei felt himself growing disappointed again....

The two pieces of cloth indeed matched with one another, but—Bai Yunfei still couldn't find anything familiar on it.

If the writing on the cloth could be described as being 'scribbles' before, they were just undecipherable now.

Furthermore....

"It's still missing two pieces?!"

Bai Yunfei felt helpless now. Though the pieces matched up with one another, Bai Yunfei could see that it was still incomplete as a whole....

If he wasn't wrong, there was still another two pieces left. This was a four-pieced map!!

The disappointment hit Bai Yunfei greatly. The pieces of cloth still had no use like before. He was missing half the pieces, and so that meant he was no better than before. The map was useless.

After a long sigh of sadness, Bai Yunfei decided to think about what the patterns could possibly represent, and what the pieces of cloth were potentially hiding. He had a few ways to try and guess: use soulforce to see if there'd be a reaction, heat the cloth up, use water, expose it to the sun, or even try upgrading it, but none of them worked.

“Damn!! What a waste of time...”

Bai Yunfei cursed to himself out of disappointment. Throwing the pieces of cloth down onto the table, Bai Yunfei sat there to think. If he had found a second piece, who's to say there wasn't a third or fourth piece potentially in the remaining space rings he had? Perhaps there'd be something that might help him divine its secrets....

But his search was pointless. Angrily flopping onto his bed, Bai Yunfei decided to sit down and train instead.

.....

Because Mo Huangkong said that only one class per week was fine, Bai Yunfei was free to use the rest of that week to plan his next class. And since there was an entire week before the next one, Bai Yunfei could relax and take it easy until then.

No longer needing to worry about fighting others for his eating and living, or having to worry about sudden ambushes or whatnot, Bai Yunfei was truly experiencing what life was like in Zheng manor as a ‘young master’. It was blissful to say the least. He could be changed with a life of his hand and fed with the opening of his mouth, and Bai Yunfei was sure that if he really wanted to bed one of the maids, there'd be no problem with that.

For the next few days, Bai Yunfei rarely ventured out from his

room, preferring to stay there to either train or to study a few things such as the Illusion Stone and how to control it. He had already a decent over it.

Preparations for his next class was already done as well, with most of the lesson plan thought out and prepared for.

Zheng Kai would come by every so often, each time wanting to head out with him. Because of the most recent ambush outside of Casino Jin, the curfew his family imposed onto him was even harsher than before. He was still only to head out with Bai Yunfei, but several other guards would accompany them too.

There was also the one elder of his with the family name of Qin. Bai Yunfei had seen him before as the elderly man who was with him all the way back in Talus City. He hadn't known just how strong the man was before, but he did now. This man was an early-stage Soul King.

With a Soul King as his guard, there was most definitely not a chance that Zheng Kai or Bai Yunfei would come across any further troubles.

On the third day, Bai Yunfei had only just finished up his nightly training from before when he stepped outside to breathe in the fresh morning air. Zheng Kai chose then to pop into his courtyard with an excited smile.

"Haha!! Yunfei! Good news! We can finally head outside today!" He called out to him.

Bai Yunfei didn't know what to say. Was him being able to head outside of the manor really 'good news'? Bai Yunfei himself could at the very least head out whenever he wanted....

Curious, Bai Yunfei asked, "Did your family 'lift' your curfew?"

"Nah," Zheng Kai waved his hand, "I'm saying you can head outside to relax again. Hehe, you have to go, and I'll be there to 'look after' you."

“I have to go?” Bai Yunfei repeated, “Why do I have to go?”
Zheng Kai chuckled, “Because....someone’s here to invite you to eat with them.”

“Oh? An invitation? From whom?”

“The first prince!”

Chapter 562: The First Prince, Wu Ren

“The first prince?!” Bai Yunfei exclaimed. “The first prince wants to see me? What for?”

Zheng Kai shrugged his shoulders, “How should I know? I’d guess he wants to get to know you? Or else he’s trying to recruit you.”

“Recruit me?” Bai Yunfei was even more mystified, “What value do I even have for that?”

The first prince—the future sovereign of the empire—wanted to meet with him? And recruit him?

“You’re really too modest, Yunfei,” Zheng Kai quirked an eyebrow, “do you really think you don’t have any ‘value’? You’re an outstanding student from the Crafting School, instructor for the crafting class in Tianhun Academy, and a man capable of crafting a heaven-tier soul armament...with ‘value’ like that, anyone would be more than willing to recruit you.”

“Really?” Bai Yunfei stroked his chin—had he really become a hot commodity to go after?

“What time did the prince want to meet? And where?”

“Today at high noon. He requested the meeting to take place at the Hundred Aliments.”

“The Hundred Aliments? Isn’t that brother Jin’s establishment?”

“That’s the place.”

“I see. We should go together then....” Bai Yunfei dipped his head, “What...kind of person is the first prince?”

He had seen the fourth and second prince already, and there was a huge difference in personality between the two. If he were to use those two princes as a measuring stick, how would the first prince differ?

Zheng Kai thought for a moment on how to phrase his words, “The first prince Wu Ren, he’s going to be the next ruler of our empire. He’s a sensible person and has the best training and education. He’s always done what his Majesty Wu Hong has asked and has never failed at it. In terms of strength, his genius is something incredibly rare. In terms of him as a person, he’s very kind hearted. Whether it’s for the empire or for the people, he’s served faithfully for them both. He once governed a province for a while and did extremely well. The people in that province loved him greatly. All in all, I believe the first prince will be a great ruler.”

“Is that so?” Bai Yunfei spoke. From what Zheng Kai was saying, this first prince was an incredible person.

Zheng Kai nodded, “Yes. Aside from him governing the commoners, he’s very careful about all matters relating to the soul cultivator world. He’s friends with people from every school, house, or clan. He also has a good eye for the strong and pays strict attention to those that he might need.

“He’s actually quite similar to brother Huang Bin,” Zheng Kai chuckled, “though brother Huang’s nickname being the ‘Temper Lord’ isn’t very comparable to the first prince, obviously. The first prince has countless guests at his door, many of them more likely to be Soul Exalts than not. The people the first prince tries to recruit have always been either insanely strong or fellow geniuses, meaning there’s several Soul Kings in his circle....”

“And how strong is the first prince....?” Bai Yunfei just had to ask.

“He’s thirty-seven right now, but he’s a....mid-stage Soul King!!”

“Mid-stage Soul King at the age of thirty-seven!!” Bai Yunfei gasped—that was a terrifying amount of talent the first prince had!

The average soul cultivator would only be a Soul Ancestor by the age of thirty-seven! Being a Soul Exalt was more than enough to be

considered strong, but becoming a Soul King—and mid-stage no less—was a rare feat to be seen in a single generation.

“That’s exactly how terrifying the first prince’s talent is,” Zheng Kai agreed, “there’s a few other reasons for that level of strength though. He’s the first prince after all, the resources he has available for him doesn’t even need to be said. I heard that he was bathed in medicines over a thousand years old when he was born, and that he’s been using high-grade primal stones to train. Whether it’s in soul skill or personal skill, the first prince is by all rights where he should be.”

“.....”

Admiration filled Bai Yunfei’s eyes. Even though he had never met the prince, the man had his respect and Bai Yunfei could not wait to meet him.

.....

Bai Yunfei asked Zheng Kai for a few things more relating to the first prince to pass the time. And when it was nearly the designated time, the two departed from Zheng manor to reach the Hundred Aliments.

He didn’t bring the blue-eyes wyrm or the permafrost mastiff with him. He was seeing the first prince after all; so it stood to reason that there’d be plenty of powerful people hidden there just in case anyone would dare try to hurt their charge. And with so many of those said people there, Bai Yunfei didn’t want to worry about anyone figuring out the circumstances behind the permafrost mastiff. So he only took Xiao Qi with him.

This would be Bai Yunfei’s second time coming to the Hundred Aliments. Before they arrived, Bai Yunfei had thought that the entire building would be reserved for the prince today, but when they got there, Bai Yunfei saw the entire place filled with people; and even the second floor was booming with noise just like normal. He stepped inside with Zheng Kai and was prompted by

the greeters there by the door to follow them up to one of the private rooms on the second floor where the prince was waiting.

Bai Yunfei felt himself rather humbled by the fact that the first prince was such a ‘casual’ person. But the fact that he didn’t really feel like a prince due to that factor gave Bai Yunfei the impression that it’d be pretty easy to get along with the man.

He and Zheng Kai had only just arrived outside the room when the doors opened—the people inside had clearly felt their presence. Two beautiful maids held the door open and escorted Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai inside.

The room was spacious and exquisite, the table inside already filled with plenty of fine delicacies and drink. A man with extraordinary aura sat at the middle, smiling as he watched Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai entered.

The young man looked to be in his thirties and wore a simple white robe. While not exceedingly handsome, he held with him a aura of dignity (‘kingly air’ as the rumors might say), and the smile on his face didn’t diminish that dignity in the slightest. His aura commanded respect from people, though at the same time, he felt easy to approach and seemed quite kindly.

This was without a doubt the main character of the room, the first prince of the empire, Wu Ren.

Behind him stood a white-haired elder in purple and also a rather lazy looking young man in gray.

Aside from those three, there was no one else in the room.

Flashing Wu Ren a respectful smile, Zheng Kai bowed to the prince, “Zheng Kai pays his respects to His Highness the First Prince.”

Wu Ren didn’t rise from his seat, but he acknowledged Zheng Kai’s bow with a nod of his head. “Haha, you’re too kind, lord Zheng. Please, come and sit, you two.”

He turned to Bai Yunfei next, “And you must be Bai Yunfei? Your name precedes you. If today’s invitation was a little presumptuous of me, please forgive me for that.”

Bai Yunfei felt even more humbled by the absolute politeness of the first prince’s words considering his relative station and strength. Bowing and cupping his hands to Wu Ren, Bai Yunfei replied, “Bai Yunfei pays his respects to His Highness the First Prince. It is truly an honor to receive an invitation from the First Prince.”

Once Bai Yunfei sat down with Zheng Kai, Wu Ren waved his hand for one of the maids to come. Ordering a few more dishes, he sent her off before smiling at his guests. “I’ve actually been wanting to meet with the esteemed genius of the Crafting School, but with so many incidents happening since your arrival in the Capital, those plans had to be put aside. Your acts in the past few weeks have been extraordinary, brother Bai. Haha, you set quite an example as a genius for all the others in your generation.”

Just like his conversation with the second prince, Bai Yunfei was being deemed as a ‘brother’. Not like a blood brother, but one of equal station almost. It felt weird to be called such by the first prince, and so Bai Yunfei couldn’t help but respond meekly, “The First Prince overestimates this one. In front of the First Prince, I am but nothing and not worthy of being called a ‘genius’. Not worthy at all...”

Wu Ren laughed, “A mid-stage Soul Exalt at your age, strong enough to defeat a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, and capable of crafting a heaven-tier soul armament. What other word could describe you but ‘genius’? If that cannot, there are truly no such things as ‘geniuses’ in this world then....Furthermore, you managed to kill a Soul King when heavily injured in an ambush. Even I wasn’t capable of doing such a thing when I was your age....”

Bai Yunfei quirked an eyebrow. He knew that being the first

prince, all happenings in the Capital would be known to him, but for him to know something like that was a little surprising.

Wu Ren continued to speak before Bai Yunfei could say anything, “Brother Bai. I actually invited you today so that I give you a welcoming gift of sorts.”

“Eh?” Bai Yunfei didn’t know what to say—a welcoming gift before a proper conversation could even be had? Wasn’t that a little too polite?

Having not heard any complaints, Wu Ren spoke up rather carefreely, “While I say it’s a gift, it’s more like some piece of information of sorts. That ice-type Soul King who ambushed you and Zheng Kai. I’ve found him for you.”

“What?!”

This time, both Zheng Kai and Bai Yunfei cried out at the same time.

Chapter 563: The Good Intentions of the First Prince (First)

The ice-type mid-stage Soul King who had attacked him and Zheng Kai had been found?!

Neither of the two had expected such a piece of information. The house of Zheng had been searching and investigating the entire time but had yet to find any solid trail or information.

“Is it true, First Prince?” Zheng Kai’s face was solemn, “Where is that man now?”

“Indeed it is,” Wu Ren nodded, “We of the Tianhun School investigated the matter. He is currently south of this place in Baishan City.”

Baishan City was a very far away city to the Capital, making it surprising that the Soul King had made it there....how amazing the Tianhun School was if they could find even that man where the Zheng could not.

Eyes shining, Bai Yunfei spoke up to the prince, “If the First Prince has said the man has been found, has he been captured as well? Does he have any other companions or clues to his affiliation?”

What Bai Yunfei was thinking was that if the Tianhun School had already located him, the Soul King wasn’t able to run away. If he was in Baishan City, then that might’ve been a base of sorts. And if he was from the Soul Refining School, then several more things could be inferred from there....

Knowing what Bai Yunfei was getting to, Wu Ren shook his head, “I know what you’re thinking, brother Bai, but unfortunately, we haven’t had any other clues to follow.”

“What? Did he manage to escape?”

“Of course not.”

“Then...”

“He’s dead.”

“Dead?! But how?!”

“He really is,” Wu Ren nodded his head, “With the Tianhun School surrounding him, the Soul King chose to blow himself up along with....two of our Soul Kings.”

“.....”

Neither Bai Yunfei nor Zheng Kai knew how to respond to that. A Soul King blowing themselves up!! The fact that such a person was willing to go through such lengths to ensure that they wouldn’t be caught was simply terrifying to think about.

The people of the Soul Refining School as it appeared, was not only merciless to other people, but to themselves.

But at the very least, now that the person who had so grievously injured himself was dead, Bai Yunfei was relieved that there wouldn’t be a second attempt from the man on his life or Zheng Kai. And that in itself was some semblance of good news....

Bai Yunfei cupped his hands towards Wu Ren again in thanks, “Thank you for the information, Your Highness.”

“Haha, no need, no need. This has always been the responsibility of the Tianhun School. I merely wanted to do a small favor.” Wu Ren shook his hand, “In any case, it was because of the negligence of our Capital’s guards that you were hurt, brother Bai. We’ve increased the patrols in the Capital in hopes that a repeat situation will not occur.”

Seeing the pensive look on their faces, Wu Ren chuckled, gesturing at the delicacies on the table, “Don’t feel troubled by this, come, eat up and talk.”

.....

The three continued to talk to one another over the meals. Throughout the course, Bai Yunfei felt himself learning more about the first prince with their meal. From start to beginning, Wu Ren had been very easy to talk to. He had the grace of a prince while also remaining amiable. He wasn't very intimidating to talk to, and his treatment of his peers had been very genuine.

The second prince, Wu Zhuo, in comparison was also equally friendly, but the second prince lacked the 'straightforward' nature Wu Ren had. With Wu Zhuo, it was possible to know and speak with him, but with Wu Ren, the man was someone one could be good friends with.

That was only their first impression, however. Their true personalities had yet to be seen, so a final conclusion could not be made.

After the third round of drink and fifth order to food, Wu Ren suddenly asked Bai Yunfei, "Yunfei, do you have a place to live in the Capital yet?"

"Eh?" Bai Yunfei replied, "I've been living with the Zheng since my arrival."

"Yes, that I know." Wu Ren nodded, "But as an instructor of Tianhun Academy, surely you should find a place where you can live in the long term? Do you plan to live with the Zheng forever?"

"I...." Bai Yunfei didn't know how to respond. He hadn't thought about this problem before, but living for even several months to a year there wouldn't be a wise thing to do.

Zheng Kai slapped Bai Yunfei on the shoulder, "Is that something wrong? Yunfei, it's no problem if you stay with my family. Stay however long you like, we're brothers aren't we?"

Wu Ren smiled, "While that may be, I....feel that it's best if Yunfei gets a place to call his own. It'll be more convenient and freeing for him."

“First Prince, do you possibly mean that...” Zheng Kai started to speak.

“I’ve already prepared a place of residence near the academy on North Seventh Street, if Yunfei would like it.” Wu Ren spoke. “Though the academy has room and board for their instructors, I feel that this residence will suit you just fine. It’s not big, but it’s special and close to the academy. Even if you don’t return to it every day, it’s still a fine place to rest in every once in a while. You’ll enjoy it, I’m sure.”

The generosity of the prince was surprising to Bai Yunfei, “I....thank you for your generosity, First Prince. But I cannot accept a reward I didn’t deserve. I....”

Wu Ren cut him off, “Don’t refuse it, Yunfei. It’s merely a room to live in and not some sort of precious treasure. What kind of ‘reward’ would this be? You are an instructor of Tianhun Academy, you are teaching the next generation of geniuses of the empire. This is a great deal of accomplishment. I’ve the address of your place here, everything will be prepared for you when you decide to live in it.”

He slid a slip of paper over to Bai Yunfei. “As I said before, the room isn’t too large, but it’s still large enough to need people to clean it. There aren’t any maids now, but if you want to hire any, I can arrange that for you.”

Bai Yunfei had been thinking that Wu Ren was trying to spy on him, but if no maids were hired yet, that meant Wu Ren wanted to avoid such a thought by being considerate.

Bai Yunfei hesitated for a moment, but he took the paper anyways. “I will accept it then. Thank you for your generosity. I have no need for servants, I enjoy being left to my own devices.”

Now that he thought about it, living in Zheng manor continuously wasn’t a good thing. It was also inconvenient for him, since nothing he could do there would be a secret, it’d be

better if he could limit the amount of people around him.

So if the first prince was willing to give him a place, Bai Yunfei would accept it.

.....

The meal finished a while after with everyone leaving the restaurant with a smile on their faces.

As the time came for them to say goodbye, Wu Ren suddenly spoke to Bai Yunfei, “Yunfei, my fourth brother....is an impulsive one, but he isn’t bad. I know there’s some friction between you and him, but I hope that you’ll see past that.”

Bai Yunfei hadn’t expected Wu Ren to suddenly bring up Wu Yang. “You’re far too serious with your words, First Prince. There’s no such conflict between the Fourth Prince and I.”

“That’s good then. I hope that you’ll...look after my fourth brother well in the future.”

“.....”

His words puzzled Bai Yunfei. What did he mean by that?

“Let’s get going then, Yunfei!”

Zheng Kai spoke up to him.

Bai Yunfei turned his head to Zheng Kai who looked expectantly at him, “Where to?”

Zheng Kai smiled. “We rarely get the chance to go out, let’s go somewhere fun before heading back. Come on, I’ll take you somewhere interesting.”

Bai Yunfei grew suspicious—what kind of interesting place? Where he was going to take him now?

Chapter 564: Underground Ring (Second)

“Bang! Bang! Bang!!”

The sounds of fist hitting flesh could be heard on top of a twenty-meter squared stone platform as two bare chested men fought it out against each other on it.

One of the males was in his twenties while the other in his thirties. Both of their muscles were exceedingly pronounced and far larger than the average size. Each punch or kick was made with formidable strength, and their battle against one another was exhilaratingly fierce.

Soulforce blazed from each person intermittently—both of these fighters were Soul Warriors!

A ring of seats surrounded the platform, with people to be seen cheering loudly on them. Like the combatants, the audience were also soul cultivators, some of them weak, some of them strong, but power aside, they were all yelling out at the fighters in the middle.

This was an underground fighting ring!! One where soul cultivators fought!

.....

On the right side of the ring where the most people could be seen, Bai Yunfei stared incredulously at Zheng Kai, “Is this the ‘interesting’ place you were talking about?”

Smiling as he watched the two Soul Warriors duke it out, Zheng Kai smiled, “Hehe, yep, how about it? This is the only ring where soul cultivators can fight in the Capital. You can watch great battles here, and all sorts of battles can be seen. Even Soul Exalts fight here....feeling excited yet?”

Bai Yunfei did not. He eyed the audience around the place and then the two people in the middle with furrowed eyebrows, “I don’t quite like places like this....”

Just the sight of this place brought back unhappy memories.

Zheng Kai blinked once, realizing just how he came to meet Bai Yunfei in the first place. Rushing to fix his faux pas, he said, “Ah, please don’t misunderstand, Yunfei. This isn’t what you’re thinking. It’s completely different to the ‘Coliseum’ back in Talus City. Only people who are willing can fight in this arena, and the battles aren’t to the death. It’s merely a place where you can share pointers with one another, and the winner receives a considerable amount of primal stones as a reward. One can fight another soul cultivator on even grounds so plenty of soul cultivators like to come here and fight. The audience are all regular soul cultivators that either like betting or just like the thrill of watching a fight, that’s all.”

He tried his best to explain the place as best as he could so that Bai Yunfei wouldn’t think this was some sort of dark and unlawful place.

“I see....” The expression on Bai Yunfei’s relaxed a bit. Then again, how could a place like the one back in Talus City exist right underneath the foot of the city where the Royal Family lived?

In other words, this was merely a fair wrestling ring. It wasn’t like the Coliseum where commoners are brought to fight to the death. Only soul cultivators could fight here.

There was plenty of similarities between soul cultivators and commoners, as one could see from Casino Jin and now this wrestling ring.

According to what Zheng Kai said, this was a place where everything was on the surface and lawful to operate. Furthermore, it seemed like it was rather popular in the Capital. Any soul cultivator or noble could come here and either take part or watch the festivities. One could learn from here, spar with another equally matched opponent, and win prizes necessary to train for. What could possibly be bad about this place?

With those previous concerns of his now alleviated, Bai Yunfei decided to forget about those bad memories and follow Zheng Kai into the place.

There wasn't just one arena to fight on. This specific location was pretty big and had at least ten rings to fight from. From a simple glance, the avenue looked like it could support over ten thousand people, meaning the owner was most likely a powerful person, or at least someone with considerable influence. Bai Yunfei could tell that most of the workers here were Soul Sprites at the very least, and some of the ones in charge of holding the peace were Soul Exalts.

Those who were fighting in the rings were averaging to be Soul Warriors, though there were a few Soul Exalts fighting. Bai Yunfei could also see two Soul Ancestors fighting each other on a ring several hundred meters wide. The two of them were leaping here and there as they fought. They intentionally kept their strengths to a controllable amount so that it wouldn't hurt the audience, but the few bursts of elemental that would've flown were stopped by the barrier, preventing it from harming the audience.

Watching the people fight intensely and listening to the excited roars of the audience had started to make Bai Yunfei's own blood start to boil. With so many people watching each of the battles with relish, Bai Yunfei started to think that such a thing wasn't all too bad....

Zheng Kai noticed the change on Bai Yunfei's face with a smile. "So? Yunfei, you starting to see the appeal of this place yet? We used to come here often, and brother Huang loved fighting here. He said plenty of strong people gathered here, though it was mainly our third brother that fought the most. He's considered the 'champion' here, since he always won against his opponents."

That surprised Bai Yunfei. Chen Qiantan was? He remembered hearing that the house of Chen trained in the near-extinct art of the 'Drunken Fist', and that it was supposedly unbeatable in close

combat. He saw a tidbit of it outside the Capital, but it hadn't been very interesting to him at that point, so Bai Yunfei never really thought about the technique as a whole.

Zheng Kai laughed, "So how about it, Yunfei? Want to give it a try? You can fight straight away if you want, the master of the place will arrange the opponent for you. You'll get a prize if you win, I know you don't really care for prizes, but sparring isn't too bad. You can learn something from your spars without fear of injury or death here."

Bai Yunfei waved his hand, "No need, I just want to watch. I don't have an interest in fighting."

.....

"Ah!!"

Just as Bai Yunfei turned his head to watch the two mid-stage Soul Ancestors from before fight, a cry from elsewhere caught his attention.

Looking over to the direction of the cry, Bai Yunfei saw in one of the more isolated rings a brawl start to break out among seven or eight people.

Tensions and conflicts would always happen in places where soul cultivators gathered. Bai Yunfei already saw several isolated incidents happen on the way here, but they were always resolved rather fast. The people in this case were only Soul Ancestors, and with so many Soul Exalts here, Bai Yunfei wasn't too worried about anything bad from happening.

About to turn his head away again, Bai Yunfei's eye caught onto the figure of one of the people caught in the middle of it all. Doing a double take, Bai Yunfei narrowed his eyes and started to stride over.

"Eh? Yunfei, what's wrong?"

Noticing Bai Yunfei's abrupt change in interest, Zheng Kai called

out and followed after him in concern.

Chapter 565: Cowardice (Third)

In the corner where the newest conflict was happening, about ten people were involved. A richly dressed Early-stage Soul Exalt in his thirties stood there with an elderly man behind him and five Soul Ancestor guards stood around in front of him. In the center of those five, two males and a female—all of them Soul Ancestors—stood there.

The three of them were in rough shape. The twenty-something year old fair-skinned male was held by his throat up into the air by the richly dressed Soul Exalt, his face pale and his arms and legs flailing wildly. By his side, the twenty-year old girl had her right hand up to her lips in fright at the scene and frozen still to the spot. The third person was knocked to the ground, his face twisted in pain and anger as he rubbed at his throat.

“You dare try to play dumb with me, the great Cao Jun? Do you want to die, brat?!” The richly dressed man spat in disdain at the person whose throat he was grabbing onto. “Don’t think I can’t make you disappear from this world if I want you to!”

The eyes of the young man in his grasp were filled with fright. As a late-stage Soul Ancestor, he hadn’t the strength to push away the Soul Exalt grasping his throat. As best as he could, the young man struggled and rasped, “Do—don’t kill me! Cough, p—please, don’t kill me....”

The one known as Cao Jun seemed pleased with this reaction. With a sneer, he threw the man to the ground.

“Ah!! Zhe Hao, are you okay?”

The young woman cried out, taking the young man into her arms in great concern.

Cao Jun cracked a ridiculing smile at the actions of the young woman, his eyes filled with a lustful light.

Smirking, he said, “You better pay up the eighty mid-grade primal stones you promised. If you don’t....then don’t blame me for anything that might happen!”

The young woman patted the back of the coughing young man with one hand before looking furiously at Cao Jun, “You clearly said before the match the stakes was for eighty low-grade primal stones, not mid-grade ones! You’re being completely unreasonable you—you menace!”

But Cao Jun only cackled in response. “Don’t quibble with me little girl. One must pay what one bets. We agreed on the stakes before hand that it’d be for eighty mid-grade primal stones. If you don’t pay that amount after I win, that won’t do....”

“You—! You said low-grade primal stones to begin with, how am I quibbling? You—!” Clearly not experienced or proficient at justifying themselves, the young woman had been so infuriated by the actions of Cao Jun that her face was flushed red like a tomato, and her eyes were filled with fire.

But she could not make a clear and coherent retort after that.

“Bo-boss...please let us go. We’ve never reneged on a debt before, but we clearly betted on eighty low-grade primal stones. We....we are only normal soul cultivators, where in the world would we be able to get eighty mid-grade ones? Please don’t....don’t embarrass us...”

The one known as Zhe Hao finally managed to speak. His eyes were still filled with terror and his speech was weak. He was regretting taking part in this bet. It had been so exciting at first that he could fight with someone in an amiable and friendly bet like this, but then everything changed after he lost with the opponent asserting that the stakes had been for mid-grade primal stones. And with their opponents being the stronger ones, their intimidation tactics had completely terrified him.

“Quit your bullsh*tting in front of me!!” Cao Jun sneered,

kicking Zhe Hao into the chest. With a sickening crack, Zhe Hao was sent tumbling away before spitting out a mouthful of blood!!

Completely lacking a merciful bone in his body, Cao Jun had cracked one of Zhe Hao's rib bones with a kick!

“Do you or do you not want to die, brat?” An ominous glint entered Cao Jun’s eyes.

Zhe Hao’s body trembled with pain and fear. Completely and utterly cowed, he muttered, “Do—don’t ki—kill me pl—please....”

Curling his lips in a cold sneer, Cao Jun suddenly gave a charming ‘smile’. “Since I am a generous and reasonable person, I’ll give you the chance to live.”

Terrorized into obedience, Zhe Hao brightened up at this seemingly golden chance. “Tha—thank you, boss! Thank you so mu—”

“I wasn’t finished talking,” Cao Jun’s smile grew wider as he pointed at the girl with him, “You boys can leave, but leave the young girl. The girl will accompany me for one night and we can call it even.”

“What?!” Zhe Hao blanked. His response had broadsided him, and his face turned pale as a result, his lips trembling in confusion on what to do or how to respond to that.

The young woman in question froze completely still from her kneeling position next to Zhe Hao.

Moments later, Zhe Hao spoke again, his voice trembling, “How....how could we do that...? Boss....please let us go....”

He had realized it then—this was the goal of the man the entire time!!

The glint in Cao Jun’s eyes intensified, “You willing to bet if I can make it so you’ll disappear without anyone knowing?”

Again, Zhe Hao’s body trembled under Cao Jun’s glare. Sweat

pooled over his forehead as he recognized the threat. This person could well and truly kill him!! He was a soul cultivator without any backing or power, how could he go against someone like him? No one would know if he died by the hands of someone like Cao Jun, would they?

Fear like never before gripped at Zhe Hao's heart. This was a completely terrifying situation he found himself in. A trembling hand of his pushed himself off of the ground. Eyeing the young woman next to him with guilt, he....turned around to leave!!

He was complying with Cao Jun's 'request' and abandoning her to save himself!

The young woman stood there transfixed with mute shock at what Zhe Hao had just done. She couldn't believe the person that had personally been trying to court her for so long—and herself having a touch of a fancy for him in turn— was willing to throw her behind so that he could escape.

"Zhe Hao!! What are you trying to pull—are you a man or not! How can you abandon Tianmeng like this?!"

An indignant voice boomed out from the second male on the ground besides them. His frail frame trembled with anger and disappointment as he watched Zhe Hao try to leave.

"Ye Yu....I...." Zhe Hao opened his mouth to speak, but when he saw the cold look in Cao Jun's eyes, his mouth snapped shut again. "Ye Yu, we should leave...." He replied meekly, "We're only normal person, we can't win against someone like him. He....he really can kill us, he will kill us.....no one will help us here....we should just....just leave...he won't hurt Tianmeng, she'll be back tomorrow, maybe...."

His voice grew meeker and meeker with each sentence spoken. Him trying to save the other male companion seemed to be his way of trying to lighten the guilt of his current actions, though his words were barely audible by the time he finished speaking.

But Ye Yu gave him a glare filled with disappointment. He had finally discovered what kind of person his years-long friend was. “It was you that brought us here—it was you Tianmeng believed in that she decided to come here....And now—now you want to throw her away like that...? And that she ‘won’t be hurt maybe’?! How—how can you even say such crap?! I misjudged you!”

“I....I didn’t know this would happen! I only came here because I heard this place was exciting....” Zhe Hao tried to argue, but just one look from Cao Jun was all it took to shut him up again. Looking down at the ground so as to avoid his companions stares, he turned and left the place in defeat.

The young woman watched him as he left, her eyes brimming with tears of despair, her mouth already starting to cry out at a moment’s notice.

Seemingly enjoying this type of reaction from her, Cao Jun laughed jovially, “A guy like that isn’t worth crying over, little girl. Allow me to treat you right, tonight, you’ll know what it means to have a ‘real’ man, hehe....”

Her delicate frame shuddered in fear as Cao Jun approached. Having never been in such a situation, her face was deathly white, unsure of what to do. All she could do was back away slowly.

At that moment, a person came forward to put himself in between her and Cao Jun.

“Don’t worry, Tianmeng, I’m here!” The youngster named Ye Yu spat, glaring hatefully at Cao Jun. “You bastard! I won’t let you hurt her! We’re students of Tianhun Aca—”

“Bang!!”

A fist slammed into his stomach before he could finish his sentence. As a mid-stage Soul Ancestor, Ye Yu was completely powerless to stop Cao Jun from acting. Staggering backwards in pain, Ye Yu coughed twice and was immediately apprehended by

the men with Cao Jun, preventing him from getting back up again.

“Ah!! Ye Yu!!”

Frightfully screaming out his name, the young girl moved to rush towards him, only to be stopped by Cao Jun and forced to move in another direction in her fear.

A lascivious smile was now on Cao Jun’s face. Delighted in the young girl in front of him, his right hand caressed at the cheek of hers.

“You’d best let your mongrel of a hand stay by your side, or you’ll be eating with your left hand for the rest of your life.”

Suddenly, a calm voice spoke out to Cao Jun, freezing him in place.

Eyes flying to the person who spoke, the young woman’s eyes widened in shock at first, and then in joy, “In—instructor Bai!!”

Chapter 566: The Young Master Visiting From Baishan City (Fourth)

There was an ominous expression as Bai Yunfei stalked forwards, his eyes looking at the tearful young woman in front of him. Comforting her with a smile, he spoke, “Fang Tianmeng, what are you doing here, and what is happening?”

This young woman was one of his students, the youngest one there, Fang Tianmeng!

Seemingly bolstered in courage by the smile of his, she rubbed at the tears on her face, “Instructor Bai, I....”

But before she could explain the situation, the coarse voice of Cao Jun interrupted her, a dangerous glint in his eyes as he stared Bai Yunfei down, “How dare you you brat!? Don’t poke your nose in where it doesn’t belong! Keep out or you’ll regret it!!”

Bai Yunfei held a hand up to stop Fang Tianmeng from speaking so he could turn to Cao Jun. He didn’t need her to say it since he heard what was going on more or less. Cao Jun was a man who was abusing his station to bully those weaker than him. A common scenario Bai Yunfei saw many times before.

Eyeing the other people with Cao Jun, Bai Yunfei then spoke, “What did you say?”

With his strength, there was no way Cao Jun would be able to see how strong Bai Yunfei was. “I’m saying you should keep your nose out!” He snorted, “I see this girl, I want this girl. If you know what’s best for you, get the f*ck out!!”

Bai Yunfei leaned back to look at Zheng Kai incredulously, “Are people like him....common?”

He was answered with a shake of his head. “Not at all. I’ve never seen anyone as arrogant as him.”

Though many battles were fought here, most of them were generally only verbal or settled out in the ring. Zheng Kai was a frequent visitor of this place and yet even he rarely saw matters such as this.

The mediators of the place had already taken notice of the conflict going on here and stood on standby to intervene if need be. If Cao Jun tried to take Fang Tianmeng away, they'd immediately step in to stop him, but now that Zheng Kai was here, they stepped back, knowing that Zheng Kai would settle this himself.

Zheng Kai turned to look at Cao Jun, who was bridling with anger already. “Hey, you there. Which family are you from? I’ve never seen you before, don’t you think you’re being too arrogant?”

Cao Jun blew his top. “Who are you?! Why are you sticking your nose where it doesn’t belong? I’ve the right to be arrogant, if you know what’s good for you, scram or I’ll turn you into a cripple!!”

Wide-eyed, Zheng Kai pointed a finger to himself, “Do you not know who I am?!”

He wasn’t wrong to look surprised. There weren’t many in the Capital that didn’t know who he was. Blinking a few times, he asked, “Are you an outsider then?”

Harrumphing, Cao Jun spoke, “I am the young master of the house of Cao in Baishan City. I came to the Capital for some fun, how bout it? What’s it to you?! I’m warning you, even if you’re the local boss here, you can’t go against the regional boss!!”

Bai Yunfei couldn’t but bark with laughter, casting a mirthful look over to Zheng Kai, “You hear that? Seems like you’ve come across a brave one, ‘local boss’!”

Zheng Kai smirked and shrugged his shoulders as if powerless, “Yeah, can’t interfere in this as the ‘local boss’. You deal with this Yunfei. Feel free to do whatever you want.”

Zheng Kai didn’t care for some empty-headed second

generational that had more arrogance than sense. Retreating to the side, he folded his arms to watch the show.

But Cao Jun took this as a sign of cowardice. Sneering, he turned to look at Bai Yunfei with a dark look. “Break his arms and feet first and we’ll leave with the girl!!” He commanded his soldiers.

A decent sum of people were gathering here to watch the spectacle. Having no desire to stay behind to be a part of said spectacle, Cao Jun wanted to leave, but he first had to deal with the impertinent ones.

The elderly person behind him decided then to speak up, “Young master,” he whispered to Cao Jun’s ear, “this is the Capital and not Baishan City. This old slave thinks we should try to avoid conflict and leave at once....”

But Cao Jun dismissed his words angrily, “Are you the master here or am I?! I don’t need you to tell me anything!!”

The old man’s face grew listless, but he didn’t bat an eye and said nothing more.

Still incensed to fight, Cao Jun glared at Bai Yunfei, “Come on and let’s settle this, brat!”

.....

In a large building to the east of the Capital, a large group of people was coming out with Cao Jun leading the front with a swagger. Fang Tianmeng and Ye Yu followed shortly behind, Ye Yu slightly injured still, but looking slightly better than before with Fang Tianmeng supporting him. Behind the two of them was a calm looking Bai Yunfei with the guards of Cao Jun all around him, as if afraid he’d run.

As for Zheng Kai, he was following the group from behind with his hands on his head as if to watch the procession.

It was already turning dark now, but there was still some light to the day left. The group continued to walk towards a dark alleyway

before Cao Jun came to a stop.

Smiling predatorily at Bai Yunfei as a cat would at a mouse, Cao Jun started to mock them, “Following me so obediently all the way here must be proof of your ignorance. Or maybe I should say you’re a brave one??”

He stared lasciviously at Fang Tianmeng, “I’ll be taking away the pretty girl, but as for you two....”

He gestured at Bai Yunfei and Ye Yu, “Break off an arm and leg!”

Bai Yunfei narrowed his eyes, wondering just where in the world this guy had found all this arrogance from. Smiling to Fang Tianmeng to reassure her, he said, “Don’t be afraid. As long as I’m here, nothing will happen to you. Just wait a moment and you may return home.”

Fang Tianmeng nodded, “I believe in you, instructor Bai....” came her quiet response.

She had in truth been completely comforted the moment Bai Yunfei appeared, as if she had the utmost faith in him.

“Good. You two wait over there, I’ll take care of these annoyances very quickly.” Bai Yunfei pointed to the wall to their right just far away enough to avoid any potential damage.

His cavalier attitude annoyed Cao Jun. Snapping a finger at him, the man shouted, “Hurry up and cripple him!!”

The five Soul Ancestor guards he had snapped to attention and leapt straight for Bai Yunfei at once, as if normal for them. But then the moment they stepped forward, Bai Yunfei had....disappeared!

“Young master, watch out!!”

The elderly man behind Cao Jun cried out in bewilderment. His body flashed with purple light as he flashed forward with his left hand to grab and pull Cao Jun behind him by the shoulder.

Elemental lightning flowed around his right hand as he lashed outwards.

This old man was....a peak late-stage Soul Exalt!

Chapter 567: Losing Emotional Control!!

(Fifth)

While the old man was moving into action to protect Cao Jun behind him, Bai Yunfei was already right in front of the two, his right hand grabbing at Cao Jun's neck while his shining left fist slamming into the elder's right hand.

“Bang!!”

Fist met fist in a messy explosion of sound before the elderly man was sent flying back like a bullet!

And the five fingers on his right hand were all bent at an awkward angle—they had all been broken!

Bai Yunfei had activated the +10 additional effect of the Critical Glove upon impact—a critical blow worth three times the normal strength! Without putting in the proper amount of soulforce to defend himself or even realizing the damage, the elderly man was injured without a doubt!

With the old man flung away by Bai Yunfei, that left Cao Jun wide open to fall prey to Bai Yunfei's hand. Before he could even react, Cao Jun felt himself be swung like a sack of potatoes into the five soldiers around him.

“Bang bang!”

Two of the guards were hit by Cao Jun's legs and sent flying, the two in the middle managed to dodge just fast enough, and the last one managed to bring his arms up to protect himself.

“Ah!!”

There was a cry of pain as the soldier and Cao Jun were sent staggering away, but the cry of pain came not from the soldier but from Cao Jun himself. In his hurry to protect himself, the soldier forgot about the dagger he had been holding. When he hit Cao Jun,

the dagger had cut at Cao Jun's leg just deep enough to draw blood.

In less than a moment, Cao Jun's group had suffered a crushing defeat!

Standing where the elder once stood with his hand still on Cao Jun's throat, Bai Yunfei watched as the arrogance bled away from his face only to be replaced by one of foolishness and pain. But because of his fingers on the man's throat, all Cao Jun was capable of doing was breath rather strangely as he struggled to detach himself from Bai Yunfei. Already his eyes were starting to roll towards the back of his head from oxygen deprivation.

Every single person but Bai Yunfei was in shock at what had happened. The elder still on the ground had his eyes bugged wide open, the soldiers were all afraid of moving, lest Bai Yunfei harm their charge anymore. Fang Tianmeng's hand had flown straight to her mouth in her shock, and Ye Yu right next to her was absolutely gobsmacked. Even Zheng Kai, while not amazingly shocked like the others, tsked twice in his admiration of Bai Yunfei's swiftness.

In less than two blinks of an eye, a peak late-stage Soul Exalt was knocked away, an early-stage Soul Exalt was captured, and five Soul Ancestors were scattered into defeat. This was not a result anyone expected to see so quickly.

The elder's head was slick with sweat now, though it still remained to be seen if it was due to the pain from his right arm or by the fact that Bai Yunfei seemed to be strangling Cao Jun to death. "Stop!! Don't kill him!!"

His cry garnered no response from Bai Yunfei, who at the moment seemed to be looking a little strangely himself....

When Cao Jun had been swung around in the air and cut by the dagger by one of his soldiers, some blood from the wound had splashed onto Bai Yunfei's face. A droplet or two had even made its way into his left eye, stopping him for a moment.

His right hand was paused in the air with Cao Jun still held tightly in it. In his one second of blanking out, his left hand drew up to wipe the blood from his cheek. Though he got some off, his cheek was still splashed with several droplets.

Noting the red blood on his left hand as he blinked his left eye several times due to the blood, Bai Yunfei could only see redness from the left side. For another two seconds, another strange flash of light came across both his eyes....

He could hear a scream of sorts somewhere, but that wasn't important right now. Sensing that Cao Jun was still struggling his hands, his eyes refocused the man's face, Bai Yunfei loosened his hand, allowing Cao Jun to drop to the ground and gasp for air in several heavy gulps.

The elder sighed in relief as he watched Bai Yunfei drop Cao Jun. He was slightly bitter that the opponent was so unbelievably strong. As he was now, he doubted that he'd be able to fend off any of the opponent's attacks, and if Cao Jun was held captive, there was nothing he'd be able to do.

Climbing back to his feet with one hand holding onto his right, the elder slowly stepped forwards. "Sire," He began to speak with his most negotiable voice, "this was all just a misunderstanding, we were foolish to not know our places. Please forgive us for this slight sire. Let go of the young master and the house of Cao will defi—"

"Ah!!!"

A gut wrenching howl was heard before the elder could finish his sentence, causing the elder to turn pale with fright when he saw why!

Bai Yunfei had raised his right foot up while the elder was talking, stepping down heavily onto Cao Jun's injured right foot in the next moment. There was the crisp sound of bone snapping as Bai Yunfei exerted some force, continuing to do so even after

breaking the bone!!

But the strange thing was, while Cao Jun was screaming his lungs out, there was a....an unbothered look in the eyes of Bai Yunfei!!

He stared coldly at the howling Cao Jun beneath him. “Did you not say you’d break an arm and leg of mine?”

“I—I....do-don’t kill...please....I...” Cao Jun was close to faint, his mouths barely coherent as he tried to plead for his life.

“Bang!!”

Bai Yunfei landed a swift kick onto Cao Jun’s stomach to flip onto his back. Lifting his right leg again, Bai Yunfei stepped onto his right arm!

“Young master!!”

Unable to stop himself from crying out, the elder charged at Bai Yunfei with the other five soldiers charging in after him.

“Chirp!!”

Flying from Bai Yunfei’s shoulder, Xiao Qi took off and grew larger into shape. Rainbow light exploded from its body before a hundred purple lightning bolts crackled outwards to strike at the five Soul Ancestors and preventing them from getting within five meters of Bai Yunfei.

The elder avoided each of the lightning bolts. Since his right hand was out of commission, he could only lift his left hand to bring out a giant blade to swing it down onto his head!

A spark of fire shot across Bai Yunfei’s eyes. Whirling to meet the elder head on, Bai Yunfei’s right hand flew out. The blade came down onto his arm, but was unable to go any further!

“For helping him in his crime....you are just as guilty!!”

Bai Yunfei’s voice had been frosty, scaring even the elder. Clutching his left hand tightly, Bai Yunfei punched at the chest of the elder, cracking bones as he punched the man away. There was

a small dent in the elder's chest now, and a mouthful of blood came out from his mouth as a result.

The old man was unfortunately very unlucky. He was a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, but even he wasn't able to avoid being hit and injured by Bai Yunfei on behalf of trying to save Cao Jun. And with the strange methods of Bai Yunfei, the man wasn't able to properly defend against Bai Yunfei before being hit again.

Now that the old one was dealt with, Bai Yunfei turned his gaze towards the moaning five Soul Ancestors on the ground. Withdrawing the Desert Eagles into his hands, Bai Yunfei fired off five shots into the right arms of the five soldiers, shooting them straight through. It took a second for them all to realize the sensation of them being shot, and then they started to scream out in pain.

And now with all other irrelevant parties taken care of, Bai Yunfei could finally focus on Cao Jun. Eyes glinting with an ominous glare, Bai Yunfei stepped down onto him again with his foot!

“Ah!!!!”

Stepping down once again, Bai Yunfei trampled onto Cao Jun's right hand!!

Right now, half of Bai Yunfei's face was splashed with blood. His face was completely blank without emotions, but his eyes revealed a bloodthirsty look in them, making a strange contrast.

.....

From his position farther away, Zheng Kai perked his eyebrows up when he saw Bai Yunfei step onto Cao Jun's arm. This newest development had sparked something in his mind, each second making him feel more and more confident in his guess.

“Oh crap....brother Bai lost control! Is he going to kill those seven? This could be trouble....”

Chapter 568: Beastlike

Normally with Bai Yunfei's personality, such a 'ruthless' scene like this wouldn't be something he'd do. And the expression on his face could easily be seen by anyone that knew anything about him that he had lost all sense of rationality. It was as if some sort of vicious personality within Bai Yunfei's mind had broken loose and was now releasing a world of pain onto these insignificant 'nobodies' and deal significant injuries.

Zheng Kai remembered his grandfather saying before that because of the Soul Refining Palm, Bai Yunfei's soul was damaged. Consequently, Bai Yunfei would have to deal with a variety of side-effects as his soul repaired itself—some of which were appearing now in the form of him losing emotional control.

In Bai Yunfei's case, the small amount of anger and desire in Bai Yunfei was now manifesting in several degrees greater than what would normally be shown.

Since Bai Yunfei hadn't shown anything out of the ordinary since he recovered, Zheng Kai figured his grandfather had been wrong about his guess. But Bai Yunfei's situation right now only proved that his grandfather was right about Bai Yunfei losing control over his emotions and actions.

Zheng Kai had additionally figured that Bai Yunfei would deal with the situation as he would. But now that things were progressing aberrantly, Zheng Kai was beginning to worry that Bai Yunfei might kill these seven. It was an extreme reaction to a relatively minor case, and it wouldn't be favorable to Bai Yunfei either if he killed them. While not too obscenely strong, Cao Jun did have some backing of sorts that could go after Bai Yunfei.

.....

Bai Yunfei stepping on Cao Jun's arm and leg heavily enough to break them had been more than enough for Zheng Kai to bear.

Striding forward, he spoke up, “Yunfei, that should be enough. They’ve been properly punished, let’s forgive the—”

He hadn’t finished speaking when Bai Yunfei stared at him with the same expression on his face....

In the moment Bai Yunfei stared at him, Zheng Kai felt a sudden chill crawl up his spine, shutting him up instantly.

Right now, Bai Yunfei’s face had been freakishly monstrous. Not only was his left eye dyed with blood, but even his right eye was starting to grow scarlet as if he was transforming into a beast. There was still not even a hint of emotion on his face, he looked nothing more like a beast getting interrupted by someone as it was about to have its meal. He stared Zheng Kai down with a bone-chilling glare. “It’s my business, don’t interfere!!” He snapped.

“Ah—you got it!! I won’t, I’ll be good. You do you...” Zheng Kai obeyed with a ‘smile’. In that one moment he was snapped at, Zheng Kai felt as if he was about to be attacked. If he were to try and ‘speak’ again, Bai Yunfei would’ve used that strange soul armament in his hand to riddle him filled with holes....

Helpless to the situation now, Zheng Kai could only give a pitiful look at Cao Jun on the ground. “How unlucky of you, I can’t save you even if I try. May you have luck in saving yourself.”

He was in fact in shock at the situation. He hadn’t thought that the normally kind and harmless Bai Yunfei would become so terrifying like this at the flip of a switch.

Bai Yunfei snapped his head back, his right foot grinding back and forth on Cao Jun’s arm, creating a bone-chilling sound along with the howls of pain again from Cao Jun. In his actions, it seemed as if....Bai Yunfei was taking enjoyment at this situation!!

“You made my student cry, so, I’ll take your eyes in return!!”

A freakish smile came onto Bai Yunfei’s face. The words he spoke had immediately bled any remaining blood from Cao Jun’s face,

prompting him to plead with all his might, “Pl—please don’t! Please...please for—forgive me. I was wrong! I was wrong!! Please....please forgive me....please...”

But his pleas fell on deaf ears. Bai Yunfei’s right hand stretched forward with his index finger burning slightly with elemental fire at the tip. Extending towards Cao Jun’s right eye, Bai Yunfei was prepared to stab and burn out the eyeball!

“In—instructor Bai....”

Suddenly, a meek voice called out to Bai Yunfei, somehow stopping Bai Yunfei for a moment.

He looked up. Fang Tianmeng, who had been hiding for most of the time, was now slowly making her way forward, her face looking deathly white from her terror. Staring fearfully at Bai Yunfei, she couldn’t help but yelp again in fright when met with a cold stare from him. She stepped back twice, her delicate body trembling mightily as if she had just seen a ghost.

But she didn’t shy away from him completely. Somehow managing to overcome her fear, she raised her head up to look back at him. “Instructor Bai....you...you can let him go....it’s...it’s enough already....”

She was a sensible person. She knew that if news of this event were to get out, Bai Yunfei would get into a great deal of trouble. So even if she was terrified out of her mind, she just had to stop him.

Bai Yunfei stared emotionlessly at her for two seconds. As if suddenly realizing something. He was doing this for his student after all, and if she was saying it was enough, then shouldn’t he stop?

Confusion and hesitation ran across Bai Yunfei’s eyes for a moment. Emotions ran conflict with his mind as he tried to think about the situation. Pained, Bai Yunfei’s body began to shake, his

feet taking several steps away from Cao Jun. Shaking his head, Bai Yunfei looked like he was starting to turn back to normal if his eyes were any indication.

Kneading his eyes as if to try and remove the remaining blood, Bai Yunfei blinked several times, revealing mostly-white eyeballs rather than scarlet. For what seemed to be the first time, he looked around himself and then to Fang Tianmeng, “Fang Tianmeng....what’s wrong?”

The fear in her eyes had been a very noticeable hint to Bai Yunfei that something was wrong. He was curious and confused on what was going on. He turned around even more, only to realize that everyone here was staring at him with similar fear.

He looked to Cao Jun and his miserable group of companions in mute shock. Narrowing his eyes as the realizations started to hit him, Bai Yunfei slapped his head as if in pain, “I....remember. I did all of this....I....”

He was completely stunned at his actions. While it was true he did these things, Bai Yunfei didn’t want to believe it. Though he did these things, Bai Yunfei had only wanted to teach them a small lesson, not do something so drastic to a degree like this. And if his memory served him correctly, then with the murderous intent that had been in him, Bai Yunfei really was on the verge of killing the group!!

“I....what have I done?!”

Rubbing at his temples in his incredulity, Bai Yunfei began to feel like hundreds or even thousands of insects were starting to wriggle around his head. Even in the depths of his soul, he was starting to feel like something was moving ‘away’ from him, something strange that was gradually starting to disappear.

“Whew....Yunfei, you’re finally back!!”

Just then, the relieved voice of Zheng Kai spoke out, turning Bai

Yunfei in his direction. Zheng Kai was already walking towards him with a look of concern and worry for him.

“Zheng Kai, I feel a little strange....” Bai Yunfei spoke.

Zheng Kai waved his hand, “Let’s leave this place first. I’ll explain it to you later.”

“Yes....” Bai Yunfei nodded, taking one last quick look around before to Fang Tianmeng and the other young man with her, “Let us leave here.”

The worry and fear on Fang Tianmeng’s face gave way to relief when she saw that Bai Yunfei was back to normal. Nodding, she and Ye Yu followed Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai away from the alleyway.

Chapter 569: The Side-effects of Having One's Soul Damaged

Under the moonlight, a group of people walked down the street one after another. Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai led the front with the former dipping his head low as if he had just been caught doing harm onto a child. Behind him, Fang Tianmeng followed dutifully with Ye Yu next to her.

Bai Yunfei came to a stop when they reached the intersection of the road they were on. “Fang Tianmeng,” he smiled at her, “you should be able to return back to the academy from here by yourself.”

“Ah!” Having nearly run into his back with his sudden stop, Fang Tianmeng eeped in response. She had been afraid that Bai Yunfei would yell at her, so the fact that he said absolutely nothing at all about it surprised her. “Ye-yes....instructor Bai.”

Bai Yunfei nodded before turning to the other male with her, “Are you from the academy too? What’s your name?”

Somewhat fearful of Bai Yunfei, the young man managed to bow still under his gaze. “This student is named Ye Yu. Fifth year student of the fire section and once a classmate of Fang Tianmeng....”

“I see....” Bai Yunfei smiled, “And that person with you before, was that your friend?”

“Yes....” Ye Yu started to nod, but then thinking about that person brought forth a wave of repulsion and anger. He shook his head immediately, “No, he’s no friend of ours, we don’t need a cowardly person like him as our friend!”

Seeing the look of disappointment and sadness on Fang Tianmeng’s face, Bai Yunfei replied, “A situation like that always brings out a person’s true character. You won’t be dealing with

him in the future, I hope.”

Not willing to remark any more about the personal lives of his students, Bai Yunfei nodded towards Ye Yu, “It’s time for you to take Fang Tianmeng back, can you do that?”

Blinking twice, Ye Yu nodded his head, “I’ll definitely bring Tianmeng back safe and sound!!”

“It’s a crowded straight, what kind of danger is there? You sound as if you’re tasked with trying to cut open a mountain, haha....now hurry back home.”

.....

Bai Yunfei took Zheng Kai down another street once the two of them were alone on the way back to Zheng manor.

“Zheng Kai, do you know what happened?” Bai Yunfei asked him on the way.

“Hm? Know what?”

“Don’t play dumb,” Bai Yunfei ribbed him, “Can you not tell me about it? Me losing control was something definitely strange. What do you know about it?”

“Oh, that’s what you meant...” Zheng Kai ‘realized’. “Well....I know a little bit, but I thought you were fine before and didn’t really think much about grandfather’s words until now...”

“Zheng Tianya? What’d he say?

“Does it have to do with me being hit with the Soul Refining Palm?!”

“It does. It’s a side effect of having your soul being damaged. My grandfather said before that even with your insane recovery, your soul is still damage. It healing in less than a month is impossible. You losing emotional control was rather light this time, and it won’t impact your training. It won’t be long before you heal, so I wouldn’t worry much.”

“Will it?” Bai Yunfei muttered, “Is this the side effects? I see....Is that why I had such a strange feeling somewhere in my soul? Losing control over my emotions can be trouble, I have to make sure I don’t get too caught up in my emotions then....”

His Soul Sentinel Scarf had been healing his soul ever since he was hurt in the first place. But throughout that entire time, Bai Yunfei felt slightly ‘empty’ inside. As if there was a piece of his soul missing. Was it his ‘self-control’ then, that was gone?

With this small interaction just recently, Bai Yunfei felt it imperative not to have a repeat of that. There’d be trouble for sure if he killed someone by accident like this....

.....

It was with great concern that Bai Yunfei looked inwards onto his soul when he got back to Zheng manor. But he didn’t find any sort of ‘problem’. It was as if there wasn’t anything wrong, and his earlier slip up in emotional control had only been an illusion.

Fruitless in his search, Bai Yunfei gave up in favor to think about what the first prince had said to him earlier that day.

He had a good impression of Wu Ren, one that was even better than the one he had for the second prince, Wu Zhuo. From his talks alone, Bai Yunfei hadn’t the feeling that Wu Ren was trying to recruit him like Zheng Kai said. It seemed more like the prince was curious about Bai Yunfei and wanted to get to know him as a person. There hadn’t been any requests, and he instead got a place to live in without doing anything.

When he thought about the room, Bai Yunfei took out the slip of paper with the address written on it from his space ring. “North Seventh Street....that seems familiar, doesn’t it? I....I think that’s the street with the teahouse that uncle ‘Dan Teng’ owns, right?”

He couldn’t help but smile at the thought of the uncle he met back in Casino Jin. “What a person that uncle is. What was that

place called again? The ‘Soothing Heart’ teahouse? I should take a look there another time....”

Even though he had his own place to live in, Bai Yunfei still had to go over and take a look. If it was to his liking, then he’d go and live over there. Having a place to himself would be nice after all.

But after the things that happened today, Bai Yunfei couldn’t help but feel worried about the ‘side effects’ to his damaged soul and went into meditation.

.....

For that same reason, Bai Yunfei didn’t step out from his room the next few days to meditate and train instead. Whenever someone from a powerful family or group sent an invitation to him, the Zheng would decline on his behalf.

A few days later, Bai Yunfei left with Zheng Kai again to walk for Tianhun Academy. It was time for another class.

Zheng Kai was happy. Today, his family would no longer restrict him going in or out. Perhaps it was because of the fact that the unknown enemy wouldn’t be going after him again like before, but it seemed the other families had heard about it as well, and Huang Bin, Chen Qiantan, and the others were also ‘free’. So Zheng Kai planned that night to have a great feast planned for dinner.

This time, Bai Yunfei was now acquainted with the academy grounds and didn’t need Zheng Kai to guide him, letting his friend flirt with girls as he pleased. With his three soulbeasts, Bai Yunfei headed for where classes would be held—up in the Back Mountain.

But when he stepped beyond the gates to the back of the academy to get to the mountain, he was stopped by a person....

Chapter 570: The Dedication of Ye Ming

“It’s you?”

Bai Yunfei asked in slight surprise. He had actually been thinking about this person when he appeared in front of him.

It was the sixth year student from the lightning section, Ye Ming!

“Hello, instructor Bai.” Ye Ming bowed respectfully to Bai Yunfei.

“Were you waiting for me here?” Bai Yunfei asked, “Is there something you needed?”

Ye Ming was perhaps the one most interested in the art of crafting and the most studious of ones trying to learn the art. Bai Yunfei had a good impression of Ye Ming, but because of him being a lightning-type soul cultivator, Bai Yunfei felt it unfortunate he couldn’t learn the art of crafting.

Still looking as determined as ever, Ye Ming spoke to Bai Yunfei. “I wish to join the crafting class.”

It was with a sigh that Bai Yunfei replied to him, “I’ve said it before. Even if you’ve a dual affinity, your main element is lightning. If you try to offset that by learning the art of crafting, it’ll be trouble to yourself. You’re a Soul Exalt with just your control in elemental lightning aft—”

Bai Yunfei paused. He stared at Ye Ming with his eyes wide open in shock, “Wh—what have you done?!”

The reason why he was shocked was because that he just looked at Ye Ming’s strength. He was...a late-stage Soul Ancestor now!!”

He wasn’t hiding his strength, this was his true strength! A late-stage Soul Ancestor!

Just a week ago, Bai Yunfei distinctly recalled him being a mid-stage Soul Exalt! What in the world....?

Because of his shock, Bai Yunfei found himself scanning Ye Ming a little deeper with his soulsense. But afterwards, his expression grew even more shocked. “You....you’re... elemental energy, why is it...?”

He could clearly feel the elemental energy coming from Ye Ming’s body right now, and it was only elemental fire! He could hardly feel even a tidbit of the elemental lightning that had once been rampant before....

Bai Yunfei came to a startling realization, “Don’t tell me you’ve....”

Ye Ming nodded, his face betraying no emotions on it. “I did. I’ve destroyed my essence lightningseed and casted my elemental fireseed as the dominant one....instructor Bai, am I able to join the crafting class now?”

“.....”

Bai Yunfei didn’t know what to say to that. He was still in shock at what was going on, and neither could he believe his eyes—Ye Ming had....destroyed his own future in elemental lightning!!

To forsake lightning for fire!!

For the sake of being able to join the crafting class and learning the art of crafting, Ye Ming had destroyed his main essence seed, cutting his strength in half and turning himself towards the path of elemental fire!

It was a thought almost far too absurd to think about. Bai Yunfei himself could still hardly believe it. Ye Ming had been a mid-stage Soul Exalt! And now he was a late-stage Soul Ancestor! This was over a dozen years of effort and training down the drain!!

“Instructor Bai. Am I able to join your crafting class as I am now?”

Ye Ming’s repeated question snapped Bai Yunfei awake. “Why do you cling to the idea of joining the crafting class so much?”

“I want to learn how to craft.”

“What for?”

“I believe that the path of crafting will take me far beyond what the path of lightning can take me! I can walk farther, I can become stronger!”

“.....”

Bai Yunfei grew silent again. Ye Ming’s strong desire and belief had been rather overwhelming. Even he was starting to feel affected by it.

After a while, Bai Yunfei gave him a small smile. “Do you really want to join my class?”

Ye Ming’s eyes brightened. “I do!”

“Then follow me.”

He turned around to walk towards the mountain. Needless to say, he would allow Ye Ming to join his crafting class.

“Thank you instructor Bai for helping me!!” Ye Ming cried out in joy. Bowing as he spoke, he quickly followed after Bai Yunfei.

.....

Soon enough, the two arrived at the top of the mountain where classes would be held.

Earlier when they were scaling the mountain, Bai Yunfei felt the auras of the other students already there talking about something.

Bai Yunfei’s appearance caught their attention straight away. Turning towards him to bow, they spoke, “Hello instructor Bai.”

Bai Yunfei nodded in return. “Is everyone prepared yet?”

Doing a head count, he noticed something was off, “Oh, Mo Wanxia isn’t here yet?”

Mo Chen answered on behalf of the students, “Senior Mo was here a while ago, but I think she said she had to go bring someone

somewhere.”

“I see.” Bai Yunfei nodded. He turned to the rest of the class, “Everyone, I’d like to introduce our newest student.”

He pointed to Ye Ming next to him, “This is Ye Ming. He’ll be a student of this class from now on.”

Ye Ming took a step forward to give a rather uneasy smile, as if unaccustomed to such. “Ye Ming. Please treat me kindly.”

Everyone looked at him incredulously, they hadn’t thought they’d be getting a new ‘classmate’. But the one who looked the most incredulous had been Ouyang Yuyun on the right, “Eh? Ye Ming? Aren’t you the Ye Ming from the sixth year lightning section?”

“That is I.”

“Lighting section?”

Everyone repeated the last two words Ouyang Yuyun said—lighting section? How was he able to join the crafting class?

Fang Yong was the next to spot the oddity, “Sixth year lightning section? Why is it that when I look at brother Ye Ming’s strength....”

Ouyang Yuyun answered for Fang Yong, “Late-stage Soul Ancestor?! How is that possible...?”

“For the sake of joining the crafting class, Ye Ming sacrificed his future in elemental lightning to learn elemental fire. For that reason, I’ve decided to allow him to join our class. I hope you will all get along with him.” Bai Yunfei smiled.

Everyone only looked even more surprised at Ye Ming at that.

Mo Chen was the first to act. Rushing to Ye Ming, he spoke up with a tone of admiration, “Big brother Ye Ming, did you really do something as crazy as that?! Gods...that’s unbelievable! Why did you...”

.....

The other students began to talk it up with Ye Ming, leaving Bai Yunfei to smile and nod. Over the short few days the students of the crafting class had been with each other, they had already formed a decent relationship with each other. So Bai Yunfei was hoping that Ye Ming would find himself quickly integrated into the class without any trouble.

At that moment, Bai Yunfei felt two more auras come up the mountain towards them. Looking down, he saw a figure in red and a figure in white quickly come scaling up the mountain.

One of the two was Mo Wanxia, but why was there another person with her?

Squinting his eyes, Bai Yunfei reared his head back in surprise when he realized who the other person was. “Him?! What’s he doing here?”

Chapter 571: A Crafting Class of Ten

“Whoosh!!”

A figure in fiery red robes flew onto the top of the mountain, the red fabric on her shining like the sun and her black hair swaying softly. It was Mo Wanxia.

“Wanxia, hold on! I can’t catch up with you!!”

Another more exasperated voice called out to her from behind, sounding tired as if exhausted trying to catch up with her.

The voice sounded...familiar.

A flash of white from the man’s robes were seen before he came to a stop on top of the mountain, startling everyone when they saw who it was.

The fourth prince, Wu Yang!!

With complete disregard for him, Mo Wanxia nodded in greeting to Bai Yunfei. Giving a strange glance at Ye Ming, she walked to stand besides Fang Tianmeng and Fang Yong and started to ask them what was going on.

Now that he was here, Wu Yang didn’t chase after Mo Wanxia again. Instead, he glanced to Bai Yunfei with a rather embarrassed grin on his face instead of anger like before. “Er....well....hehe, hello instructor Bai...”

“Er...

“Fourth Prince?” Bai Yunfei replied, “What are you doing here, actually—what did you do just call me?”

“Instructor Bai....I’ll be a student of this class from now on, hehe. I hope you’ll look after me, instructor Bai. The things I did before was wrong of me, please forgive this student for that....”

“.....”

Bai Yunfei's eyes flew open, as if feeling as though he was dreaming—hadn't this fourth prince gone through an extremely turnabout personality change?!

"Hold on, what did you say?! You're joining the class?!" Bai Yunfei cried out.

Wu Yang nodded. "Yes, hehe....Chairman Mo Huangkong has already cleared it. I'll be in this class starting today."

"I...." Bai Yunfei didn't know what to say. From Wu Yang, he looked to Mo Wanxia next, "What's the meaning of this?"

Mo Wanxia casted a glance at Wu Yang with bitter disdain, "He kept begging my grandfather to join, and it worked after enough times."

"It was that simple?"

"It was."

"....."

Looking back to the still smiling Wu Yang, Bai Yunfei asked, "Is it okay for a prince to be studying here?"

"What's wrong with it? My older brother was a student here too you know!! My older brother agreed to this idea too."

"Older brother? The First Prince?"

Wu Yang nodded, "Yes. You talked with him before."

Bai Yunfei realized then—this was what Wu Ren meant to him the other day!

The fourth prince, Wu Yang, was going to join the crafting class. And with the permission of the first prince AND the chairman....this was utterly unbelievable!!

But unbelievable or not, this was the reality in front of him. He didn't want to teach him, but if the chairman had agreed to it, Bai Yunfei wouldn't fight the decision.

.....

Bai Yunfei nodded his head in the end, helpless to the situation in front of him, “Alright then. You’ll be a student under my tutelage. I hope you’ll get along with the other students.”

Please don’t be a ‘problem student’!

Was what Bai Yunfei was sighing to himself.

“Hehe, I will. Don’t worry, instructor Bai, I’ll get along with everyone for sure!” Bai Yunfei nodded his head, his eyes already looking to Mo Wanxia. The absolute adoration in them was completely genuine and made Bai Yunfei wonder—what was it about her that he liked so much?

“Alright then! Everyone, I’d like to make a few announcements then.”

Bai Yunfei clapped his hands to get the attention of the other.

“We have two new students among us today for our crafting class. I hope that we’ll all get along with each other and help each other in the future.” He turned to Ye Ming and Wu Yang, “You two just joined, so I’ll teach you two the basics of the art of crafting. You might be behind by a day, but I’m sure with your talents, you two will be able to catch up very quickly.”

He pointed to the mountain side next, “Furthermore, you’ll need to dig a cave in the cliff, that’ll be where you’ll be crafting.”

Wu Yang and Ye Ming stared at the strange caves in the cliff; was that really the ‘classroom’ they’d be learning from?!

Unable to hold himself silent any longer, Mo Chen finally asked, “Instructor Bai....are you going to talk about the assignment from last time? Who won?”

Everyone’s eyes brightened when Mo Chen spoke. Like him, they were all excited to hear the results, though Wu Yang and Ye Ming both looked confused.

Bai Yunfei smiled. “Very well, I’ll announce the results of that now. In general....not bad. Your talents for crafting isn’t bad, I look forward to seeing what you can all do in the future.”

He shook his hand to take out a golden longsword. The very same longsword he offered as a prize before. “As for this prize....Ye Ming wins it, haha.”

He tossed the blade at the said person, prompting Ye Ming to catch it into his hands.

“Ah?!”

Mo Chen cried out in dismay, the other students all voicing similar lines of surprise while Ye Ming and Wu Yang still standing there in confusion.

“Instructor Bai, this...”

“Do you remember that book you gave me the last time? That was the book I wanted from my students as their first assignment. And this soul armament is a reward for having the best book written.”

He turned back to Mo Chen, “Ye Ming gave me a book that I felt was very insightful compared to the rest of the novels. I evaluated all of the books given to me, and they were all individually good, so don’t feel discouraged. I believe that in time, you’ll all be able to craft any soul armament you’d want. You won’t need to care about such a small prize like this one...”

A small prize?? It was a heaven-tier soul armament!! Everyone wanted to scream out. They all looked to Ye Ming with looks of jealousy.

To the side, Wu Yang was slowly starting to get the current situation and smiled. Bai Yunfei was a special person indeed, gifting a heaven-tier soul armament as if it was nothing? Then he remembered the heaven-tier soul armaments he had lost to Bai Yunfei and felt a sharp pain in his heart from the sadness.

.....

After that, Bai Yunfei took a look at the progress the students had over what they learned from the Art of Firebending. Most of what he saw was very satisfactory to him, in some cases, they were surprising even. They deserved to be called geniuses.

He had originally planned on teaching them the actual crafting process today, but because of the inclusion of Wu Yang and Ye Ming, he had to change his plans. First, he had the students explain to him what they learned from the Art of Firebending to the two new students before having them doing some more self-study in their caves.

Bai Yunfei took the time to head to the ‘warehouse’ to restock on supplies and cauldrons for Wu Yang and Ye Ming. The cauldrons the academy had given the students had all been high-earth tier, much to Bai Yunfei’s surprise.

Now having the cauldrons for the two, Bai Yunfei headed back to the mountain just in time to see the students still giving ‘pointers’ of the Art of Firebending to the two. Waiting for them to be done, Bai Yunfei leapt to the top of the cliff and looked over to the other side of the mountain.

Looking beyond to the other side, Bai Yunfei was surprised at what he saw.

An endless ocean of trees with no end in sight!!

In this part of the forest, Bai Yunfei felt more auras of soulbeasts than there were stars in the sky. If not for the sight of the academy behind him, Bai Yunfei would’ve thought he was back in the Soulbeast Forest.

“They say there’s even a few class seven soulbeasts here, wonder if that’s true....” Bai Yunfei muttered to himself.

In the moment he was looking over the mountain, Bai Yunfei felt a few weak sources of soulforce down below.

“Eh? A battle?”

Chapter 572: Training Forest

A single mountain stood in the middle of Tianhun Academy and the giant forest behind it. Plenty of ‘entrapped’ soulbeasts lived within the forest and served as a way for the students of the academy to train in.

As such, this forest was usually dubbed the ‘Training Forest’.

In the hearts of many of the students, the Training Forest was a very mysterious place. Only fifth years—Soul Ancestors—had the prerequisites to enter the Training Forest. All of the lesser years of the academy were prohibited from entering, so they had only rumors of what it was like and feared it.

Even the fifth years weren’t allowed entry into the forest so easily. They could only go in at certain times or with an instructor. Experiencing the ‘dangers’ here and the primal nature of the beasts here was good for many of the students to learn from when they fought the soulbeasts.

In general, it was pretty hard for most students to come across a potentially dangerous situation. But that wasn’t always for sure. In the many many years of history, there had been plenty of accidents that happened within the forest.

.....

“Hissss!!!”

A snake hissed from somewhere in the forest. Normally, the hissing of a snake would be quite low and deep, but this one was very high-pitched and resounding for kilometers around.

This place was a small lake within the forest. Only two hundred meters in length, countless trees covered the lake from above. What normally should’ve been very clear waters had been instead churning wildly with violet light. With the banging going around, there was definitely a violent battle taking place.

In the middle of the lush trees and foliage, a hundred meter long snake the width of a vat of water arose from the lake. Elemental water rose up with it like a barrier, and with a hiss, another ball of water was spat out.

A peak late-stage class five soulbeast, a two-tailed watersnake!!

Around the giant snake, the figure of five flitted around it like butterflies in the air. They were all water-type soul cultivators: two of them were male and the other three female. They were in their twenties around and were averaged to be around mid-stage Soul Ancestors. With their ability to stand on top of the lake by surrounding themselves with elemental water, they were able to fight the giant snake.

“Xiao Yun, pay attention to the snake’s tail attack! Zhao Yu, you and Cui Ming try to catch the watersnake’s attention! Xiao Lan and Xiao Cui will try to immobilize it!”

A voice called out from a nearby cliff to point at the giant snake the five were fighting. A sixth person stood there, a beautiful woman in thirties.

She wasn’t taking part in the battle. She was only there to give guidance to the five. With how her lips were curled slightly upwards in a smile, she was clearly not worried about the five being in danger. A blue-colored squirrel with a fluffy tail sat on on her shoulder, its tail twitching every so often. With how its eyes were shining bright, the squirrel looked ready to leap into battle as well.

.....

This group was one of the groups there in the forest to train.

They were clearly fifth year students from the water section. And the woman standing on the cliff was the instructor here to help them train.

Under her guidance, the five students were fighting as one

cohesive unit with a soulbeast that was stronger than any individual one of them. And they were even winning!

.....

A short moment later, the two-tailed watersnake let loose a shrill cry before it toppled to the ground and moved no more. But it wasn't dead—it was just unconscious.

The woman there smiled when she watched the snake fall. "Haha, not bad. Let's take a breather."

The five returned to the cliff, their faces all weary, but filled with satisfaction.

"Very good. You all did well. I hope this will be a good learning experience for you all. You've all gone from being flustered with a soulbeast the same level of you to being able to win against a soulbeast even stronger than you all. Not bad at all...."

Not even bothering to stifle her praise for the five students, the young woman continued to speak, "But there were a few places of possible improvements. Some of you used a soul skill when it wasn't optimal, and there were a few times you wasted more soulforce than you needed. Xiao Yun, I noticed when you were attacking the snake's tail from the left, you should've...."

The woman continued to give a post-battle analysis to the five students, breaking down areas for improvement for the five students to listen intently.

After a few minutes, the woman clapped her hands, "Well, this should conclude our time here in the forest. This should be long enough, we can return to the academy today."

As they were preparing to leave, the blue squirrel on the young woman's shoulder perked its ears. Standing up, it began to squeak incessantly!

And at the same time, the ground beneath them started to tremble!

“Boom!!”

Stone and dust started to kick up into the air, and right under the amazed eyes of the six people there, a hole opened up on the cliff there. A claw shaped like a drill extended out from the ground before shooting out towards the watersnake. In one fluid motion, it extracted the two-tailed bluesnake’s soulgem!

And just like that, the two-tailed bluesnake died!

The soil around the dry land started to churn before a lobster-shaped soulbeasts the size of bisons came erupting from the ground!!

“Giant underground lobsters! And late-stage class six!! We have to leave right away!”

The woman cried out. Revealing herself as a mid-stage Soul Exalt, she leapt forward with her squirrel, who flew into the air to grow several times its normal size. Falling back down to the ground with the power of a mid-stage class six, it gave a menacing cry.

Stunned by the arrival of the three soulbeasts, it took a while before any of the five could respond. It was the woman who snapped out of it first. Flustered, she took one quick look at the two giant pincers before taking off towards the academy.

A giant underground lobster was a earth-type soulbeast that specialized in hiding underground and was one of the more aggressive ones!

Like the Soulbeast Forest, the Training Forest was split into several areas. This area the six were in was a gathering place for class five soulbeasts, and very rarely did any class six soulbeasts come by. Today it seemed, was an unlucky day for the six if a late-stage class six soulbeast was here now.

“Ah!!”

“Xiao Yun!!”

Having been caught up with trying to fight the lobster in front of it, the instructor suddenly heard several cries from behind. Whirling around, she saw yet another giant underground lobster blocking the way of the five students!

There were two of them!!

The lobster's right pincer had been raised in the air before the five students cried out, and with frightening speed, the pincer came down onto the young girl at the front!

The other four students had been knocked a few meters back the upturned dirt when the lobster emerged from the ground. With the distance increased between them and the fifth, none of the students were close enough to come to her rescue in time!

“Chirp!!!”

At that moment, there was a loud chirp before a giant bird draped in purple light came shooting down like a meteorite. Latching onto the lobster's pincer with its clawed feet, the bird took back off into the air. There was a loud tumultuous sound when the giant lobster was forcibly dislodged from the earth and sent airborne by the claws of the giant bird!!

The bird took the giant lobster a hundred meters up into the air before spinning around. Picking up rotational speed, the bird let go of the pincer, allowing the lobster to go flying off into the distance and disappearing from sight....

“Houu!!!”

Not even seconds after the bird appeared, a loud draconic-sounding voice erupted through the air along with the exploding of ground. A nearby hill shook slightly before a giant figure leapt up into the air. It remained there for several seconds before smashing back down into the ground onto the remaining lobster there!

The instructor, who had been looking in the direction of her students at first, turned back around to where the giant figure

landed. The only thing she could see was a terrifyingly large blue-colored soulbeast pressed into the ground where the lobster had been. It opened its jaws wide and then clamped down onto the lobster's head!

Then under the stupefied eyes of everyone there, they watched as the late-stage class six soulbeast was eaten by the new soulbeast in three bites....

Chapter 573: Shen Yirou

All six of the people there were stunned into inaction by the sudden disappearance of two soulbeasts and the arrival of another two. It wasn't until the blue-eyes wyrm finished eating off the lobster when the instructor finally realized the danger of the situation. With a trembling body and widened eyes, she took several frantic steps back, "We have to go now!"

Though the danger that was the giant underground lobster was gone, an even great danger was no present in front of them. Even if they disregarded the giant bird that had just been there a moment ago, there was still the giant soulbeast in front of them, the soulbeast strong enough to kill a late-stage class six soulbeast in a matter of seconds! And furthermore....this type of soulbeast was most definitely not one that was friendly with humans.

"You idiot! I told you to help them out, not kill the soulbeasts!! Didn't I tell you we can't kill any soulbeasts as we please here?!"

A furious erupted in the direction from behind the six. Turning their heads, the six saw a young man in gray come floating down to the ground, an adorable white dog following behind him.

And to the absolute shock of everyone there, the terrifying soulbeast in front of them started to....whimper. Was it....feeling abashed by the rebukes of this person?

Though slightly abashed, the blue-eyes wyrm still managed to eat the last of the lobster's tail. With a gulp, it swallowed the rest of it down in guilty pleasure. Giving a small whimper, the wyrm downsized in a flash of blue light.

The young man still in the air above smiled softly at the wyrm's response. "Fine, I know you're a soulbeast, eating the weak is a rule of your kind. I'll forgive you just this once since you've never eaten another soulbeast before, but remember this isn't the Soulbeast Forest. If you keep eating soulbeasts here, don't blame

me if chairman Mo flays you alive.”

The small blue-eyes wyrm cried out twice again in happiness, as if to say, “Don’t worry, I’ll be more careful in the future.”

“.....”

Everyone could only stare in dumfounded shock.

Xiao Qi returned to the site by the time Bai Yunfei floated down to the ground. Looking at everyone, Bai Yunfei smiled, “Is everyone alright?”

“Uh....” For a while, no one said anything.

So the two new soulbeasts that fought off the two lobsters belonged to this guy! In other words, this person came by just in time to save them from danger.

“Whew....” The Soul Exalt instructor sighed in relief, her face flushing red with emotion.

She wasn’t turning red because she was suddenly feeling shy, it was because of the situation she had just been in.

Relaxing somewhat, the young woman first made sure to check up on her students and see if they were alright. After making sure every single one of her students were alright, she finally started to calm down.

She stood up to bow towards Bai Yunfei, “Thank you for saving us, sire. I really cannot thank you enough.”

“Haha, no worries. It wasn’t anything much, are you a training group from the academy?”

“Correct. I am the fifth year water instructor for the class two of the water section, Shen Yirou. These are my students. We entered the forest ten days ago and were just planning to return to the academy when the lobsters attacked us. If not for your helping hand, sire, we would have been in great danger. Might I ask of your name?”

“I am Bai Yunfei. Instructor of the crafting class. Pleased to meet you, miss Shen.”

“Bai Yunfei? The crafting class?!” Shen Yirou’s eyes flickered back up to look at him for confirmation, “You’re the instructor for the crafting class?!”

Bai Yunfei seemed a little embarrassed when he nodded. “I am.”

His ‘shyness’ was surprising to Shen Yirou, who noted it with a raised eyebrow. Covering her mouth with one hand, she smiled, “I heard that the instructor for the crafting class was young, but I didn’t think it was true until now. I had nearly thought you were a student!”

“Uh....” Bai Yunfei was even more embarrassed now. He looked a little distracted right now.

Now that there was nothing going on, Bai Yunfei could take a good look at this woman in front of him. She wore robes as blue as the water that seemed to shimmer in the light. Her hair reached all the way past her waist. Gentle and graceful, she stood tall and confident with an allure greater than that of Mo Wanxia by a bit. Her skin looked very bright and supple while also adding to her mature charm. Overall, she had the grace of a young woman born from a rich family whose frowns or smiles could equally move a man. And her ample bosom was something that undoubtedly followed the dreams of every man that saw them....

Right now, Bai Yunfei was feeling slightly at a loss for words....

In the moment he was looking at Shen Yirou, the Charm Bracelet on his left arm gave a nearly undetectable pulse of light from it, his eyes also having a very faint glow of pink in them....

The fact that the ‘rumored’ Bai Yunfei was acting like a shy little brother was a little funny to Shen Yirou. But then when she realized that he was staring fixedly at her, his eyes pointing slightly towards her chest, she gave a slight pause. Resentment

began to fill up in her mind, but when she was about to say something, the pink glow in Bai Yunfei's eyes met with her own eyes.

Shen Yirou froze when their eyes met. Her heart started to beat a little faster as a mysterious feeling entered her mind out of nowhere. Bai Yunfei's eyes felt like a bottomless abyss in which she couldn't help but feel trapped in.

"Chii chii!!"

Suddenly, Shen Yirou felt something leap onto her right shoulder. Looking down, she saw her little squirrel back, though it was giving a strange sound as if to call her.

Jolting back to awareness, Shen Yirou suddenly felt her cheeks heat up with a red hue. She didn't know what had happened to her, and it seemed that she had even temporarily forgotten about her wanting to reprimand Bai Yunfei for his manners. "Yo—you...."

Her words seemed to have startled Bai Yunfei awake as well, though his reaction was a lot bigger than hers, and a lot more strange.

His entire body had quivered in horror as if realizing something, his panic reaching even his eyes. Taking two small steps backwards, he bowed his head and clutched at his left wrist with his right with gloom.

It took a moment under Shen Yirou's suspicious gaze before Bai Yunfei shook his head, as if trying to shake away whatever strange thoughts he was having. Bai Yunfei looked back up, an apologetic look on his face. "I....miss Shen, I....I apologize for my lack of manners just now. I had no ill intentions from my earlier actions. Miss Shen was just too beautiful that I lost myself."

His sudden apology and actions had been a little surprising to her, but she couldn't say she disliked hearing the praise. Her anger

for Bai Yunfei's lack of manners a second ago decreased by just a small amount.

But still. Her impression of Bai Yunfei had dropped for sure.

Both persons were looking quite embarrassed by what had just happened, and so neither spoke for a while.

"Miss Shen, this one will be returning to his class now. If you are heading back to the academy, why not join me?"

The usual graceful look on her face returned to Shen Yirou. "That will do." She nodded.

She turned back to the five students behind her and spoke, "If we're all ready, we can return to the academy now."

The five students had recognized Bai Yunfei when he first appeared so the five students had been talking to themselves. Some of them looked to Bai Yunfei with admiration as they talked, but when Shen Yirou started to talk to them, they all snapped to attention and prepared to leave.

.....

Bai Yunfei didn't say much to Shen Yirou on the way back, perhaps as if in fear that he was afraid of her misunderstanding his intentions for something else. Instead, paid attention to the students and asked their questions succinctly.

It didn't take long for the group to reach the edge of the forest and back onto the top of the mountain. A short walk later, the academy was already back in sight.

Bai Yunfei tilted his head to look at the mountain peak, "Miss Shen, my class sis waiting for me up here. This is where we'll part then." He spoke to her.

"Ah?" Shen Yirou followed his gaze up to where several crafting caves were in sight, "This....this is where your class is?"

She and her group had been in the forest before the caves were

even made, so she had no idea that Bai Yunfei even made the caves to begin with.

“Haha, yes. Due to the special nature of crafting, I had to find a place suitable for classes to be had.”

Shen Yirou gave him a strange look for a moment before smiling. “Ah, so I see. Then I won’t take up any more of your time, instructor Bai, we’ll be heading back to the academy first.”

“Then farewell.” Bai Yunfei nodded before making his way up the mountain.

“This Bai Yunfei is....a very strange person...” Shen Yirou’s eyes flashed mysteriously as she spoke to herself. Turning around, she spoke to her students, “Let’s get going then.”

.....

Leaping back onto the platform at the top of the mountain, Bai Yunfei saw most of the students standing near the edge to peer down over to where Shen Yirou and her students had been.

“What’s wrong?” Bai Yunfei asked, “Is everyone done?”

“Big brother Ye Ming and the Fourth Prince both learn really fast. They’ve already memorized the Art of Firebending. We even dug two new caves for them.” Mo Chen nodded to report to Bai Yunfei, but afterwards, he asked, “Instructor Bai, where did you go just now? And how did you come back with instructor Shen?”

“Hm?” Bai Yunfei replied, “You know Shen Yirou? I just went into the Training Forest and met her just now. We came back together afterwards, what of it?”

“Oh, nothing. Nothing at all.” Mo Chen laughed. “I just didn’t think instructor Bai would meet instructor Shen so quickly....She’s the most beautiful instructor in the academy! Plenty of instructors and students see her as a goddess.”

“Oh? Really now?” Bai Yunfei blinked. He didn’t know Shen

Yirou was that well-received? But that didn't matter to him in any case. "Anyways, if everyone is prepared, then we'll begin class now."

The students answered affirmatively. With their answers, Bai Yunfei set about to walk towards the crafting cave, but then he saw Wu Yang standing carefully behind him, a strange look on his face. "Instructor Bai, I feel that I need to warn you, avoid going after Shen Yirou in any way."

"What?" Bai Yunfei paused to look at him, not sure if he should laugh or cry, "Go after Shen Yirou?What do you mean by that?"

"If you didn't, that's good. Shen Yirou won't mind if you just think she's pretty, but you can't have any 'feelings' for her, because...."

Wu Yang's eyes flickered up to meet Bai Yunfei's, "She's with my second brother!"

Chapter 574: Concern

“The second prince?!”

Bai Yunfei exclaimed in surprise. “Shen Yirou is the wife of the second prince?!”

“Wife?” Wu Yang laughed at his reaction, “No, that’s not it. She hasn’t become his wife yet. But I don’t think they’re too far away from being married. My second brother loves her, and he’s never felt so strongly about any other girl before Shen Yirou. They might have a lukewarm relationship right now since my brother hasn’t initiated anything, but everyone knows sooner or later Shen Yirou will marry him.”

“Oh? Is that so?” Bai Yunfei remarked, he hadn’t thought that Shen Yirou was in fact the person Wu Zhuo took a liking to. And....they had such a ‘pure’ love like that? To have a woman like Shen Yirou tolerate such a type of relationship like that while having such thoughts. It seemed that Wu Zhuo was a romantic.

Bai Yunfei walked into one of the craftings caves with his students gathered in front of him. He took out the Lightningfire Cauldron and placed it onto the ground. “Today I’ll be demonstrating and explaining the crafting process with the most basic of fire manipulation. With your talent and control over elemental fire, I’m sure you’ll all pick it up fairly quick. Your cauldrons aren’t half-bad either. Pay attention to what I say, if you all pick up on my words, you’ll all be able to quickly learn how to craft a soul armament. They’ll be low in quality at first, but that’s just how it is. Crafting higher grade soul armaments will come later.”

With another wave of his hand, Bai Yunfei had several dozen materials float out from his ring and in front of him. “Today I’ll craft a few low-human tier soul armaments. Take a good look....”

With the basics of how to craft already instilled in the students, it

didn't take much for Bai Yunfei teach them the harder things. He was teaching geniuses that soaked up everything he said like a sponge, making it even easier to teach. In time, Bai Yunfei's crafting cave was filled with warmth from the elemental fire dancing in his Lightningfire Cauldron. With each step on the way, Bai Yunfei explained the finer details of it and in great clarity.

The sun was starting to descend from the skies when Bai Yunfei finished up class. How fast time had gone by....

.....

After finishing up class for the day, Bai Yunfei reminded them about class next week and told each of the students to go back and think over what they had learned today.

Later that night, he, Zheng Kai, Huang Bin, and others all met together to celebrate their newfound freedom. Everyone was excited and merry as they ate and drank in the Hundred Aliments, and it took a good while before Bai Yunfei and them left the establishment to return home slightly intoxicated, even with their soulforce aiding their bodies.

Since this group of four was the first he met in his age group in the Capital, and that he was already good friends with Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei found it easy to talk with the other three and fit in with the group. Knowing a bit more about them as a person, Bai Yunfei was able to become friends with each of the four. And even for someone who usually disliked drinking wine like Bai Yunfei found himself drinking more than usual today.

After they returned to Zheng manor, Bai Yunfei had the servants bring up some hot water for him to take a bath in. After his bath, he reclined back onto his soft bed. Rather than train, Bai Yunfei opted to stare up at the ceiling in thought.

He was thinking about the situation today with Shen Yirou.

It wasn't as though the beautiful woman had been constantly

stuck in his mind. What really was stuck was the moment where he ‘lost’ himself.

“At that time.....the thought I shouldn’t have been thinking came out.....it felt like I couldn’t stifle my emotions.”

He couldn’t deny it. Back when he first met Shen Yirou, he had a thought he normally wouldn’t have. Although she was amazingly beautiful, the thoughts that popped into Bai Yunfei’s mind had occurred without him wanting it to as if he was being tempted by an outside force.

The reason why such a situation occurred was simple to Bai Yunfei. It was because of his damaged soul.

The inability to control his emotions wasn’t limited to just anger. The other emotions would be affected as well.

“Seems like this will be an even bigger problem than I originally thought! I have to hurry and fix this, or else it’ll be like living everyday with a bomb. I won’t ever know when it’ll go off, and if I’m not careful, then I’ll make a mistake that I can’t fix!”

Bai Yunfei raised his left hand to look at the Charm Bracelet on his wrist in concern.

Today’s events had saw to him accidentally activating the Charm Bracelet to add to his charm and almost influenced Shen Yirou to a certain degree. If not for her willpower, there might’ve been a great deal of trouble.

The ‘Charm’ attribute that the Charm Bracelet bolstered was something Bai Yunfei now had a good deal of understanding about. The ‘Charm’ it talked about could be made equivalent to ‘attractiveness’, or ‘personality’. And from today’s events, it had a strange effect on those of the opposite gender.

If he activated the Charm Bracelet, then his appeal would be enhanced to those of the opposite sex. They would have a better opinion of him and potentially lower their guard.

For many males, this would've been a 'power' they all yearned for. But for Bai Yunfei, he felt this was a very troublesome side-effect and intentionally blocked off the bracelet ability to strengthen his charm.

He had already had one person in his heart. He didn't need to have any other emotions for anyone else.

Bai Yunfei's eyes flickered to the Yun's Soul Ring at the very thought of the said person, a faint smile appearing on his face. He could almost feel her warm presence standing in front of her, giving him a sense of calm and nerves both at the same time.

It had been a great deal of time since he left the Crafting School....how was she now?

.....

The next morning, Bai Yunfei decided to go look at the place the First Prince gave him. Calling up Zheng Kai, the both of them went over to it on North Seventh Street.

With the address given to them by the prince, it didn't take long for the two to arrive at the right place. Looking up, the two of them were stunned by the sight in front of them....

According to what Wu Ren had said, the house he gave Bai Yunfei wouldn't be 'very big', but at a glance....his description was extremely modest!

Standing in front of Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai was a large manor with gates that was no different to the ones that might stand in front of the more richer families. All that was missing here were the two stone lions that'd normally stand guard over other homes. The walls that extended away from the gates reached another hundred or so meters before leading inwards. Within the walls, five separate buildings stood inside with a courtyard.

Based on the area and buildings alone, a dozen people could live here without a problem.

“He’s definitely the First Prince if he can gift a house like this so easily.” Bai Yunfei shook his head. Now that he thought about it, living in a place as big as this by himself seemed like a bit of a waste. And the other problem was....with such a huge area to this place, it’d make cleaning a pain!

He didn’t want to find any servants at first, but it really did seem necessary now to find a few servants and maids to come clean this place.

Noticing the look on his face, Zheng Kai laughed, “Haha, Yunfei. Why don’t I hire some servants for you. They can help you clean so you don’t have to.”

Bai Yunfei nodded, “In that case....thank you.”

The two walked into the place to give it a look around. With a promise from Zheng Kai to have some people come over and clean the place, he and Bai Yunfei left the premises to walk around the street.

Bai Yunfei came to a stop a short while later to point at a building not too far away, “Eh? Isn’t that the teahouse of uncle Dan Teng?”

At the corner of the street stood a simple two-storied building. On the top of the building was a name plate with three words carved into it.

Soothing Heart Teahouse

Chapter 575: Soothing Heart Teahouse

Bai Yunfei remembered Zheng Kai saying before the Soothing Heart Teahouse was a rather well-known place in the northern parts of the Capital. He just didn't think that it'd be such an ordinary looking little teahouse. It looked a little worse for wear actually. Compared to the wealthy area of the Capital, this teahouse looked like it was an 'inferior' place to be.

Noticing the building Bai Yunfei was pointing at, Zheng Kai looked slightly taken aback as well. "Eh? That's the Soothing Heart? It's that small?"

"What? You've never been here?"

"I haven't. I only heard about it from other people. You know I don't care much for drinking tea, I like wine more...."

"Well....now that we're here, we might as well go in and sit down." Bai Yunfei laughed. With Zheng Kai, he walked towards the teahouse. He had heard several things about the teahouse before and the mysterious effects of the tea there. He had to admit, he was slightly curious. And with his soul currently in some trouble, Bai Yunfei decided to give it a try to 'soothe' his heart.

The two walked into the teahouse, Bai Yunfei looking around the place. The first thing he saw was a rather large hall with several tables there. Four of which were already seated with customers drinking by themselves. In front of their tables sat a tea kettle and cup, each of the patrons taking slow sips from their cups pensively.

It was unnaturally quiet in the hall. No one was saying a thing, and none of the patrons had even spared more than a glance at Bai Yunfei or Zheng Kai when they entered, choosing to drink their tea after a second's reprieve.

But to Bai Yunfei's surprise, each of the four people were....soul cultivators! And they weren't weak! Three of them were Soul

Ancestors and the other one was a Soul Exalt!

There was only a single counter in this hall where a young kindly-looking youth in his twenties sat. Seeing Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai walk in, the youth smiled at him. “Dear customers, welcome to the Soothing Heart. Have you two sires decided on what tea to drink?”

The young man at the counter was a Soul Ancestor like the majority of the patrons there and was clearly weaker than Bai Yunfei or Zheng Kai, but he didn’t seem to fear either of the two. From that, it could be seen that this man was used to having people like Soul Exalts come frequent the place.

Curious, Bai Yunfei asked, “What kind of tea do you sell here?”

The young man was already showing the two to a table to their right when asked, “Is this your first time here?”

“We’ve heard of this place before, but that’s it.”

The man smiled and pointed a finger to the tablets hanging from the wall behind the counter. “We’ve the name and prices of the tea listed on these bamboo tablets. Please take a look and choice whichever tea you wish.”

Following the direction of his finger, Bai Yunfei study the words on the tablets and was surprised as a result.

Lesser Heart Soothing Tea — 50 low grade primal stones per pot

Heart Soothing Tea — 80 low grade primal stones per pot.

Greater Heart Soothing Tea — 1 mid grade primal stone per pot

Lesser Soul Soothing Tea — 10 mid grade primal stones per pot

Soul Soothing Tea — 50 mid grade primal stone per pot

Greater Soul Soothing Tea — 80 mid grade primal stones per pot

The most ridiculous one Bai Yunfei saw was the last bamboo tablet.

Soul Consolidating Tea—1 high grade primal stone pet pot

“.....”

For a good ten seconds, Bai Yunfei stared at the tablets in front of him, wondering if he was seeing things right. His lips twitched halfway into a smirk--were they selling tea, or were they just committing robbery?!

Zheng Kai had thoughts equivalent to Bai Yunfei's. “Dear heavens.....we're not drinking tea here, we're drinking primal stones! I can't even afford to drink some of tea with my current 'allowance', isn't this something else?”

Their surprised looks was nothing strange to the young man attending to them, who only laughed. “Our tea is definitely worth the price. You'll understand it straight away if you take a sip.”

Bai Yunfei hadn't even heard of 'tea' that was this expensive before, let alone tasted one. He had definitely not thought the Soothing Heart would offer such expensive tea.

But he had to admit, he was curious now. This teahouse was still here, after all, and was quite well known in the Capital. Both of those factors combined must've meant there was something that gave this teahouse substance behind its reputation. If the teas were so outrageously priced, then they must've had some sort of value to them. So Bai Yunfei might as well give them a try.

It wasn't as though these prices were even much for him. Even the most expensive tea there, the 'Soul Consolidating Tea', was well within buyable parameters.

Bai Yunfei nodded. “Very well then. I'll take two pots of the Soul Consolidating Tea.”

“Soul Consolidating Tea--two of them?!”

The young man repeated in a quiet disbelieving tone, but loud enough for the other patrons to look over. Like him, the four patrons were quite surprised that someone was ordering a Soul

Consolidating Tea, and two of them. This wasn't a drink any normal person would order.

"Yes, two of them please." Bai Yunfei nodded. "Also, is your boss here?"

"What? You know our boss?"

A person came down from the stairs then. When he saw Bai Yunfei on the first floor, he paused briefly before breaking out into a smile and hurrying on over.

"Little brother Bai? Haha, I knew I felt the aura of someone familiar. Welcome to my teahouse, welcome...."

This person was the person Bai Yunfei met back in Casino Jin, uncle Dan Teng.

Bai Yunfei's lips twitched. "Could you drop the 'little' part? It's awkward...."

He cupped his hands in greeting to Dan Teng, "Hello uncle Dan Teng. The two of us were in passing when we saw your teahouse, so we decided to take a look. Little did we know about the....uniqueness of your teahouse."

"Haha, the uniqueness, is it?" Dan Teng laughed at the implications behind Bai Yunfei's words. Any time a person came here for the first time, they probably had the same reaction as Bai Yunfei.

"It really does amaze me, but I'm sure it'll be worth it, won't it? I've called for two pots of tea to be brought out."

"Haha, if little brother Bai and lord Zheng are interested, then I've no problems with that. I've said it before that if you two came to my teahouse, I'd offer you the best tea I had. Please follow me up to the second floor, it's much more tranquil up there--very suitable for drinking tea."

He turned his head to the young man still there, "Yi Shu, bring

up a pot or two of the Soul Consolidating Tea.”

Yi Shu stiffened at the attention in surprise, but he replied with an affirmative before heading for the kitchens behind to go prepare the tea.

Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai both followed Dan Teng to the second floor and then into a room where the entire place was refine in atmosphere and had the faint smell of tea to it. Bai Yunfei felt at ease with himself when he entered this room and was seated next to the table-for-four near the window. Dan Teng opened the windows, revealing a patch of verdant green grass growing right outside it. With the wind blowing inwards into the room, the smell of tea and grass mixed together for an especially relaxing smell.

“I had nearly thought you two forgot about my teahouse. But the fact that you visited today has brought my humble teahouse a great deal of honor.” Dan Teng smiled. “I even went back to Casino Jin, but I never saw you guys there again. You must’ve been busy, right little brother Bai?”

Politely, Bai Yunfei responded, “Please...just call me Yunfei. Indeed, I’ve been busy as of late and rarely stepped out from my place. I came here today to look at a house and decided to come pay a visit. Haha, my new place is actually not too far away from here.”

“Oh?” Dan Teng replied, “Is that so? How coincidental. Then you simply must come visit my teahouse more often. As an instructor, I’m sure teaching must be exhausting. Come visit and let your spirit relax. It’s really a nice experience.”

“Yes, of course. I’ll be coming here more frequently in the future.”

“Haha, well, I’m not trying to brag, but the tea I have here is rather quite special. You two will understand after a few sips. We soul cultivators cultivate the soul, but that is a process in which many people tend to have problems with and become stressed or jittery about. The tea here has the capabilities of—”

In the middle of his spiel about the tea he sold, Dan Teng suddenly paused to look at Bai Yunfei for two seconds. “Yunfei, you’re injured?!” He cried out.

Chapter 576: Soul Consolidating Tea

“What?”

Bai Yunfei replied, caught off guard at the fact that Dan Teng had found out.

Dan Teng’s eyes hovered onto him for a brief moment longer. “You’re injured. Your soul.”

Bai Yunfei looked astonished again that Dan Teng had caught onto that. “You...how do you know?!”

The ambush that had injured Bai Yunfei was something not many people knew about, especially in regards to the effects it had on Bai Yunfei. There weren’t even many people that knew it was Bai Yunfei that was injured. And yet Dan Teng had clearly found out about it today. He was capable of seeing the state Bai Yunfei’s soul was in—this wasn’t something normal people could do.

By now, the state Bai Yunfei was in was more or less healed up. He only had a small sliver of his soul that required healing, so it wasn’t surprising that Bai Yunfei had such a reaction to Dan Teng’s discovery.

Dan Teng smiled. “Haha, don’t be so surprised, Yunfei. As a person who spent many years studying all sorts of tea and its uses towards the soul, I would definitely be one of those people that are particular sensitive to the souls of others. You might look fine on the outside, but I can definitely sense the faint damages done to yours. The lingering effects of a strong attack, was it? Your soul was damaged from it?! You were fine when I last saw you at the casino, did you....get into trouble later that night? And the state of your soul, did you fight with a Soul King? I’ve noticed something peculiar with how your soul was damaged, did you...fight against a darkness-type soul cultivator?!”

“.....”

Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai could only stare at him with wide-opened eyes at his acute eyesight. He had only looked at Bai Yunfei for a moment, and yet he was able to divine so many things from that moment, how amazing was that?!

When Bai Yunfei didn't respond, Dan Teng looked apologetic. "Haha, I spoke too much. Yunfei, if you don't want to say it, then don't worry about it."

"Ah...that's not it." Bai Yunfei hurried to correct the situation. "I was only just surprised with how accurate you were, uncle Dan. Indeed, I was attacked by a Soul King a while ago and had my soul damaged as a result. I might've healed for the most part, but there's still a few annoying side-effects. Most recently, I....have found it hard to control my emotions. It's causing me a decent amount of trouble...."

"Oh? Is that right?" Dan Teng rubbed his chin at Bai Yunfei's story. "Losing control over your emotions when you had your soul damaged? As far as side effects go, yours is rather light....Haha, Yunfei, you came to the right place. I can guarantee you that in twenty days or so, I'll fix up that problem for you."

"What?!" Bai Yunfei exclaimed. "Is that true, uncle Dan?!"

"In many other areas, I'd never give my word, but when it comes to the soul....I've confidence in my words. My Soothing Heart Teahouse is meant exactly for these type of situations. Your injury isn't too serious, as long as you drink the Soul Consolidating Tea every day, you'll be able to get rid of those annoying side-effects within twenty days or so."

"Really?" Bai Yunfei felt himself grow hopeful, "That's....that's amazing, uncle Dan. This would really help me out."

"Haha, you're being too polite, Yunfei. It's nothing much. You'll have to come everyday and drink a pot of the Soul Consolidating Tea for it to work."

“Every day?”

“Yes. It’s best that you come twice a day, once in the morning and once in the evening. You can’t repair damages done to the heart so sloppily unless you want to risk a relapse and have the damage get even worse. The chances of that are low, but it’s always best to take things cautiously. The sooner you recover, the more you won’t have to worry.”

“I....” Bai Yunfei hesitated for a while before committing to his answer. “Alright! I’ll listen to you then, uncle Dan. I hope that my recovery will be a swift one.”

Dan Teng was saying his wound wasn’t very serious, but Bai Yunfei knew it wasn’t as easy as he said it’d be.

While the time was practically nothing, the price on the other hand....

Dan Teng said that Bai Yunfei would need to come in for around twenty days and order a ‘Soul Consolidating Tea’, one which that costed about one high-grade primal stone per pot!! By doing some quick maths, Bai Yunfei was able to calculate the costs....twice a day for twenty days meant forty high-grade primal stones! Just how many people could afford a price like that?

But then again, such a price wasn’t too much of a problem. He had won twenty high-grade primal stones back in Casino Jin after all. If he really needed the money, he’d sell some of his less important heaven-tier soul armaments....

No matter the case, Bai Yunfei really didn’t like this problem he was having with the side-effects of his soul being damaged. It was a problem that’d only blow up in his face if he ignored it, so it was best that he get rid of this problem as soon as possible, and the prices in doing so would be well worth it.

Dan Teng continued onwards to say, “As for the price of the Soul Consolidating Tea....well, I wouldn’t be able to make a living if I let

you drink them all for free, haha. I don't have much of it, and it's hard to restock them, but I'll give you a discount. Let's say fifty percent off. Surely that'll be enough to convince you I'm no miser."

Bai Yunfei was astonished by his generosity. "A miser? How could you be one? Uncle Teng....you are far too generous, I cannot thank you enough...."

Was that not the truth? A fifty percent discount meant only needing to pay twenty high-grade primal stones. Bai Yunfei and Dan Teng didn't even have that close of a relationship with one another, so the fact that Dan Teng was willing to provide such an extensive discount for Bai Yunfei was mind boggling.

The doors to their room opened up, revealing the young man attending to the store from earlier. In his hand was a tray with a teapot and three tea cups on it. Setting the teapot and tea cups in front of the three, the young man was then dismissed to return back down to the first floor to watch over it again.

Dan Teng lifted the teapot to pour some of the tea inside into the tea cups of Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai. "This pot here is the best pot of Soul Consolidating Tea I have, please take a sip and see how you like it."

He poured tea into the tea cups until it was seventy percent full before stopping. Gesturing at the cups, Dan Teng had Bai Yunfei and Zheng Kai take their cups into their hands. Carefully, Bai Yunfei brought the tea cup up closer to his face to look at it. The only thing he saw was what appeared to be normal boiled water. If he wasn't told beforehand, Bai Yunfei would've assumed it was only just water with how transparent it was. But when he raised it up to drink, the distinct aroma of tea could be smelt, and Bai Yunfei could confirm then that this tea was anything but normal.

Bai Yunfei would be the first to admit he hadn't his fair share of expensive teas. But when he took a sip of this one, Bai Yunfei

would also not be afraid to admit that any tea he had drunk before felt like they had been brewed by the tree leaves of a random tree. This one cup of tea he had now was delicious. At a sip, he could feel himself transported to a different world where peach blossom trees could be had, and a gentle wind was blowing softly onto his face. The distinct sound of a spring could be had, and Bai Yunfei could even feel the soft warm rays of sunshine pelter his face in the signs of spring....

Bai Yunfei woke the next second, his eyes blinking when he realized what he just felt had only been an illusion of his own mind's creation.

He felt spellbound!! It was as if he had been stuck in an illusion where all of his worries had been turned into nothing. Even his usual level of vigilance had been reduced to nothing!!

This tea was enough to make Bai Yunfei feel vexed. How special this 'Soul Consolidating Tea' was!

What he hadn't realized though was the fact when he was stuck in that illusionary state of calm, a flicker of surprise flew across Dan Teng's own eyes when Bai Yunfei snapped back to reality.

On the other hand, it took Zheng Kai five or six seconds for him to come back to reality.

Still slightly bewildered by what he had just experienced, Bai Yunfei blew at the teacup again. He wasn't having any strange feelings from it now, but his eyes remained fixated on it. Blowing several times again onto the surface of the tea, Bai Yunfei took yet another sip so that half of the cup was drained into his throat.

He first felt the presence of the tea when it traveled into his throat and making its way down towards his stomach. But then along the way as it left behind a refreshing sensation, it....disappeared!

Bai Yunfei wasn't mistaken. As the tea traveled down his throat

and left behind a refreshing aftertaste, Bai Yunfei felt the tea start to evaporate inside his body!

From liquid to gas, the tea evaporated and propagated through his body and traveled to even the extremities of his body!

In the next moment, Bai Yunfei felt a sensation so soothing he wanted to sigh in content out loud. It was as if his entire body was being dunked into a hot spring of water and was basking him in a flow of utmost comfort. But more importantly, the feelings of vexation he had on his mind from earlier thoughts had been like a layer of fog coming into contact with a fierce burst of sun to scatter apart!

Even more undescribable to Bai Yunfei was the fact that his Soul Sentinel Scarf lit up in accordance with the tea. A strange wave of energy mixed with the tea to circulate around his body. With each circulation, Bai Yunfei felt his mind grow clearer, and the ‘sliver’ missing from his soul was starting to regenerate!

The part of his soul that was missing was starting to grow back and....consolidate once more!

The Soul Consolidating Tea was....consolidating his soul!!

Chapter 577: A Teacher's Criticisms

Ever since Bai Yunfei stepped into the Soothing Heart, Bai Yunfei felt his heart and mind start to grow healthier and healthier. The Soul Consolidating Tea was as good as a panacea for him, and it felt like his concerns and troubles were all melting away whenever he drank it.

Another three days later, Bai Yunfei moved into the home given to him by the First Prince. He had now a place he could call home in the Capital.

Now that he was being helped by the Soul Consolidating Tea, Bai Yunfei felt a little impatient to hurry up and cure the side-effects he was undergoing. So most of his time was spent in his room meditating. Only when Zheng Kai sought him out did Bai Yunfei go outside.

Aside from his increased recuperation, Bai Yunfei found yet another thing that was increasing....he was training at a far faster rate than before!

Clearly, the Soul Consolidating Tea had done this!

Not only was it helpful for curing damages done to the soul, it could be used to help one cultivate!

This was a monumental benefit that made the tea more than worth the one high-grade primal stone. In Bai Yunfei's opinion, drinking the tea and using the high-grade primal stone were very comparable in terms of training either way.

He was already cultivating at a decent speed. With the tea, Bai Yunfei felt like it wouldn't be long before he could become a late-stage Soul Exalt.

Bai Yunfei had noticed a slight change undertake Xiao Qi as well. It was relatively 'silent' compared to before and frequently took to sleeping. Sometimes, it'd sleep on top of his shoulder.

Whenever he was training, Bai Yunfei would feel slightly different from normal—a feeling of happiness was coming through to him from Xiao Qi.

This meant....Xiao Qi was on its way to advancing in class!!

Right now, Xiao Qi was a peak late-stage class six. If it advanced again, then....it'd become a class seven!!

Bai Yunfei felt more excited for that than him becoming a late-stage Soul Exalt. A class seven soulbeast! Countless people and soulbeast could only yearn of growing to such a level like that.

But breaking through this bottleneck of a period wasn't as easy as it seemed to be. Bai Yunfei knew that it might've looked like Xiao Qi was extremely close, but in reality, it would still need perhaps three or five years, if not a great opportunity....

The blue-eyes wyrm on the other hand, seemed jealous of Xiao Qi's current state. It was stuck in the late-stage class six level without making any noticeable levels of improvement. Irritating the soulbeast, the wyrm began to train as hard as it could. Although it wasn't making any leeway, it could still improve its soulforce slowly and surely.

All in all, there were happy developments all around, and Bai Yunfei was content with that. After so many twist and turns in the Capital, Bai Yunfei was finally starting to feel that life was getting back on track....

.....

The days went by soon enough, and Bai Yunfei soon found himself on the day of his next class.

Rather than go with Zheng Kai, Bai Yunfei opted to leave from his home and head for the academy himself. He had been familiarizing himself with the layout of the Capital, and now that his home was close to the academy, he wasn't worried about getting lost.

Now that he was starting to treat the damages done to his soul, Bai Yunfei was starting to feel better about himself. It was with satisfaction that Bai Yunfei walked towards the academy, looking around at the students there whenever they passed. A feeling of joy arose in his mind, and a small hum couldn't help but make its way towards Bai Yunfei's lips to whistle.

But his happy mood would soon be shattered....

“Bai Yunfei! You stop right there!!”

Bai Yunfei had been halfway through the sixth year area and on his way to the gates leading to the Back Mountain when a sudden voice called out to him.

The voice hadn't been very polite at all, and Bai Yunfei could feel the hostile but strong soulforce leaking out from this person.

Narrowing his eyes, Bai Yunfei sighed and turned around.

A group of people was coming up to meet him.

He watched as the group of twenty to thirty people stop in front of him, three middle-aged men in particular leading the group. Behind the three were what appeared to be guards of some kind while everyone else were male and females—evidently students of the academy.

Since Bai Yunfei had stopped walking, it didn't take long for the group to catch up to him. In fact, some of them overtook Bai Yunfei so that he was stuck in a ring.

He eyed the crowd, “Is there a problem?”

He didn't recognize anyone from the crowd, so what business had them with him? And why were they so hostile towards him?

“Bai Yunfei!! You have the nerve to pretend?!” The middle-aged man in maroon robes bristled, “You've been hiding for the past few days, but today you'll pay us an explanation or else you don't leave at all! Don't think that because the chairman made you the

crafting instructor you can allow your students to do as they please!”

Bai Yunfei only narrowed his eyes at the person pointing his finger at him, “Who are you?”

“You...!” The man paused briefly, not expecting such a response with him taking the initiative to speak, or that Bai Yunfei didn’t even know who he was. “I am the sixth year fire section instructor for class four, Lu Ren!”

“Oh.” Bai Yunfei nodded. “What business does instructor Lu have with me?”

Before Lu Ren himself answered, the small-eyed middle-aged man next to him snorted, “Hmph! So you’re Bai Yunfei? Don’t even try pretending your way out of this. You will be make things right for the young master of my house, else the house of Xue will be forced to take the issue up!”

This man wore a rare and expensive looking robe and was looking quite stoutly. He didn’t look like an instructor of the academy, so Bai Yunfei asked, “And who are you?”

Proudly, the man responded, “I am here on the behalf of the Chancellor of Finance, Xue Chunhou....and attendant to the house of Xue. Your student injured the young master of my house, so today you’ll be paying the compense for it!”

“What?!” Bai Yunfei exclaimed—but not at the fact that there was a chancellor involved here. “My student hit your young master? What is the meaning behind this?”

He eyed in between the two middle-aged man to look at the young man whose hand was bandaged up. Besides him were a few other injured people.

“What is the meaning of this? This one is really unaware of the details, please explain this for me.”

Thinking that Bai Yunfei was lying, the attendant snorted, “How

does an instructor not know when his student commits a crime as grievous as this?! Is this how an instructor should be...?”

Bai Yunfei’s eyes flashed brightly, “I won’t trouble sire to teach me how to be an instructor. I asked you what happened, all you need to do is answer that question.”

“You!!”

Not expecting such a backhanded response, the man was about to snap back when Lu Ren cut in. “Bai Yunfei, it seems that you really don’t know what happened. Fine, I’ll tell you then. Two days ago in the dining hall of the academy, a scuffle broke out between nearly ten students. The instigator was very brutish in his actions and broke the arm of the third son of the lord of the house of Xue! There were even a few females that were bullied by your student, so....how do you propose we deal with this situation?!”

Bai Yunfei blanked, something like that had actually happened? “Are you certain it was my student? Which one?”

“Of course it was your student?” The attendant boomed, “Are you still trying to play the fool? The one who hit him was the fourth....fourth....”

He couldn’t seem to say what he wanted to say after ‘fourth’, prompting Bai Yunfei to ask, “Fourth what?”

Lu Ren snorted, “The instigator was your new student, the Fourth Prince, Wu Yang!”

Chapter 578: Events That Led to Fighting

“Wu Yang?”

Bai Yunfei quirked an eyebrow at the mention of his name, “Was it Wu Yang that hit him into that state?”

Bai Yunfei pointed a finger at the ‘wounded’ person.

“Indeed, it was Wu Yang who led the others! He uses his power to bully other students, such an act is untolerable in the academy! Bai Yunfei, he is your student, how do you propose you deal with this?!”

“Led?” Bai Yunfei picked up on the keyword, “Are you saying there are others?”

“Correct! There were several others, all of which were your students! I’ve already figured out their names. Mo Chen, Fang Tianmeng, and Fang Yong!”

“Them?” Bai Yunfei recognized the names, “What in the world happened? Can you explain this?”

The attendant obliged, loudly. “No matter the case, it was your students that instigated and harmed another, they are in the wrong! Our young master was grievously hurt and will need at least ten days to heal fully. As their instructor, you should take the blame on their behalf!!”

What kind of bullsh*t reasoning was that?

The absurdity of the situation had Bai Yunfei nearly cross his eyes in exasperation. But since he hadn’t a clue of the situation and was too lazy to argue, Bai Yunfei decided to ask the source itself and turned behind him.

He could tell a group of people was descending down from the Back Mountain, and that those students were his own. Wu Yang was among the students coming down, so Bai Yunfei decided to ask

him since he was the ‘instigator’.

When Bai Yunfei didn’t speak, the attendant took this to mean that Bai Yunfei was feeling guilty. Confident now, he spoke, “Bai Yunfei, allow me to tell you, though Wu Yang is the fourth prince, he cannot act without laws and morals, and in Tianhun Academy no less. Fairness and impartiality is key to our academy, and even if it’s the fourth prince, you as the instructor should carry the blame for his actions!”

Bai Yunfei didn’t bother to say anything again. This man was clearly afraid of Wu Yang and was using Bai Yunfei as a ‘scapegoat’ for the actions of Wu Yang. By asserting the claim that a teacher should be fair and impartial, was the man not trying to have Bai Yunfei ‘punish’ Wu Yang for him?

As for Lu Ren and the other instructor who hadn’t spoken, Bai Yunfei could more or less tell that they were ‘jealous’ of him based on the hostility they were showing. It wasn’t hard to see, and Bai Yunfei could guess the reason already. His installment as an instructor to the academy was still unaccepted by several instructors, so they wanted to take use of this chance to make trouble for him.

Quickly, Bai Yunfei’s students came from the gates leading to the Back Mountain, including Mo Wanxia and Wu Yang for a total of nine students.

At the very front of the group was Wu Yang, his expression stormy as he stalked forwards. From the looks he was giving to the ‘injured’ parties of the people with Lu Ren, he clearly did not get along with them.

But when Bai Yunfei looked past Wu Yang and onto the other students behind him, his eyes narrowed slightly.

There was a bandage on Mo Chen’s right hand, and Fang Tianmeng and Fang Yong both looked a little strange, the former a little timid in fact.

As everyone stared at the group make their way over, Bai Yunfei held his hand up to stop Wu Yang from speaking momentarily to focus on Mo Chen. “What happened?” He pointed at his fist.

Thinking that Bai Yunfei was going to rebuke him, Mo Chen started to mumble with his speech, “I...er...hehe...I accidentally hurt it.”

But when Bai Yunfei didn’t look ‘happy’ with such an explanation, Fang Yong spoke up rather nervously, “Instructor Bai, please don’t blame Mo Chen. He was just protecting Tianmeng and I from being hurt.”

She bit her lips slightly before pointing a finger at the young man with the injured hand. “He’s the one that hurt Mo Chen.”

“Hmph!” The attendant snorted, “For a group of commoners to dare commit assault onto the son of the Chancellor of Finance, they are exceptionally undisciplined. The sinners have come forth now, Bai Yunfei! Hurry up and deal with the matter! Have your students apologize towards my young master and issue their punishment, or else we’ll—”

“Oh shut your mouth!!”

Before the man finished speaking, Bai Yunfei gave him a glare cold enough to shut the man up and choke on his words almost.

Not caring in the slightest for him, Bai Yunfei turned to Mo Chen and Fang Tianmeng. “What in the world happened? Start from the beginning with what happened in the dining hall two days ago.”

“I....Instructor Bai....I....” Fang Tianmeng hesitated, her eye flickering to the glowering young woman next to the injured young man from the Xue. She looked as if she was being wronged, but she didn’t seem to know how to answer Bai Yunfei.

Unable to hold himself any longer, Wu Yang pointed a finger at the injured youth, “That Xue Gui there, I saw him hit Mo Chen first and was bullying Fang Yong and Fang Tianmeng, so I decided

to help them out and teach him a lesson. I'm the one to hurt them, I'm the only responsible party here."

Inwardly, the attendant was worried. If the fourth prince was to try and refuse to acknowledge his wrongs, then it'd be harder to resolve this issue the way they want. And if they didn't resolve it, then he himself would be the one that'd take the fall for having the young master of his house injured. Glaring icily at Bai Yunfei, the man spoke, "Bai Yunfei! Your student has already admitted to his crime, how do you suggest we deal with this?!"

Lu Ren cut in at that moment, "Fourth Prince, while you are a prince of the Empire, but you are also a student of the academy. You must adhere to the laws of our academy, please do not make use of your station to bully others."

Still ignoring the two others, Bai Yunfei continued to stare at the adamant Wu Yang, "Tell me the details."

"Let me explain it." Dongfang Yuhui spoke from the crowd. "At noon two days ago, Fang Yong and Tianmeng were both eating in the dining halls when..."

Under Dongfang Yuhui's explanation, Bai Yunfei was able to understand the situation. As things were, it seemed that when the two girls were eating, Fang Tianmeng met with several people she knew before, one of which was one a previous classmate of Fang Tianmeng and the daughter of a rather wealthy family. When the two used to share a class, Fang Tianmeng had been the more popular girl in the class, which led to the other girl feeling jealous. But since Fang Tianmeng left the class to join the crafting class, that classmate became the class' 'princess'. Feeling proud of herself, the classmate spoke down onto Fang Tianmeng when they met again and began to mock her.

Since Fang Tianmeng was an orphan and usually had to do some tasks for the academy in order to pay for the educational costs, the classmate saw her as a 'lowly' commoner of sorts, calling her

things such as an ‘undesirable’.

Due to her kind nature, Fang Tianmeng didn’t want to say anything in response, but she was already brought to tears. In the end, Fang Yong couldn’t help it anymore and came up to slap the woman in Tianmeng’s place. But the ‘white knight’ behind her--Xue Gui, came forward to stop Fang Yong and was about to hit her when Mo Chen saw it. From there, Mo Chen tried to stop him, only to be defeated due to his lack of strength. Wu Yang had been with Mo Chen at the time, and seeing his fellow classmate be hurt infuriated him. And from there, a brawl had started....

Not caring in the slightest for the consequences, Wu Yang dealt a heavy blow to Xue Gui, which left him as he was now.

And that how it went. Or so it goes.

Chapter 579: Apologize

Bai Yunfei's face looked a little dark after he listened to Dongfang Yuhui's explanation, though no one seemed to know what he was thinking about.

"How about it? You've heard the story, Bai Yunfei. Your students were the one who instigated this, and over a little spat from your female students. A student of mine was grievously injured, your students should be heavily punished!!" Lu Ren glared at Bai Yunfei.

"That's right!! You must have them apologize to my young master and the young miss from the Chen and accept a heavy punishment!!" The attendant from the Xue piped up next.

Wu Yang's eyes flew open with anger, "Outrageous! Apologize to them? I was the one to hit them, shouldn't you be asking me to apologize?!"

"Er...that..." The attendant blustered, his eyes shifting away to look at anywhere other than the fourth prince. The nature of the fourth prince was well known to many people there, and although Wu Yang wasn't acting on with imperial dignity yet, the attendant didn't dare simply ask for Wu Yang to 'take responsibility'.

The attendant was after all a member of the imperial system. To warrant hostilities with the fourth prince would be unwise. It was only because instructor Lu Ren was there in capacity as an instructor of the academy that the attendant could afford to throw around the word of 'fairness' in this conversation with Wu Yang.

Just as the fourth prince was about to call upon his station as a prince to 'dissolve' the matter, Bai Yunfei spoke up.

"Yes. You're right. An apology is needed."

He had spoken after thinking for a long moment, but his words had completely caught everyone off guard.

The attendant sighed inwardly to himself--he hadn't thought

that Bai Yunfei would be so soft like that to concede. This also meant he wouldn't have to deal with the fourth prince, and now he could come out from this messy affair looking relatively safe.

Even the instructor next to Lu Ren looked astonished at Bai Yunfei's reaction. He originally thought that Bai Yunfei would fight the accusations, thus why the instructor came with Lu Ren in the first place to stand on the side of 'fairness' to teach Bai Yunfei a lesson.

But then Bai Yunfei simply gave up and 'conceded' then and there.

The ones injured by Wu Yang all looked pleased with themselves as if they had just won a battle.

The ones who reacted the most were Bai Yunfei's own students. Many of them looked incredulously at him, some of them having looks of disappointment in their eyes.

Seeing the finish line in sight now, the attendant smiled with relief. "Haha, so you finally admit it. Let's have these lowly plebeians apologize to the young master then. If my young master is pleased enough, we'll think about being lenient!"

Bai Yunfei frowned. Looking at the man as if he was an idiot, Bai Yunfei spoke, "You misunderstand. I didn't say my students will be the ones apologizing."

"What?!" The attendant cried along with the others with him.

Bai Yunfei pointed a finger at Xue Gui, "Have those that bullied my students come forward and apologize to my students. I won't pursue the matter after that."

He then pointed at the attendant, "As for you. You've a filthy mouth. Slap yourself on the face ten times and I'll forgive you."

"....."

The entire crowd all stared incredulously at Bai Yunfei as if they

weren't sure if what they heard from him was correct.

"This is absurd!!"

The attendant responded after a few mute seconds. "You...what is the meaning of this?!" He cried, growing practically purple in the face."

"Was I not clear? Or do you not understand human language?"

"I...yo--you!" The attendant's body quivered intensely to glare at Bai Yunfei. He didn't know how to respond to Bai Yunfei's arrogant attitude towards him at all.

Lu Ren stepped in to intervene, "Bai Yunfei, how could you be so unreasonable?! Your students were the ones to injure the other. What logic is there in having the injured party apologize?"

"My student is also injured" Bai Yunfei pointed at Mo Chen.

"How can his injuries even compare to the injuries of Xue Gui?!"

"It isn't as if he's my student."

"....."

The big-nosed instructor next to Lu Ren finally chose then to break his silence with angry words. "Bai Yunfei! You're being unreasonable here!! I came here today to seek fairness from you! Your student injured the other, stop twisting your words with your illogicalness!"

"I know that it was my student who was first bullied, thus why I ask your student to apologize."

"....."

Again, the crowd grew silent with how 'unreasonable' Bai Yunfei was being. None of them had thought to see that happen.

Bai Yunfei stared at the quivering attendant from the Xue with a bored expression, "Let's hurry it up then. I've a class to teach."

He still wanted the attendant to 'hurry up' and slap himself?!

Unable to hold himself any longer, his fatty cheeks started to jiggle in his anger, “Filthy undesirables! Vagabonds and plebeians, all of you!! How dare you all! Teach them a harsh lesson they won’t forget!!”

He was the one responsible for the finance and attendants in the house of Xue, how could he stand for such disrespect like this? Already, he saw himself as a ‘noble’ that stood over the others people who didn’t match him in station, such as Bai Yunfei. He only took Bai Yunfei to be an ordinary instructor that was daring to try and ‘humiliate’ him, thus why he was so angry today.

He would teach Bai Yunfei a fierce lesson.

“You’re noisy.”

Several people gasped as Bai Yunfei disappeared from sight.

The soldiers behind the attendant had been quick to follow his commands. None of them were particularly weak with three of them being late-stage Soul Ancestors and two of them early-stage Soul Exalts, but none of those five had even registered Bai Yunfei disappearing from sight when they leapt forward.

“Pow!!”

An ear-ringing sound was heard behind the soldiers.

Looking back, the soldiers were alarmed to find Bai Yunfei somehow standing right behind them! His right hand was outstretched at the moment and was falling back down to his side, but on the left side of the attendant’s fatty face was a single red palm mark!

Bai Yunfei stared icily at the attendant as he held a hand to his own face. “Don’t keep saying words as dirty as ‘filthy plebeian’ or ‘undesirable’. I may have come from a commoner’s life, but in my own eyes, ‘nobles’ like you who think yourself higher than us are nothing more but slaves.”

“Pow!!”

Another slap. The left side of the attendant's face was already swollen to fill a large amount of his face.

"Ah! Ahhh!!! I'll kill you!!" The man shrieked in fury. Golden light flooded out from his body as he revealed himself to be an early-stage Soul Exalt. Raising his right hand to bring out a golden blade, he moved to slice through Bai Yunfei's throat.

"Pow!!"

There was another ringing sound when Bai Yunfei slapped the man in the face again, completely disregarding the elemental energy and soulforce protecting the Soul Exalt!!

Bai Yunfei had ignored both those two energies to completely overwhelm the man!

The soldiers cried in alarm as they threw themselves at him again. But even the fastest of the five, the two Soul Exalts, hadn't been fast enough before Bai Yunfei disappeared, leaving them to grab onto nothing but air.

With a few quick footwork, Bai Yunfei was already stepping past the soldiers and was raising his right hand again....

"Pow! Pow! Pow...."

A series of frightening sounds echoed through the air as Bai Yunfei dodged the attacks of the soldiers. There was a total of ten slapping sounds before the attendant was completely out of it, his eyes seeing nothing but stars and his mouth silent.

With Bai Yunfei using his fingers to slap the man in the face, there was a small flow of blood trickling down his mouth, and the left side of his face was at least two times bigger than his right.

"Bai Yunfei!! Stop!"

Unable to contain themselves anymore, the two other instructors moved forward to stop him.

"Hmph!" Bai Yunfei snorted. Tossing the person in his hands

away, he whirled around to bring both his hands forward to push against the two instructors with his palms.

“Bang!” “Bang!!”

And just like that, the two instructors were sent flying away!

Completely caught off guard by how they were sent flying away by Bai Yunfei, the two instructors staggered back onto their feet in awe.

In one simple move, Bai Yunfei had shown the two that they were no match for him!

While they knew Bai Yunfei was strong due to him being able to beat Zhou Yu with his soul armaments, they hadn't believed Bai Yunfei was strong enough to force them back without even using all his strength!

Eyeing the soldiers who were immobilized with fear, and then the injured Xue Gui standing slightly farther away, Bai Yunfei spoke calmly.

“Apologize.”

The glare in his eyes had caused several of the students to gulp and quiver nervously. Xue Gui himself had been staring in fear at the knocked out attendant of his family when he started to stammer, “I--I...”

“Apologize.” Bai Yunfei repeated again, a hint of severity added to his word.

Xue Gui was practically bathed in sweat now as he looked to Mo Chen and the others. “I'm....I'm sorry....”

Bai Yunfei nodded before turning to the nearly frightened out of her mind girl next to him.

“I--I'm....I'm so--sorry....”

She managed to squeak out towards Fang Tianmeng. She looked ready to burst into tears at any moment now, making her look to

be quite the pitiful sight.

Lu Ren and the instructor was going to stop them from speaking, but the die had been cast already. Their students had apologized. Turning slightly green in the face, neither of the two spoke up again or did anything to Bai Yunfei.

Looking at the quivering students in front of him, Bai Yunfei suddenly felt a little vapid, as if he thought he was bullying them now. He frowned. Sighing, Bai Yunfei turned away from them to look at his own students.

“Let’s go, we’ve class to have.”

With that, he lead his students away up to Back Mountain.

Wu Yang, who had been stuck to the spot ever since Bai Yunfei had told the other party to apologize the first time, blinked twice. Giving Bai Yunfei an odd stare at first, he looked at the other stunned classmates of his before following him up the mountain.

Chapter 580: An Especially Special Way of Teaching (First)

It wasn't until they were outside the crafting caves when Bai Yunfei noticed the strange looks he was getting. "What's the matter? What's with those looks?"

A little moved, Mo Chen replied, "I....instructor Bai, I just didn't think....that you'd deal with the situation that way...."

"What? Should I not have?"

"No no, I didn't think it was bad, it was....it was cool! Haha!! I thought we were going to be punished, but then to see those smug asses get so scared—that was amazing!!"

"Punished? You did nothing wrong, why would I punish you? If you didn't do anything and watched Fang Tianmeng and Fang Yong be bullied like that, then I would punish you."

"How would we? What kind of friend wouldn't help another when in need?" Mo Chen shook his head, "It just sucks that I'm not strong enough, big brother Wu Yang had to deal with the problem himself."

Bai Yunfei gave Wu Yang a look, "Yes. You did well."

Wu Yang felt pleased. This was the first time he was being praised for something like this. Running a hand through his hair, he spoke airily, "It was nothing. Nothing worth mentioning..."

Some tears was had in Fang Tianmeng's eyes, "Instructor Bai, thank you...."

Bai Yunfei smiled. "Thank me for what? You're my students, I can't allow other people to bully you like that."

By the side, there was a strange light in Mo Wanxia's eyes, "Who would've thought you actually were a shield all along."

“A shield? How does something like this even count as that...?”

In his mind, Bai Yunfei thought about the first elder back in the Crafting School. If it was him, then Xue Gui would've been permanently short a hand by now.

Clapping his hands, Bai Yunfei announced. “The matter has passed, so let's not talk about it anymore. If something like this happens again, just tell me straight away. As your instructor, I should be the first to know about these things. Don't wait until class starts again to let me know.”

“But we don't even know where instructor Bai lives! How are we going to find you?” Mo Chen questioned.

“Oh, I nearly forgot about that.” Bai Yunfei blinked. “Right now, I live on North Seventh Street facing the academy. It's the 87th number down, you may find me there in the future.

“Now, let's talk about our class. Today, I will be teaching you how to actually craft. Return to your crafting caves.”

“Our own crafting caves? Are we not going to instructor Bai's cave to have class?” A student asked.

“No need, I will have the ability to teach you all at the same time in your caves.”

He turned to walk into Mo Chen's cave, his right hand withdrawing a gray stone from his space ring before placing it within the cave.

He did the same thing for each cave, placing a stone within every student's cave.

Under his instructions, the students walked into their caves quizzically. They each looked at the stone he placed, completely baffled by the mystery in which the stone Bai Yunfei put down was.

A short moment later, they each suddenly felt a strange light

pulsate from the stone, warping the area enough before Bai Yunfei suddenly appeared in front of them!

“This is....an illusion!!”

Everyone immediately realized what was going on in great shock.

The more surprising thing was when Bai Yunfei smiled and moved his lips. Rather than him being silent, there was a voice that was being transmitted into each of their heads.

“Alright, lets begin class.”

Everyone jumped when they heard his voice and looked around. The stronger ones like Mo Wanxia had been especially surprised, since they knew this sound wasn’t coming from Bai Yunfei, but from....their own mind!

“Soul Communication!!”

Mo Wanxia’s eyes were wide open as she realized the absurdity of the situation—this was soul communication! An act only Soul Kings and the like were capable of doing, how was Bai Yunfei doing this?!

“Everybody doesn’t need to worry, I am using a special method that allows me to establish a mental link with you all. As long as you think about what you want to say to me, I’ll be able to ‘hear’ what you say.” Bai Yunfei’s voice spoke again into their minds. “This is a special ability of one of my soul armaments, so it shouldn’t be too surprising.”

The ability of a soul armament?!

Again, everyone was surprised. How could it not be? This was the first time they’ve heard of a soul armament having an ‘ability’.

But at the same time, everyone grew excited. Soul armaments such as this existed? This was amazing! If they were able to craft soul armaments like this, then....

“Then allow me to start today’s class. In our last class, I

demonstrated a very basic crafting process to craft a low-human tier. Today, I'll do a demonstration again and then you'll all try it our yourself and see how you like it....”

Everyone saw as a cauldron came popping out in front of the illusion of Bai Yunfei. From there, he started to demonstrate for them all.

.....

In his own cave, Bai Yunfei sat on the ground with his Lightningfire Cauldron sparking to life in front of him. Six stones were all around him and the cauldron, enveloping him with a mysterious bright light.

They were the Illusion Stones.

Unique Equipment

Equipment Grade: High Earth

Upgrade Level: +10

Additional Attribute: Increase range of illusions by 30%.

Soul Compatibility: 10%

Equipment Effect: Create an illusion a hundred meters in radius at largest.

Effects become stronger the smaller in area it is.

Effect can be stacked.

+10 Additional Effect: Increase strength of illusions by 50%.

Upgrade Requirement: 110 Soulpoints

These were the stone set he found outside the Capital. After spending several days to study it, today Bai Yunfei resolved to try it out for once.

Nearly the entire mountain peak was within the radius of his illusions. With all the Illusion Stones properly placed in the caves, Bai Yunfei was able to see into the caves and see what the students were doing.

As for the way he was talking with the students, Bai Yunfei was using the additional effect of the Charm Bracelet.

+10 Additional Effect: Consume soulforce to establish a mental link with anyone within a kilometer,

Though the illusions could imitate his speech somewhat, the Charm Bracelet would make his speech far more pronounced since it was speaking to their minds, which was a great deal better than the other options.

The entire class went on in subdued shock as each of the students listened to the illusionary Bai Yunfei teach their class. They had never experienced such a class before, and they were mystified how Bai Yunfei was doing this, but it felt like they were all able to have a one on one interaction with him. With how Bai Yunfei was point out and explain whatever each student was doing right or wrong, his explanations made this style of teaching extremely succinct and clear to understand. Furthermore, they all felt that besides from a ‘voice’ being heard in their minds, there was also a ‘insight’ that was being shared with them, making them be able to understand what was being taught even more clearly. It was as though some sort of mysterious feeling was guiding them towards the right path.

None of them had ever heard of such a way of teaching before, but they all believed that within the entire academy, Bai Yunfei was the only one capable of such a thing.

.....

Class was dismissed, and Bai Yunfei soon went back to his own place to rest for the night....

The next morning, Bai Yunfei was in the Soothing Heart and had only just finished his half-hour tea time before returning home...

“Eh?” In the distance, Bai Yunfei saw a group of people gathered in front of his gates and quickly walked over.

“Mo Chen, what are you all doing here?” Bai Yunfei asked when he drew close. The people at his gates had been Mo Chen, Fang

Yong, Mo Wanxia and Zhang Zhifeng.

He noticed the anxious and nervous looks on their faces and felt his heart plummet a bit. Something bad, he felt, was about to happen....

Chapter 581: The Disappearance of Fang Tianmeng! (Second)

“Instructor Bai!!”

Mo Chen’s face light up in relief when he saw Bai Yunfei.
“Instructor Bai, something bad has happened!”

“What did?” Bai Yunfei asked grimly.

Besides Mo Chen, Fang Yong cried out tearfully, “Instructor Bai, Tiangmeng....Tianmeng’s gone!! What do we do...”

“What?!” Bai Yunfei exclaimed, “Tianmeng’s gone? Where to? Calm down and talk to me clearly. What happened?”

“Yunfei, what’s wrong?”

Suddenly, a concern voiced called out to him behind. Bai Yunfei turned around. It was Zheng Kai.

Without giving him a greeting, Bai Yunfei only nodded before turning back to Fang Yong.

“Tianmeng went out yesterday. But she never returned. I don’t even know where she might be....”

“She never returned?” Bai Yunfei asked, “What was she doing?”

“She said she was going walking with a male from the fifth year fire section for a walk. I think...I think his name was Ye....Ye something...”

“Ye Yu?”

“Yes! His name was Ye Yu!” Fang Yong nodded.

“Did you go look for Ye Yu?”

Zhang Zhifeng nodded, “Fang Yong came to find us earlier today, so we went out looking for Ye Yu. But his roommate said he hadn’t returned since last night.”

From aside, Zheng Kai decided to speak up with a theory of his own. He remembered Ye Yu and Fang Tianmeng just faintly, “If...If I may be blunt, perhaps the two of them are currently engaging in something a couple might be doing? That might be why miss Fang hasn’t returned last night...”

“No way!” Fang Yong refused, “Tianmeng isn’t that type of person! She might have a good opinion of Ye Yu, but there’s no way she wouldn’t spend the entire night without coming back!”

Zhang Zhifeng interjected after that, “Also, I went to speak with his instructor. He said that Ye Yu was supposed to have a task done this morning, so he should’ve been back by now.”

Fang Yong looked distress as she spoke to Bai Yunfei, “Instructor Bai....do you think....do you think Tianmeng is in danger right now?”

“Let’s not blindly guess, that’ll accomplish nothing.” Bai Yunfei consoled her, though he himself was starting to feel worried. This wasn’t a common scenario; if two people haven’t returned since last night, that might’ve really meant something bad was happening....

But they were two ordinary soul cultivators. What kind of people would want to do anything against them?

“Do the two of them have any enemies?” Zheng Kai offered again. “Would anyone wish to do harm to them? Yunfei, do you remember that young master Cao from Baishan City? Do you....think he wanted revenge on them?”

The wrinkles on Bai Yunfei’s forehead deepened for a moment to ruminate on that thought. “That shouldn’t be so? It hasn’t been that long since we last met them, that Cao Jun probably hasn’t even recovered from his wounds yet, let alone want to come back to seek revenge. And if it’s revenge, he would’ve come after me, why would he go after Tianmeng and Ye Yu?”

“I can’t be sure, but there’s always a few hedonists whose minds work in ways you’ll never understand, Yunfei....”

“I don’t think it’s a too possible of a probability, let’s think about other likely scenarios. If we are to assume someone kidnapped or ambushed them, who would it be?” Bai Yunfei muttered.

“Would it perhaps be the same people from yesterday?” Zhang Zhifeng offered coldly.

“Are you talking about the Xue?” Bai Yunfei asked.

“Yeah!!” Mo Chen lit up, “It has to be them! They definitely wouldn’t let what happened yesterday lying down, so they must’ve gone after Tianmeng in revenge! I heard it before that there was a student commoner that once angered Xue Gui, so he had people torture that student so much that he had to leave the academy!”

“Did that really happen before?” Bai Yunfei’s eyes flashed dangerously. Though he didn’t think it was likely, if this was true, then....

“The Xue? Which Xue?” Zheng Kai inquired, “Yunfei, what happened yesterday?”

Bai Yunfei quickly retold the story of what happened yesterday.

“The Minister of Finance from the house of Xue? You went against a family like that?”

“Why? Are they an influential family or something?”

“Ah, no. That’s not it, they’re a relatively ‘minor’ one.” Zheng Kai replied, “But the Chancellor of Finance is in charge to a certain degree of the Tianhun Empire’s financial system, so he’s not quite an ordinary person either. Xue Chunhou is his name. While rather ordinary, he does have some skill in finance and has a bit of a relationship with His Majesty’s wife’s family, that’s why he has the key position he does now. That key position means he has several experts to his house, but he’s still not really a major player in the Capital. And I know that half-wit of a person Xue Gui. He’s just a

hedonistic second generational.”

“Then?” Bai Yunfei began, “Do you think the disappearance of Fang Tianmeng has anything to do with Xue Gui?”

“Is this Fang Tianmeng....a commoner?”

Bai Yunfei nodded.

“Then it’s hard to say. A student commoner without any background are easy targets for second generationals like Xue Gui. He likes to bully said people, and with brains like his, it’s hard to say if he’s really involved in this or not....”

“Zheng Kai, do you know where the Xue live?”

“What are planning to do?”

“Find out if it was Xue Gui that did it, let’s go!”

.....

East Fifth Street of the Capital where the Chancellor of Finance lived.

Standing by the gates stood several guards completely bored out of their minds. Suddenly, a wave of energy rolled over them, causing them to immediately clutch at the blades at their waist, “Halt! Who goes there?!”

Bai Yunfei gave them each a glance before looking to the gates in front of him, “Call Xue Gui to see me.”

“The young master?” The guard captain repeated, “The young master is currently in the middle of recuperating. Who are you and what do you want?”

Bai Yunfei dipped his head. Unwilling to mince any more words with the guards, he stepped forward to walk in.

“How dare you!!”

The guards immediately moved forward to intercept him.

But how could guards as weak as Soul Sprites stop Bai Yunfei?

With several blows, Bai Yunfei knocked them aside and led the students behind him in.

“Who dares trespass into Xue manor!!”

Straight away, a voice boomed out to stop Bai Yunfei and the others. All around them, over a dozen figures landed in place to surround them.

Bai Yunfei looked at them all, the strongest of them had only been a late-stage Soul Exalt. “I came here for Xue Gui. I’ve several questions for him, call him out to see me.”

“Watch your tone!! Who are you to intrude and demand things within Xue manor?!”

Another voice called out to Bai Yunfei before a stoutly figure came rushing forward. He was dressed in a richly robe and was rather quite fat. There was a bulge on the left side of his face, making him look rather comically.

This was the very same person Bai Yunfei had slapped and taught a lesson yesterday.

He walked over to the courtyards, and when he saw Bai Yunfei standing there, he came to a stop for a moment.

“It’s you!!”

Bai Yunfei spared him a cold glance, “You’ve good timing. Let me ask you, were you the ones that took my student?!”

Chapter 582: Intimidating the House of Xue (Third)

“What?”

The attendant hadn’t been expecting such a question. “Bai Yunfei! What do you mean your student...? You’ve the nerve to strongarm your way into Xue manor like this, have you no respect for the law?! Don’t think just because you’re strong you can run amok! Men! Arrest this man!!”

The people around Bai Yunfei immediately leapt forward to capture Bai Yunfei and the others at his command.

“Roarr!!!!”

A deafening roar boomed into the courtyard, startling everyone in there.

From where the once adorable looking white doggie had been next to Bai Yunfei, it had transformed into a giant lion-sized white mastiff in a flash of white light. Standing in front of Bai Yunfei, its paws cracked the stone tiles beneath it as it let loose another roar!

Every single person that had originally planned to attack Bai Yunfei immediately blanched as if struck by something and immediately retreated!

Those without enough strength had instead had their eyes roll to the back of their heads and faint to the ground!

“Cla--class....class seven soulbeast!!!!”

The attendant’s face drained of all blood from his face as he stared wide-eyed at the mastiff. The fat on his face quivered incessantly, and sweat drops the size of beans started to pool all around his face. “Class seven soulbeast! A class seven soulbeast! But how!?”

“Roar!!”

Another loud roar erupted from the courtyard, though this time it was the blue-eyes wyrm from Bai Yunfei's right that unleashed it. Growing to a larger size in a blaze of blue light, it waved its tail threateningly to fully show off how terrifying a two-storied soulbeast could be.

This wasn't the true extent to the blue-eyes wyrm, as it had looked around to see how much room it had in the courtyard before growing in size. Towering over everyone next to the mastiff, it roared again and shook its tail so that it smacked into several of the Soul Exalts, knocking them flying away into the walls and turning the wall into rubble.

This time, nobody dared moved and instead stared dumbfoundedly at the two terrifying soulbeasts.

“Call Xue Gui out to see me!!”

Bai Yunfei's voice thundered again, this time no longer patient enough to argue or fight with them. His two soulbeasts had done the intimidation for him, all he wanted right now was to accomplish his goals as quickly as possible.

Frightened out of his mind, the attendant tried to drum up the very last vestiges of his courage, “You....what do you want with the young master? Bai Yunfei, I'm telling you, even if yo—”

“Call out Xue Gui to see me!!” Bai Yunfei repeated thrice. “I only wish to ask him a few questions. If you don't call him out, then I'll go in myself!!”

“Sire, please calm yourself. We can talk civilized here. If my little son has angered you, I will punish him accordingly, please don't be extreme with your actions!”

An elderly voice called out from the other side of the hall then. In the next moment, a rather plump elderly man in his fifties came walking out assisted by a middle-aged man.

When the attendant saw the two, he cried out at once, “My lord!

Eldest master!!”

From his speech, the elder surely had to be the head of the Xue and Chancellor of Finance, Xue Chunhou. He was an ordinary person, but the middle-aged man next to him was his son, and a late-stage Soul Exalt.

He was currently being assisted by his son, as his face was deathly white and his body seemed like it had difficulty moving due to the overwhelming pressure of the permafrost mastiff and blue-eyes wyrm. But the fact that he was still able to keep moving despite not being a soul cultivator meant he was at least a person used to seeing people vastly stronger than him.

Without a care for how the man was, Bai Yunfei spoke, “I’ve said it before. Call Xue Gui out, I’ve some questions to ask him!”

The wrinkles around Xue Chunhou’s eyes tightened as he tried to smile. “What business might sire have with my young son? He’s in the middle of healing, I’m afraid he’s....”

“Chancellor Xue, I feel that it’s in your best interest to call out your son. My brother here has a few questions to ask. If he’s innocent, then we’ll leave at once and bother you no more.”

A rather lazy-sounding voice called out then, causing Xue Chunhou to look at the source and look on in surprise, “You’re....young master Zheng?!”

Zheng Kai nodded. “We didn’t come here intentionally to make trouble. My brother here is Bai Yunfei, instructor of Tianhun Academy. One of his students has gone missing, and we’re afraid your son might be involved somehow. If you could please call him out so my brother can inquire about her whereabouts.”

“Bai Yunfei!!”

Xue Chunhou’s eyes dilated at the mention of Bai Yunfei’s name. In fearful reverance, he gave Bai Yunfei a look before looking a little disturbed. “Lord...lord Bai’s student has gone missing? How

could my son be involved? He's been in his room healing the entire time..."

But when he saw the unkindly look on Bai Yunfei's face, he gulped. "Go," he commanded one of the soldiers, "Escort my son out!"

A while later, a pale-faced and bandaged Xue Gui came quivering out to face Bai Yunfei.

Bai Yunfei immediately started to question him when he appeared. "Let me ask you, did you send anyone to kidnap Fang Tianmeng?"

"Fang Tianmeng?" Xue Gui repeated. He had been completely scared when he was told Bai Yunfei was there for him, but he didn't know what Bai Yunfei was talking about, "What happened to her?"

"She's missing, did you or did you not send people after her?" Bai Yunfei asked again, staring heavily at Xue Gui. The Charm Bracelet on his left hand pulsed slightly....

Xue Gui didn't know how to respond, the other party had thought that he had kidnapped Bai Yunfei's students. And that was why they were interrogating him?

"I...I did not!" He defended himself. "I haven't done a thing at all! I've been home and in my room all day yesterday to now. I didn't go anywhere, how could I even send anyone to kidnap Fang Tianmeng?"

"You swear?"

"It really has nothing to do with me!" Xue Gui half-sobbed.

Bai Yunfei looked away to grip at his Charm Bracelet, his expression as stormy as ever.

He didn't think Xue Gui was lying because....Xue Gui was telling the truth.

Through the Charm Bracelet, Bai Yunfei was able to establish a mental link with Xue Gui without the other party knowing. He didn't talk with him, but he was able to sense his emotions and roughly what he was thinking. The ability to do so was something he had found out about the Charm Bracelet after studying it. With this, he was able to roughly sense the mood of a person of those with lesser mental strength than him. He couldn't directly hear what they were thinking about, but he could at the very least infer if they were lying or not.

Xue Gui was speaking the truth. He really had nothing to do with Fang Tianmeng's disappearance.

But if he didn't, then how in the world did Fang Tianmeng disappear?

For a few moments, Bai Yunfei thought to himself, but in the end, he looked towards Xue Chunhou, "Apologies for the disturbance, we'll be leaving."

"Let's go." He spoke to the others.

.....

Bai Yunfei was silent for a while after they left, leaving Mo Chen to ask him impatiently, "Instructor Bai, is Xue Gui really not responsible for Tianmeng's disappearance?"

Bai Yunfei nodded." Xue Gui wasn't lying. Let's return to the academy and see if Dongfang Yuhui and the others have found anything."

A while back, Dongfang Yuhui and Ouyang Yuhun had gone looking for clues where Fang Tianmeng might've gone. He only wished that the two would find a clue or something....

As they reached the gates of the academy, they saw Dongfang Yuhui waiting. When they saw Bai Yunfei, their eyes lit up before they ran towards him.

"What happened? Did you find any clues, where are the others?"

Dongfang Yuhui replied first, “They’re in the academy, we’ve found Ye Yu!”

“What?!” Bai Yunfei looked pleasantly surprised, “And Tianmeng?”

“We don’t know....” Dongfang Yuhui shook his head.

“Eh? What’s the meaning of that? If we found Ye Yu, how could we not know where Fang Tianmeng might be?”

“While we did find Ye Yu,” Dongfang Yuhui spoke grimly, “We can’t really ask him anything right now, because....he’s in a coma from his wounds!”

Chapter 583: The Whereabouts of Fang Tianmeng (Fourth)

In the dormitories where the fifth year fire section students lived, Bai Yunfei was in the unconscious Ye Yu's room to check up on him. The bones in his arms and feet had been broken, half his ribcage shattered, and even parts of his internal organs damaged. If not for his fortitude and his relatively early treatment, he would've died a long time ago.

By the time Bai Yunfei was there, a group of students were already gathered outside his room with a young woman in the room to treat his wounds. It was the water instructor, Shen Yirou!

After inquiring about the situation, Bai Yunfei found out that Ouyang Yuhun hadn't originally thought about taking Ye Yu back to the academy when he found him. They came across Shen Yirou on the way who decided to take over Ye Yu's healing treatment. It was only with her timely help that they were able to stabilize Ye Yu's health, else he would've slipped further into danger.

A soft glow of blue light filled the air as Shen Yirou's hands pressed against Ye Yu's body. Her elemental water was completely enveloping the young man's body as she circulated it through his body to clear out the irregularities in his body and aid its natural recovery.

Not wanting to disturb her, Bai Yunfei decided to wait with the nervous students outside.

It wasn't until three in the afternoon when the blue light within the room faded, and the fatigued Shen Yirou came walking out.

Seeing that the situation in the room was now over, Bai Yunfei moved to be the first one to the door. "Instructor Shen, how is Ye Yu?" He asked her.

Shen Yirou nodded her head, "He should be fine for now. His life

is no longer in danger in any case. But he needs a few days of rest still.”

Bai Yunfei sighed in relief inwardly, “When will he wake?”

“I know that you’ve some things you need to ask him, so I tried my best to help heal his consciousness. He might wake soon, but you have to ask him quickly, he needs to rest straight away.”

“Ah, yes.” Bai Yunfei nodded gratefully, “Many thanks, instructor Shen.”

She smiled, “No need, I am an instructor of Tianhun Academy as well, I should do at least this much for him.”

From within the room, the faint sounds of coughing could be heard as Ye Yu started to wake.

Eyes brightening, Bai Yunfei gave one last word of thanks to Shen Yirou before making his way in along with the other students.

Ye Yu’s eyes were slightly glassy when he blinked open his eyelids. In a daze, he looked around himself as if unsure of where he was, but then when he saw the large amount of people around him, he looked surprised.

“Ye Yu, your wounds are very serious. Don’t move. Just answer my questions for now.”

Bai Yunfei gently pressed Ye Yu so that he wouldn’t move and exacerbate his wounds. “Tell me quickly now, what were you doing yesterday night? Where is Fang Tianmeng now? And who hurt you?”

“Instructor Bai??”

Ye Yu was still looking slightly surprised to see Bai Yunfei standing there in his room, but then his mind reminded him of something, causing him to look flustered. “Tianmeng!! Ah! Tianmeng!! Instructor Bai! Something terrible has happened!

Tianmeng was kidnapped!!”

Growing grim in the face, Bai Yunfei asked, “Who took her? Do you know what happened? Be calm and tell me all that you know. I'll bring Tianmeng back!”

Trying his best to calm himself, Ye Yu breathed in and out several times before responding. “Yesterday night, Tianmeng and I....went together on a walk. She said she wanted to go eat somewhere on North Third Street, so I took her there. When we were on our way back to the academy, we were suddenly attacked by a group of people in black robes. They were all Soul Exalts, I....I wasn't a match for them. I tried my best, but they beat me so easily. After that, they took Tianmeng away....I....I was useless...I'm sorry instructor Bai, I...I couldn't protect Tianmeng....”

Still looking as grim as ever, Bai Yunfei placed a comforting hand on Ye Yu's shoulder, “Do you know what they looked like? Or who they are? What is their goal in taking Tianmeng? And where are they taking her to?”

Ye Yu struggled to think for a moment before shaking his head, “I don't know....I saw their faces, but no one that I can recognize. I don't know who they are, and I don't know where they might've taken her too....”

Bai Yunfei's heart plummeted—was there really not even a single clue?!

But then, Ye Yu's eyes brightened as if he remembered something, “Wait! I remember....when they took Tianmeng and were about to leave, I was still slightly conscious. I think I heard one of them said to return somewhere....somewhere....”

He racked his brain hard for the memory, “Return to a city....had to do with 'Bai'....Bai something city....”

“Baishan City?!” Bai Yunfei clutched at the straw.

“Yeah!! Baishan City! One of those people said they were to return to Baishan City!”

Baishan City....Baishan City where the house of Cao was!!

Was the Cao really the responsible party?!

A wave of shock surged through Bai Yunfei’s heart. Was what Zheng Kai really said true? The Cao were looking for revenge?!

Zheng Kai looked surprised as well. “Yunfei, could it really be that Cao Jun is looking for revenge?”

Bai Yunfei’s face grew dark, his eyes flashing dangerously. The only one that had any connections to Baishan City and had a possible motive to kidnap Fang Tianmeng was perhaps only the Cao....

“We know where Fang Tianmeng has gone. The Cao are the most suspicious right now! We must go straight away!” Bai Yunfei announced without delay.

“I’ll go!” Mo Wanxia spoke up.

“Me too!” “I’m going too!”

In quick succession, the other students there spoke up in agreement to go save Fang Tianmeng.

But Bai Yunfei shook his head. “You all cannot. I will go by myself. We don’t know if Fang Tianmeng was really taken to Baishan City, perhaps they might not left yet. They might still be in the Capital, you should look for her here.”

Before anyone could voice in dissent, Bai Yunfei continued, “Don’t argue with me and do as I say! If I fly straight to Baishan City as fast as I can, none of you will be able to catch up. I’ve no way of carrying any of you there.”

Zheng Kai still looked unsure, “Yunfei, at least let me go with you. One person more is always a good thing.”

“No. I’ll go myself. That way, it won’t take long for me to get

there.” Bai Yunfei shook his head.

“Do you have a map, though? I don’t know which way Baishan City is.”

“Instructor Bai, are you planning to go to Baishan City?” A gentle voice called out from the other side of the room. Shen Yirou had finally chose then to speak up, “If it’s Baishan City, I’ve a Way Stone that might be of use to you.”

Her right hand shook to retrieve a crystal the size of an egg into it. In the middle of the crystal was a small arrow that seemed to shake slightly as it pointed in a certain direction.

“A Way Stone?” Bai Yunfei asked, “What are those?”

Zheng Kai’s eyes lit up, “Instructor Shen has an item like that? How lucky.”

He explained it to Bai Yunfei, “This is a Way Stone. Two years ago, the Royal Family tried to study these things. They’re made from a special material that acts like a magnet of sorts. Its really mysterious. If you place the core in a place, you can use smaller bits of it and turn them into Way Stones that’ll lead you into the direction of the core no matter how far you go away from it. All of the major cities in the empire have cores like this, but Way Stones haven’t been available for the public for too long. Only those with power have them.”

“Such a thing like this exists?” Bai Yunfei asked, this was the first he had ever heard of such a thing.

But no matter how strange this new item was, Bai Yunfei had no time to think about it. Taking the Way Stone from Shen Yirou, he thanked her again, “Thank you very much, instructor Shen!”

“No need, instructor Bai. Saving a person is important.”

“Very well.” Bai Yunfei nodded and looked around at the students in the room. “Don’t worry, if Tianmeng is in Baishan City, I’ll definitely save her!”

And with that, the permafrost mastiff next to him leapt out the window to grow large in size. Stepping out the room, Bai Yunfei took the blue-eyes wyrm and Xiao Qi with him to land on top of the mastiff. With a loud roar from the mastiff, it transformed into a streak of white light to disappear into the distance.

With Bai Yunfei gone, Zheng Kai's eyes flickered as he thought to himself. "This feels strange....I have to make sure of something. Better get home to report this to father and big brother..."

Chapter 584: Rushing to Baishan City (Fourth)

The sun was starting to set in the west to bring about the night with its descent when a white streak of light tore through the skies to travel north.

Within this light was a permafrost mastiff flying at extreme speeds with Bai Yunfei sitting on its back.

At the moment, he was staring hard at the Way Stone in his hand while thinking of the situation at hand.

“The ones who kidnapped Fang Tianmeng are most likely the house of Cao. But....why did they kidnap her? Is it because Cao Jun wants revenge? Why didn’t he come after me then? What’s the point of going after Fang Tianmeng?

“Is it only Cao Jun’s revenge? What if there’s another reason....”

Those thoughts weighed heavily on Bai Yunfei’s mind. The situation as it seemed, was more complicated than it might look. Right now, he couldn’t possibly think of anything he could do. It was already almost a full day since Fang Tianmeng had been captured. If the enemy was prepared and ready to go after they kidnapped her, they might be back in Baishan City by now. Bai Yunfei couldn’t afford to delay. Every minute he was late meant Fang Tianmeng was closer and closer to extreme peril with every minute.

He heard Zheng Kai mention before that Baishan City was only a minor city. The Cao were probably the most powerful in the city with one or two Soul Kings at most. This meant they were the strongest in Baishan City, but outside of that, they were a second-rate city compared to their relative proximity.

Bai Yunfei wasn’t afraid of a power like that. With his current strength, he had an ace or two up his sleeve. With Xiao Qi, he had

at least some semblance of power to fight back. And with the permafrost mastiff, the entire house of Cao wouldn't be able to completely overwhelm him.

Right now, he only wanted to guarantee Fang Tianmeng's safety and bring her back safe and sound.

Of all the students, he was most familiar with Fang Tianmeng. She was a student who originated from one of the commoners. Gentle, smart, and determined despite her upbringing as an orphan, she had been picked up by one of the instructors who saw her talent. She spent the rest of her childhood growing up and training in the academy. In the day, she spent her time working in the academy to pay off her dues to the academy. She had great talent for cultivation and a great training ethic. She wanted to work hard and train so that she could graduate and join the Tianhun School. That much would be more than enough to satisfy her life completely. But now she was in danger....

For the past few days, Bai Yunfei had felt one with his role as an 'instructor'. Though his students had been given to him, he felt responsible for their safety and didn't want anything to happen to any of them.

"If that braindead second generational just wants to make reprisals, then it shouldn't be too hard to diffuse the situation, but if he dares harm Fang Tianmeng....An icy glint entered Bai Yunfei's eyes--however much damage Cao Jun inflicted onto Fang Tianmeng would be returned onto him tenfold!!

.....

"No matter the case, I have to be prepared for a battle. If the Soul King of the Cao fights, then it'll be a pain...." Bai Yunfei muttered to himself as he absentmindedly touched at the Soul Sentinel Scarf on his head. After the near-death ambush on him last time, Bai Yunfei had a great deal of acknowledgement for the Soul Sentinel Scarf. With that, he was able to protect himself from the strongest

attack of the Soul Kings and was able to launch a counterattack.

He touched at the Charm Bracelet on his left arm as well. “Good thing I tried out the effects before. Wonder how strong it has to be to protect myself from a Soul King....”

Thinking a little more about it, Bai Yunfei checked over the many soul armaments he had. He had a generous amount on him right now, most of them he was more than familiar with how to use.

The Soul Sentinel Scarf, Cataclysmic Seal, Fire-tipped Spear, Ardent Sun Glove, Critical Glove, Flameblade Bracer, Returner Bracer, Desert Eagles, Cultivation Pendant, Charm Bracelet, bracelet that enhanced elemental fire strength, Violet Soul Ring, Yun’s Soul Ring, and the Flash Lightning Boots....

There was also the metal-type armor given to him by Wu Yang. He was wearing it right now, so today would be a good time to test it out.

Touching at the armor, Bai Yunfei watched as the stats appeared in his head.

Equipment Grade: Low Heaven

Elemental Affinity: Metal

Upgrade Level: +10

Defense: 2300

Additional Defense: 1100

Soul Compatibility: 12%

+10 Additional Effect: Consume soulforce in order to double the defenses of this armor for one minute.

Upgrade Requirement: 120 Soulpoints

It was a rather ordinary effect that had extraordinary applications. Double the defense meant having over six thousand points worth of defense, that was as good as a mid-heaven tier soul armament. With this, Bai Yunfei had yet another layer of protection in his battles.

.....

With the speed of the permafrost mastiff, Bai Yunfei was able to travel through the night until the late morning of the next day when a city was finally starting to show itself.

On the walls of Baishan City, the guards standing around on the top of the walls were lazing about when one of them bugged his eyes out at something. “Look!” He pointed, “What’s that!?”

Following the gaze of his finger, everyone saw a white streak of light travel towards them, causing a disturbance in the forces. It was a tiny speck at first, but within the blink of an eye, it was already nearing them for the soldiers to see a white lion-like animal in side the light.

The soldiers were only commoners, and the soul cultivators employed there were very weak--many of them Soul Apprentices. The guard captain was a Soul Personage himself and was hardly capable of seeing what was in the white streak of light. But as it drew close, he was finally able to see what it was. “That’s....that’s...that’s a soulbeast!!

“A terrestrial-type soulbeast that can fly....a class six!!”

The guard captain cried out. With his limited knowledge, he was only able to think about a class six. A class seven was something he had never thought about before.

This caught the attention of every soldier there. Soon enough, the walls was like a hornet’s nest before the white streak of light came to a stop overhead. The soldiers looked up to look at the wolf-like soulbeast in dread--on top of this soulbeast was a person!

“If I may ask, where is the house of Cao located in this city?”

The question took the soldiers by surprise. The person speaking on top of this soulbeast sounded especially young.

Blinking several times in surprise, it was the captain guard that spoke. With all the respect he could give under his fear, he replied,

“I...this underling....my lord. The house....the house of Cao is located to the northeast in the largest manor of the city.”

Just the fact that there was a class six soulbeast in front of him meant that the person riding on top of it had to be a Soul Exalt at the very least. That was an entity a little guard captain like him could hardly afford to anger. So he could only reply and point his finger in the direction asked.

Bai Yunfei followed his finger and took note of the direction. “Thank you!”

Under the stunned eyes of everyone, the permafrost mastiff took off again and disappeared from sight.

Chapter 585: Trapped!!

The house of Cao held a great deal of power in Baishan City. The amount of territory they held was massive and was practically comparable to the lord-mayor of the city, if not more lavish. The gates to their manor was a great road that barely any person walked on. There weren't even any vendors on that road in fear of the Cao. No one wanted to be the one to disturb the 'peace' there.

Bai Yunfei hid his aura as soon as he entered the city. Leaping over the rooftops on the permafrost mastiff, Bai Yunfei finally landed on a small dark alleyway and walked out from it like any other passerby to head for the large manor.

On the gates was a large sign board that had the words 'Cao Manor' written neatly on it.

This was his destination.

Taking a careful look around, Bai Yunfei could only find some Soul Warriors guarding the place. Aside from that, there was nothing that could signify anything was out of the ordinary.

What he needed to do right now was make sure Fang Tianmeng was really in this place.

Bai Yunfei withdrew the Walk-on Strawhat and placed it on his head to keep his soulforce to a minimum. Now fully prepared, he walked towards the right of the manor walls.

With his back resting against the wall, Bai Yunfei looked like a person just trying to take a rest. Looking down, he spread out his soulsense to scan the entirety of the manor.

He wasn't trying to map out the place. What he was doing was scanning for any familiar auras and thus appropriately weakened his soulsense so that it wouldn't be too noticeable obvious that he was doing so. There were Soul Exalts around, and he wanted to avoid catching their eye if possible.

After scanning half of the manor, Bai Yunfei saw that roughly twenty Soul Exalts were there, only one of them being familiar. It was the elderly man in charge of protecting Cao Jun from before. He was currently in the southwest quadrant of the manor in a healing meditational trance.

Another ten seconds later, Bai Yunfei felt himself grow worried when he couldn't find anything. He was also starting to worry if he was going to be discovered.

“Eh?”

As his soulsense was scanning the southeastern quadrant, his eyes suddenly lit up, “Cao Jun!”

He had finally located Cao Jun. Applying even more soulsense in his search, he scanned the approximate area and widened his smile in glee.

“This is....Fang Tianmeng! She's here!”

He could sense Fang Tianmeng's aura next to Cao Jun! But her aura was slightly chaotic and weak.

Cao Jun was right next to her, meaning the two of them were in the same room!

This sent Bai Yunfei into a slight panic. Now that he located her, Bai Yunfei had to go save her before the worst could happen!!

Leaving the blue-eyes wyrm outside for safety, Bai Yunfei took Xiao Qi and the permafrost mastiff with him. He leapt silently over the walls in a place where no one would be able to see him and quickly made his way over to where Fang Tianmeng was.

There'd be no way he'd be able to save her without anyone knowing. But if he could avoid having people detect him for as long as possible, the chances of him saving her would be greater.

But, Bai Yunfei was only able to get halfway to where Fang Tianmeng was before things took a turn for the worse!!

Bai Yunfei hadn't noticed the aura of twenty Soul Exalts until they flew out at him all at once!!

"Whoosh whoosh whoosh!"

The sound of rustling wind was heard as people started to appear one by one to surround Bai Yunfei with seven of them standing in front of him while the rest surrounded him!

Bai Yunfei's eyes dilated in shock. Pushing himself away from his hidden but disadvantaged spot in the corner of the wall to leap onto a nearby rooftop.

From where he once stood, the entire area was filled with people—around eighteen of them at least!!

They were all staring at Bai Yunfei with cold looks on their faces and weapons in their hands. Their auras had been locked onto Bai Yunfei, meaning they had been clearly waiting for Bai Yunfei!

Bai Yunfei realized then—this had been a trap for him! And he had fallen for it!

"But how....how did they know that I'd even come to save her?!" Bai Yunfei thought furiously to himself. "Eighteen Soul Exalts, that's troublesome. But the most important thing is that I make sure Fang Tianmeng is safe...."

A part of his soulsense was still scanning Fang Tianmeng and her circumstances while the rest of his mind raced towards thinking of a solution to this mess.

Of the eighteen Soul Exalts, eight of them were early-stage, three of them were mid-stage, four of them late-stage, and three of them were peak late-stage. And furthermore....it seemed as though the entirety of the experts were here to fight him, though Bai Yunfei didn't see where the rumored Soul King was, perhaps he was hiding somewhere....

The Soul Exalts didn't waste any time and flew straight for him at once. Without even saying anything, they launched an attack

straight away!

A small ‘hah!’ escaped from their lips as they charged up for battle. Elemental energy pervaded the air as blades of wind, bolts of lightning, fireballs and other such attacks flew at Bai Yunfei from every angle, leaving him practically nowhere to run. It looked as though he would be killed straight off the bat!

Eyes flashing dangerously, Bai Yunfei waved his right hand, calling out the Cataclysmic Seal to him at once rather than dodging.

“Boom! Boom! Boom! Boom....”

Every single one of the attacks except for the ones that attacked the areas Bai Yunfei might’ve fled to landed on the barrier around Bai Yunfei. Explosions rocked the area as elemental energy tore at each other upon impact. Even the attackers had to retreat a bit from the explosions they set off. The building Bai Yunfei had been standing on had been reduced to nothing but ruins.

However, Bai Yunfei’s aura was still there and without any change. He wasn’t hurt in the slightest!

The orange light around his person started to disappear as the barrier dissolved, leaving a completely intact and untouched Bai Yunfei standing there. But in the moment the barrier dropped, Bai Yunfei’s hands were already finishing up the last sequence of seals, activating a technique to bring him up to the level of a late-stage Soul Exalt!

‘Coil’ Form activated!

It took a moment before the Soul Exalts were able to react to him surviving their first volley. Like birds of prey, they shot towards Bai Yunfei to strike him dead this time!

Bai Yunfei focused his eyes as he watched the many enemies approach him. Both his hands shook slightly to retrieve a Desert Eagle in both of them. Leaning slightly to the side to adopt a

strange stance, Bai Yunfei's person began to disappear into a myriad of mirror images as elemental bullets red and violet shot everywhere at his attackers.

Gun-Fu!!

“Bang! Bang! Bang! Bang....”

A series of gunfire was had as Bai Yunfei fired at his attackers, pushing them back with each shot. Some of the early-stage Soul Exalts hadn't been able to stop themselves from being hit with the double strength lightning bullets and were riddled through the body. With a grunt, they fell from the skies!

Disengaging from their attacking strategy, the three peak late-stage Soul Exalts retreated strangely before heading downwards as if to put something down and circling around the area in a ring.

“Buzzz!!”

After forcing the attackers back with his Gun-fu, Bai Yunfei felt a strange buzzing sound as a prismatic ray of light shot into the air. It circled around him for five hundred meters around before the light completely shut him out from the outside!

Bai Yunfei's eyes dilated in surprise, “This is....an illusion formation!!”

Chapter 586: A Soul King Appears!

Not only did the Cao have so many experts to call on, they even had an illusion matrix setup to deal with him!

Shocked, Bai Yunfei felt the feeling of apprehension in him start to rise. He was in a far greater deal of trouble than he expected, these people had already been ready for him for a very long time!!

The initialization of the illusion matrix started to warp the surrounding area near Bai Yunfei. It wasn't a perfect scenery change, but it made distance and enemy motions quite blurry and different than from the reality. Even his soulsense felt a little weak, meaning Bai Yunfei's fighting ability would be hampered.

The Charm Bracelet and Soul Sentinel Scarf started to shine brightly, decreasing the harmful effects of the illusion matrix. Bai Yunfei stored away the Desert Eagles and Walk-on Strawhat to take out his Fire-tipped Spear instead. The Cataclysmic Seal hummed protectively around Bai Yunfei, pulsating with powerful energy as it waited.

As if empowered by the illusion matrix, all of Bai Yunfei's enemies flew even faster at him to attack.

“Roar!!”

A roar erupted into the heavens as a white flash of light shot from Bai Yunfei's side. The permafrost mastiff was finally taking action by attacking with a soul attack!

The illusion around Bai Yunfei trembled slightly at the mastiff's roar, as did the faces of all his enemies. Some grunted in pain as if they had just been stabbed by something sharp, and several of the weaker early-stage Soul Exalts teetered in the air before crashing back down to the ground.

How could an early-stage Soul Exalt withstand the soul attack of a class seven soulbeast?

But the attack was slightly weak due to the range it covered and that it was meant more to intimidate. The other enemies were largely unaffected by it and were already raring to go attack Bai Yunfei after a second to recompose himself. But when Bai Yunfei raised his right hand to point at them, they saw the brick floating around Bai Yunfei grow to thirty meters in height to attack the three peak late-stage Soul Exalts and two other late-stage Soul Exalts!

“Chirp!!”

At the same time, Xiao Qi gave a furious trill as it flapped its wings. It transformed into a bird as large as a roc with its entire body flashing violet in color. The Wind and Lightning Feathers shined brightly before Xiao Qi attacked the side left of Bai Yunfei. Hundreds of lightning bolts about as thick as Bai Yunfei’s arm immediately attacked the six other enemies on that side!

“Roar!!”

Another tyrannical and angry roar erupted from outside the illusion matrix. The matrix violently shuddered again before a three-storied tall soulbeast came crashing into it—it was the blue-eyes wyrm!

The appearance of the blue-eyes wyrm saw to it seeing three enemies right in front of him. Without hesitation, it leapt forward to bite down on them!

“Ah!!”

There was a howl of pain as one of the mid-stage Soul Exalts moved far too slow and was caught by the wyrm. Taken into its mouth, the Soul Exalt became the first to die so tragically in the battle.

In the blink of an eye, most of the enemies that had been attacking Bai Yunfei were now finding themselves on the receiving end of an attack!!

“Bang bang bang....”

The Cataclysmic Seal knocked several times against several enemies, sending them flying away. Shrinking in size, it returned to Bai Yunfei who was already taking off towards the direction in front of him!

The direction where Fang Tianmeng was!

He didn't want to fight these people at all; he had to save Fang Tianmeng first before he could worry about anything else.

Right now, there were two enemies still in front of Bai Yunfei's path. With his spear and fist, he sent them flying back charging for the room three hundred meters away.

“Hmph!”

But when he only got a hundred meters closer to the room, a sneer came from one of the rooms nearby and brought Bai Yunfei into a pause straight away. In the split second he had stopped, a white flash of light came forward into the air and stopped right in front of him to tear out Bai Yunfei's head with a clawed hand!

“Soul King!”

The realization hit him practically milliseconds later, prompting Bai Yunfei to kick back in rapid retreat. A Soul King had actually appeared!

But it still remained to be seen if this was the Soul King of the Cao, or if there was still another Soul King hiding....

This new Soul King wore gray robes and had an extremely frosty look on his face. Bai Yunfei noticed a layer of frost surrounding the Soul King's body that seemingly froze the air around him, meaning Bai Yunfei's backwards momentum was starting to slow down!

Even though he had only just barely evaded the first strike of the Soul King, Bai Yunfei found himself under a second attack again when the Soul King reached forward again with his still-

outstretched arm to grab at his head.

Clutching his right fist, Bai Yunfei lashed out with his Fire-tipped Spear, only to have the Soul King step to the side to dodge it. Bai Yunfei gritted his teeth and lashed out this time with his left fist where the Soul King was moving towards!

“Bang!!”

A golden light exuded from Bai Yunfei’s fist when it collided with the chilling air from the Soul King’s palm. There was a muffled explosion before Bai Yunfei was flung backwards while the Soul King somehow found himself also taking several steps back.

Coming to a stop a hundred meters away, Bai Yunfei had a pained expression on his face. He had used the Critical Glove’s effect to attack with a blow four times his regular strength, but even that much strength was only enough to send the Soul King back several steps....

When he managed to stabilize his footing, Bai Yunfei heard the sound of rustling wind coming at him. Looking up, he saw the right hand of the Soul King rising up to point his forefinger at Bai Yunfei. From the forefinger, an icicle half a meter long had formed from it. In less than two seconds, six individual icicles flew out to stab at his hands, legs, heart, and head!

“Tsk!!” Bai Yunfei cursed. The Cataclysmic Seal next to him hummed as it provided a barrier of elemental energy to protect him.

The icicles impacted against the barrier, but in the end, the barrier held strong and successfully protected Bai Yunfei.

Seeing that his attack failed, the ice-type Soul King narrowed his eyes and gave a small grunt. It was almost silent, but to the ears of Bai Yunfei, it was as loud as a clap of thunder! In that instant, Bai Yunfei’s face turned deathly white and he started to look pained!

A soul attack!!

Sensing an opportunity, the ice-type Soul King raised his right hand again, summoning multiple icicles into the area.

They were more like spears made from ice with their length. Catapulting themselves with so fast that it sounded like lightning was striking, the spears of ice shot towards the barrier of Bai Yunfei's!

In normal situations, a Soul King would only need to use a soul attack and then their strongest move to kill their target. A Soul Exalt had neither the capabilities of dodging, stopping, or even getting their bearings straight before the combination killed them. But Bai Yunfei wasn't a normal Soul Exalt. As soon as the spears of ice were coming towards him, Bai Yunfei was strong enough to calculate his options. There wasn't any time to dodge, so all he could do was hold his arms in front of him to protect himself.

“Bang!!”

From tip to shaft, the icy spear started to disintegrate before finally returning back to crystals. But that didn't stop Bai Yunfei from being slammed backwards from the force. The right arm holding the Fire-tipped Spear started to tremble from the strain of the blow, and his face was looking even more pained.

Most of the damage had been alleviated by the Flameblade Bracer on his right arm, but there was still a significant amount of force that had been transmitted past it and into his arm, making it practically impossible for him to contain holding onto the Fire-tipped Spear.

Again, the Soul King found himself somewhat at a loss for words at how Bai Yunfei had managed to survive his soul attack and ice attack. He had put a lot of force behind his moves, but before he could even think about it, the howls of pain nearby wrestled his attention away from Bai Yunfei just in time to see the permafrost mastiff kill another three Soul Exalts!

The Soul King gazed at the sight of their death in solemnity.

Looking back to Bai Yunfei, the Soul King pointed a finger at the skies overhead. His entire body began to shine brightly with light, empowering the area with a stifling amount of energy. The air around him started to crackle, and countless crystals of ice started to formulate in the hundred meters around him!

And the largest concentration of those crystals were in the space of air above Bai Yunfei's head where the Soul King was pointing at!

Just a hundred meters above Bai Yunfei, a white mist was starting to appear with a crackling sound. Bai Yunfei stood at the eye of a whirlpool of elemental ice, swirling faster and faster over head like a tornado of ice with an icy tip that threatened to strike him down!

This move was abnormally strong, and by the time Bai Yunfei had realized what was going on above him, the giant tip of ice was dropping onto his head!

Chapter 587: And a Second (First)

Like a drill made of ice, the icy tornado came touching down towards the ground with the might of a mountain as its weight to crush anything in its downwards path!

Bai Yunfei had been worrying the other attacks of the Soul King when this icy tornado was forming overhead. It was only when the icy tornado had locked onto him that he realized he was stuck in this predicament! With how fast it was traveling, Bai Yunfei had barely looked up when the tip of the icy tornado was about ten meters away from his head!

There...wasn't time to dodge! And even defending would be insanely difficult!

“Roar!!!”

As he was about to be hit by this terrifying attack, Bai Yunfei heard a tremendous roar coming from his side. And at the same time, a soulforce not inferior to that of the ice-type Soul King flared to life before a white streak of light slammed into the icy tornado from the side!

It was the permafrost mastiff!

“Boom!!”

There was another explosion as hailstones as large as his fist began to fall from the icy tornado as if it was hailing as the tornado began to fall apart!

Bai Yunfei sighed in relief. Activating the Flash Step to travel away two hundred meters to the side to dodge the remaining pieces of ice, Bai Yunfei watched as the remaining pieces of the tornado crashed into the earth and reduced the place to rubble.

The ice-type Soul King looked even more stern at his failed attack. But before he could launch another attack, the cries of several more Soul Exalts dying to Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm

was heard!

The task force meant to attack and kill Bai Yunfei had been reduced to such a miserable state in the span of a few minutes. The ice-type Soul King couldn't help but feel worried. Surely, the lord-mayor of the city would've noticed this already, and even though there was the illusionary matrix up in place, it would still be hard to explain this situation....

As he was about to launch into another full-fledged attack on Bai Yunfei, a white streak of light came flying at him, causing him to move to the side in a hurry. At the same time, a claw came flying at where his head had been.

He couldn't dedicate all his energy to trying to kill Bai Yunfei now, the permafrost mastiff was there to bother him!!

He was only an early-stage Soul King, which meant he was on equal strength with the permafrost mastiff. But if they fought, it would be a difficult battle where he wouldn't be able to determine if he'd win or not.

Elemental energy was flung around the area, further destroying the buildings and environment as Bai Yunfei had the permafrost mastiff battle in a way that brought the Soul King away while he slowly made his way towards the end of the illusionary matrix in the direction where Fang Tianmeng was.

Of the eighteen Soul Exalts that attacked Bai Yunfei earlier, nine of them had already died. Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm were far more than enough to deal with the remaining nine even without the permafrost mastiff, and within two to three minutes, the remaining survivors were completely suppressed by Bai Yunfei's side.

Though the situation had started off on the wrong foot and had progressed in ways Bai Yunfei didn't like with the Soul King actually appearing, Bai Yunfei was starting to fall back into the rhythm. In fact, he was even starting to hold the upper hand now!

Now that the situation was more or less controlled, Bai Yunfei shot towards the direction of the Fang Tianmeng again. As long as he could save her, Bai Yunfei would be able to fight or run with some peace of mind! But only once he had her in safety!

But not even another hundred meters closer to Fang Tianmeng's location, Bai Yunfei felt a bone-chilling air descend on him as if death was about to strike again. Without hesitation, he flung himself to the left and bent his waist at a right angle to evade.

“Crack!!”

Just as he kicked off into a perpendicular direction, three bolts of lightning as thick as his arm shot at the direction he had been traveling from before striking the ground, leaving behind three smoking craters....

Drenched with sweat, Bai Yunfei's heart was pounding with fear—if he was late by even just one second, that crater would've been him....

Before he could even fully think about how close to death he was, Bai Yunfei was once again struck with an invisible attack, forcing him to stagger backwards two steps!

“A soul attack!”

Bai Yunfei realized. The Soul Sentinel Scarf was already working into overtime as it raced to bring his person back to a normal state. No sooner did he realize that he was under attack when a violet blade drop down from the corner of his eyes to cut at his head!

Just barely after Bai Yunfei had dodged the lightning bolts, the space nearby him started to warp in on itself. Like ripples of water, the space pulsated outwards to reveal a black-robed man stepping out from it. Eyes radiating with murderous intent, the figure held a violet warblade in his hand!

“Clank!!”

The sound of metal hitting metal was heard—much to the black-

robed person's shock—as the warblade he used was stopped by Bai Yunfei's Fire-tipped Spear, stopping the strike that should've killed Bai Yunfei!

“Hss....boom!!”

Even though he was able to save himself from death, Bai Yunfei hadn't been able to cast off the downwards swing. The resulting force of the swing had transmitted into Bai Yunfei, slamming him down into the ground below, creating a crater about ten meters deep where he landed.

A second later, a figure leapt out from the dust, revealing a rather ragged Bai Yunfei back in the skies to stare at the black-robed man in pain and shock.

A second Soul King had appeared!

And this one was a mid-stage Soul King!

Furthermore....Bai Yunfei could feel that at the same time this Soul King appeared, several more figures had made their way through the illusionary matrix to join the fray!

Nine....nine peak late-stage Soul Exalts!

The nine of them were separated into three groups, each group there to deal with Xiao Qi, the blue-eyes wyrm, and even the permafrost mastiff!

The advantage Bai Yunfei had only started to enjoy had immediately been wiped out!

Just....how many people did the house of Cao have?!

He couldn't even worry for Xiao Qi or the others since the lighting-type Soul King was already flying at him!!

Moving in an instant, the second Soul King lifted his left hand swiped at the air in front of him before disappearing in a flash of light. In the next second, he was in front of Bai Yunfei to swing the giant glowing warblade in his right hand down again!

Another soul attack!

Originally planning on defending against the warblade with all he had, Bai Yunfei immediately felt the Yun's Soul Ring on his left hand flash with light before a strange energy enveloped his body. The faint shaking sensation he had only just started to feel in his soul had immediately vanished right afterwards!

The +12 additional effect had activated!!

10% Chance of avoiding a spirit-based attack.

Cooldown of 1 hour.

In the moment the ring activated, Bai Yunfei's eyes flashed. There was a chance!

If he had been hit by that soul attack, then the warblade would most likely deal a great deal of damage to him even if he blocked it. But since the soul attack didn't affect him at all...

Chapter 588: How Despicable!! (Second)

Biting his lips almost hard enough to draw blood, Bai Yunfei used the Wave Treading Steps to just barely evade the warblade coming down onto his head! A moment later, there was a flash of red light from the Fire-tipped Spear before Bai Yunfei's body shivered and split into three!

Doppelgangers!

The three Bai Yunfei's stood shoulder to shoulder with an identically red spear in their heads to stab at the lightning-type Soul King!

“Impossible!!”

The lightning-type Soul King drew backwards in surprise. He had been confident that the soul attack of his would be able to inflict a great deal of damage for him to land the finishing blow, but then Bai Yunfei had evaded his warblade instead of succumbing to it instead. And even more insulting, he didn't even look winded from the soul attack. Not only was he unharmed, he was striking back at the Soul King!!

It wasn't as though he couldn't defend himself from this development. But the elemental fire radiating from each of the three spears was extremely real, his senses were telling him that the three Bai Yunfei's in front of him were all real!! Not even sure of what was going on, the Soul King brought his warblade back to defend himself from the spears.

“Clink! Clink! Clink!”

With that one movement of his warblade, he managed to parry all three of the spears that came at him!

Two of the doppelgangers were knocked back when their spears failed to connect with the Soul King, leaving the Bai Yunfei on the very left to be the real one. That Bai Yunfei had his spear aimed at

the Soul King's throat when it had been stopped, but rather than be knocked back like the other two spears, this one....had exploded in a flurry of red light!!

+10 Additional effect of the Fire-tipped Spear, activate!

20% Chance to create an explosion with an attack of 150% of this equipment's attack when stabbing.

Cooldown of 20 seconds.

“Boom!!”

A great deal of elemental fire exploded from the tip of the Fire-tipped Spear and encapsulated the Soul King straight away. There was a rustle of movement as a figure came flying out from the flames, his mangled and burnt right hand held in front of him. The warblade was nowhere to be seen in his hands as he retreated, but two objects fell from the fire a moment later, revealing two broken halves of the warblade!!

The lightning-type Soul King couldn't even describe just how shocked he was. The strength of Bai Yunfei's spear had been far stronger than he initially expected. His own warblade had been a low-heaven tier soul armament, but....it had snapped under the pressure, unable to withstand the power that was the Fire-tipped Spear!

Bai Yunfei was overjoyed to see the weapon break. As he was about to press on with his attack, he saw the other Soul King point a finger at him. There was a crackling sound as purple light filled the area around the Soul King's body. Bai Yunfei immediately waved his left hand, bringing the Cataclysmic Seal forward to protect him again in its earth barrier.

Immediately, purple spheres of lightning the size of basketballs started to fill the area for fifty meters all around to trap Bai Yunfei in like a cage. In the moment he had the Cataclysmic Seal protect him with its barrier, Bai Yunfei saw the Soul King clench his left

fist to activate his move. In response to his fist clenching, the countless balls of lightning began to link with another with a crackle and pull towards each other!

“Boom!!!”

A blinding amount of purple light flooded the area with sparks of lightning everywhere.

At the edge of the lightning pool, the lightning-type Soul King pressed his left hand to his right wrist. There was a flash of purple light as the wound on his hand started to heal slowly, his eyes shining with a bright light.

Sensing something from the lightning pool, the Soul King raised an eye just in time to see a fiery figure leap out—Bai Yunfei had been completely unharmed. “He’s unharmed!! Just....how many defensive soul armaments does he have?!”

There was no way the Soul King believed Bai Yunfei could escape unscathed from his attack. It had to be a soul armament of his. He had been surprised after all that Bai Yunfei’s spear was able to break his low-heaven tier warblade. Even though he knew a little about Bai Yunfei before the battle begun, the proof in front of him was still very surprising.

But no matter how surprised he was, the Soul King had still been prepared to find Bai Yunfei leaping out from his attack. With his right hand more or less healed, he raised it and curled his fingers. All of the elemental lightning in front of him flew back to the center of his palm as if drawn to it, converging in the center of it. When Bai Yunfei came to a stop just a dozen meters away from him, the Soul King grunted in exertion as a sphere of elemental lightning swelled in size from his hand. Shooting out, it took on the form of a violet tiger to leap and cry out with a very realistic sound of a tiger!

At the same time he did that, Bai Yunfei was making a move himself. Rather than leap out of the way of the tiger, he was

making a series of hand seals, his spear already gone back into his space ring. Upon the last seal, the elemental fire within his body exploded in intensity before swirling around his arms like flowing water. Clenching both hands at his waist, he then punched outwards!

Dual Dragon Burst!

Two fiery dragons flew out from his hands with an animalistic roar to strike at the lightning tiger!

“Boom!!!”

Lightning and fire struck one another in a storm of energy. Elemental energy surged outwards from the epicenter of the collision with a great tremor, but what surprised the Soul King most was the fact that the elemental fire had been strong enough to push and overwhelm the elemental lightning to come towards him!

Flying several meters higher in to the sky so that he was on the same level as Bai Yunfei, the Soul King watched as the surge of elemental fire impacted against the ground and created a fiery crater about a hundred meters deep.

Bai Yunfei doubled up at the waist, his mouth exhaling and inhaling deeply. The toil of using the Dual Dragon Burst had been intense on him, and it had barely done a thing besides defeating the lightning tiger. He hadn’t even been able to injure the Soul King. He frowned. Even with the Soul Sentinel Scarf nullifying the threat of a soul attack, Bai Yunfei wasn’t on the same level of strength as the Soul King in terms of elemental manipulation. If not for his soul armaments, he wouldn’t have been a match.

Seeing the Soul King come at him, Bai Yunfei gritted his teeth and summoned the Fire-tipped Spear to him again. But as he was about to strike, he suddenly had to turn to the right.

“Whoosh! Whoosh!”

Two figures broke away from the fight with Xiao Qi to not attack Bai Yunfei but....to go to where Fang Tianmeng was!

They were peak late-stage Soul Exalts. One wind-type and one wood-type. The wind-type Soul Exalt had a sword in his hand before he swung with it to unleash a blade of wind onto the room she was in!

“Bastard!!!”

Eyes seeing red, Bai Yunfei roared in anger as he raised his right hand. The Ardent Sun Glove on it shined with light before a fireball ten meters in size flew forward to intercept the wind blade. The two exploded in a myriad of fire, but the explosion had been close enough to tear open the roof and reveal a terrified Fang Tianmeng in the corner.

Without a skip in their step, the two Soul Exalts formed another blade of energy from their weapons and aimed it at Fang Tianmeng!

These two people were clearly trying to divert Bai Yunfei's attention away from the Soul King and then be killed in his moment of negligence!

With already two Soul Kings to help them fight, the Cao had essentially the high ground. So to do something like this in order to defeat Bai Yunfei was extremely despicable!

Chapter 589: A Soul Attack?! (Third)

In the ruined wreck of a room, a tied up Fang Tianmeng was in one of the still standing corners. Her face was dreadfully pale and her eyes were brimming with tears. Looking at the skies above, her eyes brightened up momentarily at the sight of Bai Yunfei, but also feeling terrified on behalf of Bai Yunfei.

Not too far away from her was the bandaged figure of Cao Jun. Both of his eyes had rolled into the back of his head, and he himself was knocked out over his bed—the soul attack of the permafrost mastiff had knocked him out.

Seeing that Fang Tianmeng was unharmed, Bai Yunfei allowed himself a small sigh of relief. But then when he remembered that there were still two peak late-stage Soul Exalts coming after her with their hands charging up with elemental energy, he worried. Unknown to him, the two Soul Exalts were looking at Bai Yunfei from the corner of their eyes to see how he would react.

The two of them smiled cruelly when they saw the panicked look in his eyes. Raising their right hands, they lashed out with a blow of elemental energy.

And at the same time, the lightning-type Soul King chose this time to fly straight for Bai Yunfei!

“Stop.....stop!!”

Bai Yunfei’s eyes were red, his fury causing his face to twist up in a rather unsightly way. His left hand was raised up to point at the two!

“I command you to...stop!!!”

“Bzz!!”

A strange buzzing sound rang through the world as the Charm Bracelet on Bai Yunfei’s left hand started to shine with a bright amount of light. A series of white lines streaked out like a net from

the bracelet before disappearing from sight again as if connecting to something.

In the next moment, every single person in the area felt their heads reverberate with a furious howl.

“Stop...and die!!”

It was as if someone had appeared right in their mindspace to roar at their souls—stop, and...die!!

Stop whatever they were doing and die.....stop whatever...and die.....stop. Die. Stop...Die!!!!

The two words repeated over and over again like a mantra of some sort in their minds. As if a demon was whispering to them, the words arrested all other cognitive thinking from the people there and struck at their souls. Some of them gradually started to have the feeling that they should ‘do as they were told’ even...

“Bang!!”

As if heeding his command, the two elemental energy in the two Soul Exalts’ fist died away. Their eyes grow vacant for a moment and their motions slightly slow as if they were being suspended in the sky.

In the other direction, those early-stage Soul Exalts who had been heavily damaged on the ground were standing blankly there. In their weakened states, their mouths were barely moving as if trying to say something. In one fluid motion, they brought a dagger into their hands and raised it to their throats. Then without hesitation, they sliced their throats in one horizontal motion...

“Pcht!!”

The blade cut through their throats deep enough to see to their blood expel from it like a jet...

Their jerky actions ceased the moment after with them looking at their dagger in horror and pain. Eyes bugged out, all they could do

was clutch at their necks and fall over...

Only the weakest of the Soul Exalts had died in this fashion. The stronger ones didn't fully cut at their throats, but the voice in their heads had forced them to stop straight away. Aside from the two Soul Kings, everyone had stopped dead in their tracks.

The fact that for a short moment everyone stopped fighting during this intense battle was very strange.

Everything returned back to normal in the second after with everyone shivering as their eyes regained their original luster. They shook their heads, unsure of what exactly it was that had just happened to.

Then came the trill of a bird.

“Chirp!!”

Like a flash of lightning, Xiao Qi flitted straight through two of the people standing still, causing their comrades to cry out in shock and look to them—two of their own had just lost their heads!!

“Pcht! Pchht!!”

Blood splurted out from the two headless corpses like fountains as the bodies fell back down to the ground—the sight of their own bodies falling had been the very last thing the heads saw...

When Xiao Qi flitted past them, it had used its razor-sharp wings to behead them!

The lightning-type Soul King was already in front of Bai Yunfei again, his lightning covered right hand ready to smash into the temples of Bai Yunfei's head!

Bai Yunfei's left hand had still been in the air when he was staring at the two Soul Exalts who were trying to attack Fang Tianmeng. It was only when he heard Xiao Qi kill two of the others that he then heard the sound of something flying towards his head.

The red pupils in his eyes dilated. With practically instinctive reflexes, he tilted his head down just enough and pressed off the platform he was standing on to move his body away.

Thanks to that motion, the palm strike of the Soul King had landed on his back instead of head!

“Bang!!”

The palm strike sent Bai Yunfei flying like a bullet. Blood escaped from Bai Yunfei’s mouth as violet lightning arced everywhere on his back, preparing to dig into his body to cause some damage. But after blowing apart the back part of his robes, the lightning came to a sudden stop as if blocked by something.

Shining underneath Bai Yunfei’s robes was the golden armor. Elemental metal was shining forth from the armor and preventing the elemental lightning from getting past it.

Bai Yunfei flew another hundred meters before reorientating himself. He spun around and stabilized himself on top of a platform made of elemental fire. His feet skittered across the platform before his eventual stop. He doubled up to glare with crimson colored eyes to glare at the Soul King, a hint of berserk anger in them...but other than that, Bai Yunfei didn’t seem too heavily injured!

When the lightning-type Soul King struck Bai Yunfei, he didn’t chase after Bai Yunfei for a follow up. Instead, he retreated several meters backwards to stare at Bai Yunfei in disbelief.

In that one moment he hit Bai Yunfei, it had been out of ‘reflex’ more than out of desire to hurt Bai Yunfei. The reason for that was because of the shock and awe he felt the moment before.

“Just...just now...that was...but impossible!!!” The lower lip of the Soul King trembled somewhat as if trying to say something. “Controlling someone with a verbal command...that’s a high leveled soul attack...how is he capable of something like that!!”

“Bang!!”

While he was busy to himself, a loud explosion was heard. Snapping his head back up to see what happened, he saw a giant fire explode into being a hundred meters away where Bai Yunfei was. Inside the fire, Bai Yunfei was still bent halfway over, his eyes now almost as red as a primal beast’s eyes might be. A bone-chilling aura of murderous intent flooded from his person, and from the surrounding fires, a hint of lightning could be seen sparking around in it...

Bai Yunfei’s strength had exploded drastically upwards at the same time of the fire. Already in the late-stage Soul Exalt level due to the ‘coil’ form, his strength was shooting towards the peak late-stage Soul Exalt and possibly even beyond that!

With each moment his strength increased by, the fires around him grew even hotter and more intense. At a closer look, one could see that the fires were actually of two different ones, but as his strength increased, the two flames begun to mix with one another to be almost inseparable...

Dual Flame Arts.....Berserk Mode!!

Chapter 590: Berserk Mode and a Slaughter!! (Fourth)

Berserk Mode was a double-edged sword that even now, Bai Yunfei wasn't able to fully control. If he used it sparingly in short intervals of time, all was fine, but if he kept it running for long enough, he'd be hit with the backlash. The reason he didn't use Berserk Mode when he first realized he was in a trap was because he had been saving it up for the most optimal time.

But right now, Bai Yunfei didn't hesitate to use it.

Perhaps it was to say that Bai Yunfei didn't 'decide' to use it, but that.....he used it instinctively.

Bai Yunfei's current state was clearly abnormal. He was no longer in a rational state of mind, and the amount of murderous power coming from him made him look more like a beast in the skin of a human.

With his nature, this type of stuff shouldn't have happened. Even if he was under extreme emotional duress, an extreme sight like this wouldn't have happened. But as it were, there was one likely reason why he was like this.

The damage to his soul!!

Right now, he was behaving exactly like he was back when he was teaching Cao Jun a lesson back in the Capital! And this time, he was far more aggressive!

The last time, he was able to snap himself out of his craze due to an outside force. But right now...he wouldn't snap out of it that easily.

His loss of self control was getting better with his twice a day visit to the Soothing Heart. For the most part, he had ten days left to go until he was back to normal, but those were under optimal conditions and hadn't accounted for something like this!

Having so many people appear in this trap made things very obvious for Bai Yunfei. His coming to Baishan City wasn't just some sort of whimsical idea of revenge plotted by the second generational that was Cao Jun. This trap was clearly meant to specify him and kill him!

They had been planning to capture Bai Yunfei from the very beginning, the kidnapping of Fang Tianmeng had only been the bait for Bai Yunfei to take!

In other words, it wasn't because of Fang Tianmeng that Bai Yunfei had the trap sprung for. It was because of Bai Yunfei that Fang Tianmeng was in this mess!

He didn't know why the Cao would even bother conspiring against like this, but that wasn't important right now. The important thing was that his student was in danger because of him!

Fury like none other flooded Bai Yunfei's mind when he realized that. These despicable people were using Fang Tianmeng as a way to divert Bai Yunfei's attention.

He became so angry that his murderous intent couldn't be stopped anymore. Any cold-hearted logic had been replaced by white-hot anger!

Because of the damage to his soul, his self-control was practically non-existent, and that meant his anger couldn't be stopped anymore! In Bai Yunfei's mind, there was absolutely nothing stopping him from wanting to kill everyone here!

All Bai Yunfei wanted to do was kill. Kill everyone that'd stand in his way!

.....

“Whoosh!”

There was a swishing sound from behind Bai Yunfei as a figure in blue descended behind him. Somehow cleaving through the fire

with his weapon, the man held a azure-blue shortblade to stab at the back of Bai Yunfei's head!

He was one of the peak late-stage Soul Exalts that had been fighting Xiao Qi. But because the bird flew off to try and save Fang Tianmeng, this left this Soul Exalt free to change his target to Bai Yunfei. Because he saw how strangely Bai Yunfei was acting after being hit by the Soul King, the Soul Exalt thought it was his chance to strike. Right now, he thought Bai Yunfei had become some sort of beast at the final moments of his life, or he was even perhaps sacrificing his origin essence for a short burst of power. So he decided the best plan of action right now was to hurry up and take out Bai Yunfei before he could become a 'problem'.

He had clearly not been paying attention to Bai Yunfei due to his fight with Xiao Qi. While a pre-emptive strike like this one would be considered the right choice in normal situations, what Bai Yunfei was undergoing right now was by no means a 'normal' situation. The 'right' choice this Soul Exalt chose would become a mistake that would see to him paying a heavy price for...

In the Five Elements theory, Water extinguishes Fire. So the Soul Exalt's elemental water would protect the man from Bai Yunfei's elemental fire. The high-earth tier soul armament he had would also be bolstered by the elemental water and was about to cut into Bai Yunfei, and that would be that.

But then, the look of joy in his face froze up for a moment before turning into shock and fear.

"Clang!"

There was a chafing sound before the man froze in the air, unable to push his weapon any closer to Bai Yunfei than it was already. On the other end of the blade was a single hand that held it.

He didn't even see when Bai Yunfei had turned around. But right now, Bai Yunfei's right hand was grabbing onto the blade! In that one moment the water-type Soul Exalt tried to attack with his soul

armament, Bai Yunfei stopped it as if his hand was invincible—he was unharmed!

With the strength of the Ardent Sun Glove, there was no way a mere high-earth tier soul armament would be able to pierce it.

Shocked for a moment, the water-type Soul Exalt was quick to react. His first thought was to try and pull away, but then he felt a hand grip onto his wrist. In the moment Bai Yunfei stopped the dagger, his right hand went forward to grab onto the arm holding onto the blade!

The other Soul Exalt felt something pull on him, forcing him to follow the momentum forward to Bai Yunfei. At first, the only thing he saw was the crimson-red eyes of Bai Yunfei and then...a fist with golden light shining from it.

“Ahhh!!!!”

The feeling of death gripped at the Soul Exalt’s heart. He scream aloud in fear and anger as his entire body wrapped itself up in elemental water to try and protect himself from Bai Yunfei’s punch.

“Boom...crack...bang!!”

The Soul Exalt heard something shatter following the explosion. Shortly afterwards, his eyes realized that his elemental barrier had shattered when the fist broke through it. As his eyes widened at the incoming fist, he felt a sharp amount of pain, and then, nothing...

From the outside, all anyone could see was Bai Yunfei’s punch shattering through the other person’s barrier before hitting his head and shattering it into pieces!!

The Soul Exalt’s head had been like a watermelon smashed to pieces!

Blood and bits of brain fell down from the skies like rain, some of the pieces catching on fire due to their near proximity to Bai

Yunfei's flame. Several droplets fell on Bai Yunfei's body, dying him red with blood.

In one punch, he had killed a peak late-stage Soul Exalt instantly!

This was a feat that left any other person that had wanted to attack Bai Yunfei as well dumb with fear and awe!

None of them could believe their eyes that they had just witnessed a peak late-stage Soul Exalt be killed so easily by someone that wasn't a Soul King!

“Hufff.....huffff.....”

Bai Yunfei threw away the headless corpse, his free hand coming up to wipe the blood away from his face. A bestial grunt was coming from his lips as he breathed, sounding as if he was ‘enjoying’ the feeling. The murderous look in his eyes intensified for a moment as he looked up at the awe-shocked enemies all around him.

There was a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, two late-stage Soul Exalts, and a mid-stage Soul Exalt left.

When each of the four Soul Exalts felt Bai Yunfei's gaze on them, their bodies shivered instinctively. They each worked up a defense for themselves, but then when they blinked once, Bai Yunfei had already disappeared from sight!

In the moment they blinked, there was a feeling of heat coming from behind them. And then, a voice as gravelly as from someone from the nine layers of the underworld spoke into their ears.

“Die!!”

Chapter 591: The Escalation of Strength, and Transformation?! (Fifth)

“Bang!!”

There was a squeamish boom as the mid-stage Soul Exalt in the group felt his chest tighten up. Looking down, he saw a bloody fist coming straight through his chest from behind!

His heart had been speared through by a fist!

“Pcht...”

The fist was drawn back out with a squelch. Blood flowed from the hole in his chest like a small river, and in the next moment, the dead mid-stage Soul Exalt fell back down to the ground.

That was when the three remaining Soul Exalts realized the danger they were in!

Two of them retreated away from Bai Yunfei in a flash, but one of them a late-stage Soul Exalt, did not. He had been the closest to Bai Yunfei and so decided to chance his luck by attempting to shear at Bai Yunfei’s throat with his half-moon dagger soul armament.

But to his disbelief, Bai Yunfei caught the blade with his left hand!!

The blade struck against the palm of the golden gloves on his left hand, creating sparks when the blade met with the fabric, but it didn’t cut through!

“Die!!”

Bai Yunfei exclaimed. Clutching at the soul armament so that it couldn’t budge, Bai Yunfei clenched his right hand and punched at the Soul Exalt’s chest!

“Crack!”

His Ardent Sun Glove enhanced right fist slammed into the late-

stage Soul Exalt's chest, bulging the man's eyes out and forcing blood out from his mouth. A charcoal-black dent was made in the man's chest as the rest of it splintered away and his internal organs were pulverized, killing the man straight away!

The malevolent smile of glee on Bai Yunfei's lips was very pronounced after he killed the Soul Exalt. Somehow, the murderous intent from his body grew by a margin before he went straight for the other late-stage Soul Exalt to the right.

Now locked on by Bai Yunfei, the targeted Soul Exalt had a look of despair on his face. Everything that had happened in the span of the last ten seconds had been incomprehensible to him. Right now, there was simply nothing as terrifying as what Bai Yunfei right now. Bai Yunfei was like the reaper coming here to reap his completely cowered soul!

He had been the first to flee. With his comrades as the sacrifice to buy him time to escape, the man had only been able to traverse fifty meters. Those fifty meters had been nothing for Bai Yunfei to travel with his Flash Step. In the blink of an eye, he was already right in front of the fleeing person!

By the time the Soul Exalt even noticed that, Bai Yunfei was already thrusting his Fire-tipped Spear at the person!

As fast as Bai Yunfei was moving, it wasn't fast to the point where it was impossible to react to. With just milliseconds to spare, the man hastily took out a small golden shield to defend himself from the spear.

But that shield was only an earth-tier soul armament, could it stop the Fire-tipped Spear? Of course not! The spear tip touched onto the shield for a moment before it cracked the shield open and speared straight through it. With no more defense to crush, the spear stabbed into the man's chest!

“Pch.....boom!!!”

The man hadn't even time to let out a scream before an explosion of elemental fire engulfed him! An explosion exploded out from the spear and tore his body to pieces!

Bits of flesh and bone rained from the ground while Bai Yunfei turned around to the final peak late-stage Soul Exalt trying to run away!

The remaining Soul Exalt was completely pale. All of his comrades were killed in the blink of an eye, and he himself was panicked beyond all else. When Bai Yunfei came for him, the Soul Exalt clenched at his soul armament tightly in trepidation, but also with a hint of a plan ready.

He was a shrewd man. He knew that his best chance of survival was to try and...flee towards the direction of the lightning-type Soul King!

There wasn't even an iota of courage to fight the man. What he needed to do was to have the strongest man there deal with Bai Yunfei, and that'd solve his problem for him!

He glanced over to the incoming Bai Yunfei, and then to where the Soul King was, only to be gobsmacked with shock and anger! The lightning-type Soul King was just standing there, staring at Bai Yunfei as if to think about something. The Soul King wasn't at all planning to help save them!!

By that point, the arid air of fire was already assaulting his person. Bai Yunfei had caught up and left the man with no choice but to fight for his life!!

.....

The lightning-type Soul King had been standing there the entire time to watch Bai Yunfei battle the peak late-stage Soul Exalt. The entire time, he just stood there, his eyes growing with shock for each second that passed.

In the matter of several seconds, Bai Yunfei had killed several of

the Soul Exalts with him! While the Soul King did realize this was happening, he didn't move to help them out, choosing to instead observe the scene.

He knew time was of the essence, but right now, the Soul King had his misgivings about attacking him. Or rather, he was afraid of making yet another hasty decision...

Every concern he had stemmed from when Bai Yunfei used that 'soul attack'.

"The ability to command through the spoken word, that's something only a late-stage Soul King is capable of using as a soul attack. Why...why is it that he can do that?! It's impossible, completely and utterly impossible..." The Soul King was besides himself trying to figure out the reason why behind this abnormality. "It's impossible. Intelligence only said that he was a Soul Exalt with a few special tricks up his sleeves. It didn't say anything about this before...our intelligence had to be wrong...that just now was a soul attack! Could it be he's a Soul King?!"

"But that can't be it either...so, why can he..."

He thought back to the beginning of his battle with Bai Yunfei. Several times, his killing attacks failed to do just that to Bai Yunfei, and then, there was the 'soul attack' he did. Each thought he had given the Soul King some consternation and suspicion on if he could kill Bai Yunfei.

He wanted to wait for his other Soul King companion to come help him kill Bai Yunfei, but when he saw that that man was still hard-pressed fighting the permafrost mastiff, the Soul King figured there'd be no help coming from him.

Perhaps he should go over and help try to kill that soulbeast? As he thought about that idea, another howl of pain snapped him out from his thoughts. Looking at the source, he saw the last peak late-stage Soul Exalt be perforated straight through the throat by Bai Yunfei's spear!

A flash of light flickered across the Soul King's face when he saw the merciless smirk on Bai Yunfei after his kill. Looking suspiciously, the Soul King suddenly realized something awful!

"Wait!! His...his aura...it's still increasing!!"

He knew from the very beginning that Bai Yunfei was using some sort of technique to increase his strength. So he didn't mind at first with the first increase of strength, but then Bai Yunfei went and did it again to bring himself to a peak late-stage Soul Exalt. It didn't make much of a difference at first.

But that was when the Soul King realized his mistakes. Bai Yunfei's aura hadn't stopped when he reached the level of a peak late-stage Soul Exalt. Bai Yunfei's strength had increased when he killed that Soul Exalt!

Actually, with each Soul Exalt he killed, the barbaric glint in his eyes intensified again, and with each intensification, his strength increased by another notch!

Right now, he was far beyond what a peak late-stage Soul Exalt was capable of. No matter in soulforce or anything else...he was almost in the realm of a Soul King!

"Impossible...utterly impossible!!" He voiced to himself under his breath.

That did it. The Soul King couldn't afford to wait any longer. Without any further hesitation, he shot off towards Bai Yunfei!

He had to do this. He was afraid. If he waited, then Bai Yunfei really would become a Soul King, or perhaps...even higher!

In order to stop that, he had to kill Bai Yunfei at once!!

Chapter 592: False Soul King Realm!

Bai Yunfei had only just pulled out the spear from the dead Soul Exalt's throat when the lightning-type Soul King came flying over. Eyes flickering over to the Soul King, Bai Yunfei revealed a scornful smile. Shifting his spear, Bai Yunfei kicked off against his platform to shoot off like a shot arrow towards the Soul King!!

Concentrated onto Bai Yunfei, the Soul King thought to himself about how Bai Yunfei was acting, "What an arrogant child!!"

Since his warblade was broken, the Soul King had to use another type of weapon. Shaking his right hand, a black and purple halberd was taken out!

The Thunder Halberd!!

The two fighters were three meters apart now. In Bai Yunfei's hand was his Fire-tipped Spear to strike at the Soul King's chest.

The lightning-type Soul King wielded the Thunder Halberd to strike at the Fire-tipped Spear. Both weapons clashed against each other, shrieking with a metallic clang and stopping one another from advancing!

But not even a second after his spear was stopped, Bai Yunfei shift his body slightly to spin in a half-circle and pull his spear back to stab out again!

This was a quick piece of movement made only possible by stretching the limits of his Wave Treading Steps. Even the lightning-type Soul King had been surprised with how fast Bai Yunfei was moving. He knew just how terrifying the spear was, and that he couldn't afford to be hit by it. Originally, he planned on using the Thunder Halberd to strike Bai Yunfei, but with this development, he brought his halberd back to parry the spear.

But at that moment, Bai Yunfei lashed upwards with his foot to kick at the Soul King's groin!!

The Soul King narrowed his eyes. A move as ruthless as that had been a first for him. Raising his right foot up to stop Bai Yunfei's, their feet collided with one another. With a bang, the Soul King fell back half a step before coming forward to punch at Bai Yunfei's shoulder with his left fist!

“Bang! Bang!!”

Again, both persons were sent flying backwards.

Bai Yunfei was emotionless while the Soul King was still surprised. In the short few seconds they fought, he saw Bai Yunfei's strength still increasing to levels far beyond what they used to be. It couldn't even be approximated to be within the levels of capability of a peak late-stage Soul Exalt anymore. It'd be better to call him a....Soul King!!

A sense of insecurity began to rise up in the Soul King's mind. It was natural for man to fear whatever that was unknown to them, but it also wasn't as though the Soul King was scared out of his mind. He just didn't have enough time to fully process what was going on.

When the two men had retreated, the Soul King took ten meters before he stopped himself. Right as he was about to come forward again, he suddenly realized that Bai Yunfei hadn't even bothered to stop. Instead, he took the momentum caused by their last interaction to fly away from the Soul King—

—And towards the area where the blue-eyes wyrm was fighting!!

Not only was Bai Yunfei deciding not to fight the Soul King, he was taking this opportunity to kill everyone else!

Realizing his plan with some fright, the Soul King gave chase. Clutching at the air with his left hand, the Soul King launched another soul attack onto Bai Yunfei!

Before he had gone berserk, Bai Yunfei usually made use of the Yun's Soul Ring and the Soul Sentinel Scarf to launch a surprise

attack whenever the enemy used a soul attack. But this time, he only glared angrily at the Soul King and pointed his left pointer finger at him!

“Get lost!!!!”

The Charm Bracelet flashed with a white light at his words. In response, the Soul King’s face paled when he heard those words and staggered to his knees!

In that moment he heard those two words, an unknown energy had invaded his mindspace and tore angrily at his soul like hundreds of needles to stab into it!

“Hmph!!” Bai Yunfei grunted as well as the soul attack took hold of him. His soulforce started to fluctuate a bit before it stabilized and returned to normal.

Or returned to his berserk state of mind, as it were. Although it hurt, Bai Yunfei was still heavily fueled by his anger, and like a shooting star, he traveled towards the ones fighting the blue-eyes wyrm with extreme speed!

“That was definitely a soul attack!!”

The lightning-type Soul King had his confirmation now. “Impossible! Just impossible!! How could he unleash a strong soul attack like that on me!? This shouldn’t be possible, I refuse to believe it!!”

He shook his head to get rid of the stinging pain in his head and clear his mind. Thinking about the soul attack he suffered just now, the Soul King looked startled. “Wait!! That’s not it! This isn’t an ordinary soul attack. It’s like a high-leveled soul attack, but this type of feeling isn’t the feeling of being ‘controlled’, but the feeling of being ‘influenced’! This is being ‘mesmerized’!!

“No, this....this is an illusion!” His eyes flew open in enlightenment. But then he dashed that thought. “No, it’s not quite like an illusion. How can there be an illusion that can act like

a soul attack? And how is he able to enter my mindspace and affect my soul? It's impossible....”

He felt like he had seen through the ‘cheap tricks’ of Bai Yunfei, but at the same time, he grew more and more confused by what exactly it was Bai Yunfei was doing. He just couldn’t figure it out.

How could he know that the Charm Bracelet on Bai Yunfei’s hand was capable of such a magical effect like this.....like the mental link!!

Indeed. The way Bai Yunfei was attacking the Soul King so that it was misconstrued as a ‘soul attack’ was due to the mental link!

It wasn’t the normal type of mental link either. After a series of experimentation, Bai Yunfei was able to invent a different way of application for it!

Before, Bai Yunfei had figured that he was only capable of using the mental link to talk with other people with their minds. And then after he realized he could tell if a person was ‘lying’ or not, Bai Yunfei felt this ‘small’ ability of the bracelet wasn’t half bad.

It wasn’t until later when he was ambushed by the Soul King right outside Casino Jin with Zheng Kai and hit with the Soul Refining Palm that Bai Yunfei realized there was more to the Charm Bracelet. The Soul Refining Palm had caused him to lose a bit of his rationality, but in the final moments when the Soul King was trying to flee, Bai Yunfei had managed to apply the mental link in a different way than normal....

For example, he found out that by linking with the mind of another, he could invade their mindspace and enforce his own thoughts onto the person enough to affect their soul!!

If a person’s mind were to suddenly think of a completely different idea, then the person would fall into a moment of conflict where two different ideas were trying to command the body. By using the mental link to enforce his thoughts, Bai Yunfei could use

it to psychologically affect a person and influence their minds and behavior!!

This was essentially not unlike the art of Mesmerization the bewitching fox was capable of!

This could also be seen when Bai Yunfei told the Soul King to 'stop' with all his might. In those moments afterwards, Bai Yunfei found out about the uniqueness of this situation. By experimenting more and more, Bai Yunfei realized that this could be turned into a trump card to be used for a day like this!!

And his usage of this ability was not at all different to a soul attack a Soul King might use!!

Since Bai Yunfei in this moment was far beyond the level of a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, his strength could go toe-to-toe with a Soul King to unleash attacks like a soul attack onto them.

In his current state, Bai Yunfei could be said to be in the....False Soul King realm!!

Chapter 593: Battling a Soul King

Just as the Soul King was thinking about the intricacies of Bai Yunfei's 'soul attack', several people all cried out in pain!

"Tsk!!" The Soul King cursed to himself. Several people were dying in front of him while he had been thinking, and that only made him even more flustered.

The event horizon was rapidly approaching, and if Bai Yunfei was given any more time, then....

On the top of the blue-eyes wyrm's head, a fiery Bai Yunfei was striking out left and right with his spear working like the reaper's scythe to perforate the chest of an enemy. There were only mid-stage and late-stage Soul Exalts here, and none of them were strong enough to fight against Bai Yunfei. Even if they were peak late-stage Soul Exalts, they still wouldn't be enough!!

Any and all types of defense was virtually ineffective against the Fire-tipped Spear. With each stroke, the Fire-tipped Spear found itself spearing through another victim!

Each of the mid-stage Soul Exalt expelled a mouthful of blood from their mouths when struck by the spear before crumpling to the ground, unable to fight anymore.

In a matter of seconds, Bai Yunfei had killed four people, leaving behind only two peak late-stage and one late-stage Soul Exalts!

Having been suppressed by the Soul Exalts until Bai Yunfei came, the blue-eyes wyrm could finally let loose. Roaring aloud, the wyrm lashed out with its tail to bisect a caught off-guard late-stage Soul Exalt! With its right forelimb, it clawed at a peak late-stage Soul Exalt, sending three separate blades of elemental water to force the Soul Exalt back.

Bai Yunfei continued to attack the enemies to his left, but when he heard the sound of rolling thunder overhead, he narrowed his

eyes. Without bothering to even look up, he waved his left hand to summon the Cataclysmic Seal to him. Expanding to over ten meters in size, it served as an overhead shield for him, blocking a thick bolt of purple lightning from striking him. The Cataclysmic Seal shuddered from the attack and was forced down to the ground, but not before Bai Yunfei leapt out of the way. Waving his hand again, the Cataclysmic Seal shrunk in size to fall back down to the ground to avoid being hit by the remaining lightning bolts.

His left hand lashed out again, this time to block the Thunder Halberd from striking at his left side. Raising his right hand, he lashed out with the Fire-tipped Spear to attack the figure in purple holding the halberd.

The lightning-type Soul King had finally deigned himself to strike again with all his might!

The attack of a mid-stage Soul King was without a doubt a very intimidating thing to face down. The surrounding hundred meters was washed with purple light as elemental lightning turned the place into a pool of lightning. At its very center, the Soul King's figure flickered like lightning to move around a figure on fire to attack at every angle.

With all the lightning and explosions, the blue-eyes wyrm was forced to step beyond the boundary of the lightning pool and near the end of the illusionary matrix to fight the remaining Soul Exalts.

If it were Bai Yunfei before he went crazy with Berserk Mode, an attack like this would've left Bai Yunfei completely unable to deal with it, or at least, defend against the attack at the cost of a great deal of his health. He'd normally want to back away and wait for one of his equipment effects to activate before making a counter attack.

But right now, he could choose to fight with his spear and attack the Soul King without any fear!

The Soul King himself felt like he was going crazy. Whatever it was that was happening in front of him, it shouldn't be.

This Bai Yunfei right in front of him and the Bai Yunfei from before were practically two different people!!

Bai Yunfei was fighting as if there wasn't any form of self-preservation to him anymore. Whenever they fought, Bai Yunfei would only move out of the way if the incoming attack would be a mortal one, increasing the amount of injuries he had one by one! Each time the Thunder Halberd came at him, Bai Yunfei would parry it to the side and strike out with his spear. With each palm strike aimed at him, Bai Yunfei would return it with a palm strike of his own....

This kind of 'kill a thousand lose eight hundred' tactic was something that didn't suit well for the Soul King.

And the more he fought Bai Yunfei, the more he learned about Bai Yunfei. The exchange of attacks between the two gave the Soul King some time to look and count each of the soul armaments Bai Yunfei had. Whether it was the Fire-tipped Spear, his two gloves, his two bracers, his armor, or even his shoes—they were all high-leveled soul armaments!!

The force the Soul King was putting behind of his strikes was enough to kill any peak late-stage Soul Exalt. But Bai Yunfei hadn't even been losing any strength behind his own blows even after parrying each attack with his arms!

In fact, Bai Yunfei's aura was....still growing!

If an outsider were to look at Bai Yunfei now, they would've thought Bai Yunfei was also a Soul King!

"Boom!!!"

There was a cracking sound as the Thunder Halberd slammed into the Fire-tipped Spear and was met with an explosion. The explosion had destroyed the halberd and consequently numbed the

hand of the Soul King holding it!

But Bai Yunfei wasn't in good shape himself. The elemental lightning he was being constantly struck with was causing pain to Bai Yunfei whenever he was hit with it. He was happy that he had destroyed the weapon of the Soul King however, and he didn't seem to really care about the purple lightning arcing around his body. Raising a shining yellow left hand, he plunged it downwards to attack the Soul King!

The light of opportunity shined in the Soul King's eyes at this. Having been completely inhibited by the self-mutilating tactics of Bai Yunfei, the Soul King had had enough. Without regard for the fist coming at his abdomen, the Soul King chopped at Bai Yunfei's throat with the edge of his palm!

Even if his internal organs were struck, he'd decapitate Bai Yunfei!!

Both fighters were risking their lives with this, though the Soul King had never thought he'd be forced to fight to an extent like this....but that didn't matter anymore. Even if he was severely wounded, at least Bai Yunfei would be dead. His death would accomplish his mission, and he'd be able to leave this place.

The one thing that surprised the Soul King even more was the fact that Bai Yunfei's eyes seemed to glow even more crazily. He bent his body in a way that brought his head not away from his hand, but....towards it!

Seeming as if he wasn't even considering his own life as important in this attack, Bai Yunfei's forehead came forward to meet with the lightning-type Soul King's blade hand while his left hand was still heading for the Soul King's stomach!

“Bang!!!”

There was a muffled explosion as the Soul King was sent flying away like a bullet while Bai Yunfei himself had his head knocked

backwards, but still very much connected to his body.

But....what surprised the Soul King most about this interaction was the fact that Bai Yunfei came to a stop ten meters away, his legs standing back on the platform as he shook his head. He spat out a bloody glob of spit, but other than that, Bai Yunfei had been completely fine!!

“Pfft!!”

A mouthful of blood came out from the Soul King’s own mouth from his injuries. Glaring heavily at Bai Yunfei, he stared at the dark light glowing from the Soul Sentinel Scarf with shock.

“Im....impossible!!”

The Soul King cried out loud this time. Eyes lighting up, Bai Yunfei put away his Fire-tipped Spear and brought both of his arms up. Elemental fire started to draw inwards into his body before swirling around his arms. With enough energy stored, he lashed out with both fists!

Dual Dragon Burst!!

Two dragons made completely from fire were expelled from Bai Yunfei’s fists. Before their tails could even fully detach from Bai Yunfei, the heads of the dragons were already on the verge of swallowing the Soul King whole!

Chapter 594: The Strongest Dual Dragon Burst

Two fiery dragons several meters thick burst out from Bai Yunfei's arms. Faced with the dragons, the Soul King's face was entirely pale. This time the dragons were far stronger than before, and that first attempt had already been strong enough to be comparable to the attack of an early-stage Soul King. So this second Dual Dragon Burst was perhaps on the level of a mid-stage Soul King!

Even for the lightning-type Soul King, it'd take all of his might in order to unleash an attack of this magnitude!!

Up until this point, Bai Yunfei had merely been surprising him with each unexpected twist. This time though, the Soul King was long past that point. He was now filled with fear. Complete and utter fear!

He had to escape!!

His mind knew this. His body knew this. He had to avoid this!

He'd be killed if he was hit by this, if not heavily injured!

“How can he pull off something of this magnitude??!”

The Soul King complained heavily to himself. The Bai Yunfei in front of him had strength that was completely omitted from the information the Soul King was given—by a tremendous amount too! This new explosion of strength had the Soul King doubting if Bai Yunfei was actually a Soul King of some sort that deliberately hid his strength to trick others.

It was completely unheard of for a mid-stage Soul Exalt to explode with so much strength that his attacks were comparable with a mid-stage Soul King!!

A good three hundred meters divided him and Bai Yunfei, but it

only took two quick blinks of the eye for the dragons to travel half that distance. Seemingly roaring as it traveled through the air, the dragons melted the air around it with its intense temperatures.

“Bang!!”

The Soul King submerged himself in a bright flash of purple light. Kicking off with his right foot, he tried his utmost best to ascend higher into the skies.

His speed had been great enough for him to leave behind a mirror image when he leapt, the purple light around him taking a moment before catching with him and leaving the mirror image to be engulfed by the flames.

Believing himself to be out of range of the dragon now, the Soul King looked down at the attack. Only his shoes seemed to be slightly singed—much to his relief—but the experience left him in cold sweat still. He was ecstatic, he supposed, that he made it out alive from that. He hadn’t felt something as heart-pounding as this ever since he became a Soul King....

The Soul King tore his eyes away from his shoes to look at Bai Yunfei. After unleashing such a powerful attack like this, Bai Yunfei surely had to be exhausted, so this was the best time to strike him down!

But what he was seeing from Bai Yunfei differed greatly than from what he expected! While Bai Yunfei looked pain, he was still staring hatefully at the Soul King with both of his hands raised into the air. They were pressed together by the palms as they rose before he pointed the face of the palms at himself. Suddenly splitting them apart, he had his palms come back towards himself!!

It took only a moment for Bai Yunfei to complete these strange motions. Confused for only half that, the Soul King realized straight afterwards what that meant! The intense temperature beneath his feet hadn’t gone away at all, and when he looked behind him, he was met with the head of a dragon! It was as if they

were being guided by Bai Yunfei's actions and split apart before making a U-turn to try and swallow him again!

Again left with no time to think, the Soul King tried to escape to his right in a flash of purple light!

“Whoosh!!”

A fierce blast of heat shot past his side, and the Soul King felt even a few strands of his hair catch aflame. His teeth clattered together in traumatic fear, but his eyes were adamant on not being caught off guard again. Retreating a hundred meters away, he looked back to Bai Yunfei.

But soon after, he was shocked once again by what he was seeing!

Bai Yunfei was still moving his arms again with intricate motions before slamming his palms together!

“Another attempt!?”

The lightning-type Soul King cried to himself as he went through the motions to try and dodge again.

But then he realized that the two flaming dragons hadn't 'turned' around to come at him again....

So....what were these actions of Bai Yunfei meant to do?

Confused by the enigmatic actions of Bai Yunfei, the Soul King observed the dragons. That was when he realized something—those dragons were....heading straight for where two streaks of white light were fighting!!

In that moment, he saw one of the white streaks of light be dealt a heavy blow by the other and sent flying away!

And while one of them was sent flying away, the other was immediately 'engulfed' by the two flaming dragons!

“Watch out!!”

The lightning-type Soul King cried out, but his action came too

late. Bai Yunfei's move hadn't been for him, but....for the ice-type Soul King fighting the permafrost mastiff!

His realization came far too late as did his warning. The ice-type Soul King had already been swallowed whole by the Dual Dragon Burst!

The ice-type Soul King had been fighting the permafrost mastiff the entire time with the latter being almost oblivious to the wounds it had. The two were almost equal in strength, but he had the disadvantage. It was only with the help of the three peak late-stage Soul Exalts and other reinforcements that he was able to gain the upper hand, but then the soul attack Bai Yunfei made onto the place had turned the tides for everything. It didn't do much against the Soul King, but the three peak late-stage Soul Exalts had lost their concentration for just a moment. And a moment was all it took for the class seven soulbeast to capitalize on. Meeting their momentary lapse with a roar, it killed two of them before turning the third into an icicle.

What followed after that had been a tiring battle. The permafrost mastiff barely left any openings for the Soul King to capitalize on. But in the end, he managed to land a good blow on the mastiff much to his great joy, but then when he was going in for the kill, the mastiff decided then for the first time in the battle to make use of the blow to retreat far away from him.

As he was standing there in bafflement why this happened, he felt something approach him from behind. Turning, his eyes widened in abject fear!

Just barely before the fiery dragon swallowed him, the Soul King could've sworn he heard someone cry out a warning to him!!

Beyond too late to try to escape, the ice-type Soul King could only bring both his arms up to try and protect himself in a bubble of elemental ice, as if he was trying to freeze himself. With him as the center, the fiery dragon then swallowed him whole...

“Ah!!”

Within the maelstrom of fire that now formed, an anguished cry was heard as a flash of white light tried to escape, but the elemental fire around it made it impossible and drowned it out a second after.

Sensing that the aura of his companion was gone, the lightning-type Soul King was crestfallen. He stared dumbly at the sea of flames as if trying to process exactly what had happened.

The ice-type Soul King was only weaker than him by a stage, but he was still a Soul King in the end. Just a few ten years shy of a hundred years of training, and a man as mighty as that had just....died.

“Whish!!”

As he was trying to process the events, the Soul King heard the sound of displaced wind suddenly come at him. Completely caught off guard by that, the Soul King’s eyes widened as he stepped to the right and turned around.

A spear crimson-red in light was coming at his eye!!

Chapter 595: Thrown!!

With how distraught the Soul King was over the death of his companion, he hadn't noticed Bai Yunfei coming at him!

But his response when he did noticed had been fast enough. Leaning back the upper half of his head, the Soul King made a hasty retreat to avoid the spear.

Like his shadow, Bai Yunfei followed the Soul King for about a hundred meters so that the spear never left more than half a foot from the Soul King's head. The two of them continued on like this until they were at the end of the illusionary matrix before the Soul King flew up to the spear with a lightning covered hand. His palm slapped at the shaft, causing the spear to flinch upwards from the blow and granting the Soul King the opportunity to redirect his palm strike at Bai Yunfei's face!

Bai Yunfei's left hand came up to stop him. With a pow, the palm strike landed against Bai Yunfei's arm. Not only strong, the palm strike transferred the elemental lightning infused in it over to Bai Yunfei's arm, numbing it as Bai Yunfei retreated backwards a few steps.

Now Bai Yunfei and the Soul King stood twenty meters apart. Bai Yunfei was looking a little worse for wear as he struggled for breath. His body was more or less dyed with blood, most of it was from his enemies, but some was his own. Any uncovered part of his body, such as his face, neck, arms, and even the ripped parts behind his trousers were a strangely red glow as if they were being heated up.

But perhaps the most ghastly sight was the blood that was leaking from Bai Yunfei's wounds. From several different parts of his body where he had wounds, the blood that leaked out were immediately being evaporated into the air to turn into red steam.

The wounds on his face were comparatively less than the ones on

the rest of his body, but Bai Yunfei's face was twisted with pain nonetheless. All five features to his face were twitching as if fighting back the aching pain he was feeling. Even someone who was familiar with Bai Yunfei wouldn't be able to recognize him as he looked right now....

Anyone could tell that Bai Yunfei was experiencing a great deal of pain right now. The crazed look in his eyes was still as strong as ever. Bai Yunfei didn't look like himself anymore with everything considered. Even under all this pain, he was still moving with the sole purpose of killing and satisfying his own desires.

The Soul King noted this expression on Bai Yunfei's face with no small amount of relief. "He's...he's as good as finished! I see now....he couldn't have been that strong actually. He had to throw away his rationality to gain such an obscene amount of strength....the fact that he's kept it up for so long is an amazing feat in itself....."

"Bang!!"

As he was thinking to himself, Bai Yunfei grunted again and stepped forward. He charged forward, the flames around him billowing even more intensely than before!

"Another spike?! Doesn't he care about his life?!" The lightning-type Soul King panicked. Dodging the incoming spear and then the incoming punch with his arms, the Soul King was forced into a small dance of sorts as Bai Yunfei began to rain spear after punch on him.

"He's....he's gone crazy!! A suicidal lunatic!!" He remarked to himself. He dodged each blow Bai Yunfei made, but the more he dodged, the more he began to feel angry at the situation.

"Don't get cocky! I am a mid-stage Soul King, how could I ever lose to a person like you!!" When Bai Yunfei's spear came at the left side of his waist, the Soul King grew furious. Grabbing at the shaft of the spear with his left hand, he let loose a lightning infused

punch onto Bai Yunfei's chest!

“You’ll die here!!”

“Bang!!”

The fist slammed against Bai Yunfei's chest, cracking several bones in Bai Yunfei's chest and forcing him to spit out a mouthful of blood that evaporated into the air shortly afterwards. The light in Bai Yunfei's eyes decreased by a shade as he was sent flying backwards from the blow.

Joy flashed across the eyes of the Soul King. He knew Bai Yunfei had a powerful piece of armor on him, but he put everything he had in this one punch and had even his elemental energy strengthen the blow. With everything combined, his punch would be enough to turn Bai Yunfei's body to paste even if his armor blocked even half of it!

And it worked!! Several of Bai Yunfei's bones had been cracked and his flesh had ruptured in several places. When he spat out blood, there had been bits of flesh in it!!

“Haha!! Die!!”

The lightning-type Soul King howled with sadistic glee. Pushing both palms forward, he sent a blast of elemental lightning to char and reduce Bai Yunfei to ashes!

In that split-second, the light in Bai Yunfei's eyes reignited with increased fervor. Snapping his body straight as if his wounds didn't even exist, Bai Yunfei spat out another mouthful of blood before staring down his enemy. The grinding sound of his teeth gnashing against one another added to the ghastly figure that was Bai Yunfei.

“Bzzz!!”

The Fire-tipped Spear in his right hand shivered with bright flames along with the rest of his body. The flames concentrated to the top of the spear and swelled up. Arching the arm holding the

spear back, Bai Yunfei twisted his waist before heaving the spear forward!!

His throwing of the spear had been exceedingly power. The spear flew forward with a trail of fire flying through the skies to come at the Soul King!

It wasn't until the Fire-tipped Spear was a hundred meters away when the sound of it being thrown was even heard!!

The Soul King was appalled by this. He hadn't thought that Bai Yunfei would still be capable of unleashing such a powerful attack even now. Snarling, the Soul King reclaimed the elemental lightning meant to attack Bai Yunfei and spun it around to act as his shield to protect him while he tried to move out of the way.

“Bzz....”

There was a humming sound as the Fire-tipped Spear flew into his elemental lightning shield, and then....

“Pcht!!”

The spear stabbed into his right palm and straight through his arm into his shoulder. Then with a squelch, the spear tunneled back out his body....

From his palm to his shoulder, there was a huge scorched hole going straight through his right arm!!

The concentrated look in his eyes immediately bled away as he stared blankly at the wound on his right arm. Then he looked to the elemental shield in front of him, completely at a loss for words for what had happened....

Chapter 596: The End

“Boom!!!!”

A loud explosion rocked the area as the lightning-type Soul King had his elemental lightning shield fall apart due to his lack of control. Blood poured from his mouth and wound as he stood there, transfixed at the wound he just got. Then when he felt the aura of Bai Yunfei drop by at least half, his head snapped up with a ferocious look.

“D—damn you!! Die! Die!!”

Almost like Bai Yunfei, the Soul King had seemed to lost his mind. Not even caring for the hole going straight through him or the elemental fire burning at his insides, the Soul King lifted his left hand to gather as much elemental lightning to it. It swirled and arced around his intact left arm in massive amounts before forming in front of his hand.

“Die!!!!”

He spat out as he swung his arm at Bai Yunfei!!

“Cerrack!!”

There was a crack of lightning as the charged elemental lightning around his hand shot forth with alarming speed. Following his finger, it zapped through the air to travel towards Bai Yunfei in the shape of a lightning bolt!

This was the strongest move he could muster under his current crazed state. The elemental lightning was at the limits of what he could control, but the strength behind it would kill anyone a mid-stage Soul King or lower!

Thanks to the +13 additional effect of the Fire-tipped Spear, Bai Yunfei lost half of his soulforce. Though he was also injured, his eyes didn't lose any bit of his madness. He didn't seem to move from his spot though to try and dodge the lightning bolt, and

neither did it seem like he was going to defend himself....

And since he wasn't doing anything, the Cataclysmic Seal wasn't going up to protect him!

On the verge of being hit however, a flash of purple flew in front of him!

“Chirp!!”

The world shook as elemental lightning slammed into the flash of purple that came in front of Bai Yunfei. A pair of wings folded over one another like a shield to protect Bai Yunfei!

It was Xiao Qi!

After killing the two Soul Exalts trying to attack Fang Tianmeng, Xiao Qi had flown to the girl's side to protect her. By that point, most of the enemies were already dead and left Xiao Qi free to kill any straggling or fleeing Soul Exalts. No one dared attack Fang Tianmeng anymore with the bird there to safeguard her, and it never left Xiao Qi's side afterwards to keep a watch on the battlefield.

Able to sense what Bai Yunfei was feeling through their bond, the bird was feeling very worried for him. It also knew the importance of protecting Fang Tianmeng, so it didn't join the fight between Bai Yunfei and the lightning-type Soul King.

It wasn't until Bai Yunfei unleashed his strongest move and still failed to kill the lightning-type Soul King that Xiao Qi finally felt it unbearable to sit by the side. When the Soul King moved to attack Bai Yunfei, it joined the fray.

The Wind and Lightning Feathers combined with the strength of a peak late-stage class six soulbeast gave Xiao Qi more speed than what would normally be expected. And with that speed, it was able to move in front of Bai Yunfei fast enough to protect him!

In the next instant, the bolt of lightning struck with the folded wings of Xiao Qi in a single explosion!

A pained trill came from Xiao Qi from the middle of the explosion, its aura dropping sharply. It remained steadfast in the air where it was despite the pain it was in, and the purple lightning continued to wreak havoc onto the area, but never far enough to hurt Bai Yunfei.

“Huff...huff...huffff...”

Standing farther away, the Soul King was in a dreadfully bad state. His mouth was trickling blood and his body was barely glowing purple with light. His right arm and shoulder was trembling heavily as it tried to heal itself with any bit of soulforce given to it. But his eyes remained transfixed onto the elemental lightning that had struck Xiao Qi.

“Die...Die! Die damnit!”

It was halfway a curse and halfway a prayer as he tried to will his hopes into reality.

With the massive influx of energy and his current state of weakness, the Soul King didn’t really know what was going on. All he could hope for was that his strongest attack would be enough to kill Bai Yunfei, otherwise...

“Chirppp!!!”

A furious trill erupted from the lightning storm up ahead, much to the horror of the pale-faced Soul King. The next thing he saw were five separate crescent-shaped blades of nothing come out from the lightning storm to come flying towards him!

“N—no!! This can’t be!!!”

His eyes as wide as dinner-plates, the Soul King was terrified. Any last vestige of soulforce was sent to his feet as he tried to escape upwards.

But unfortunately, his current speed wasn’t even fast enough to beat out an early-stage Soul King. He managed to dodge two of the five Spatial Edges, but not the others. Two of them caught him at

his left and right sides, and then the third one flew into his waist, bisecting the Soul King in half!!

He bent his head down low to look at his vanished midsection. When he could see parts of his internal organs sticking out, and the detached feet of his well underneath, his eyes glazed over...

“N—no...this...this can’t be...”

His lips trembled with each word spoken, the light in his eyes gradually dimming before finally growing dark with death.

.....

The mid-stage Soul King had died!!

The remaining survivors in the area stood still, their eyes glued to the mutilated pieces of the Soul King fall back down to the earth in horror. Even the three Soul Exalts fighting the blue-eyes wyrm retreated away far enough to watch what was going on.

“Chirp!!”

Xiao Qi slowly flapped its wings. Turning around to fly back to Bai Yunfei, it took him by the shoulders and rose him into the air.

The permafrost mastiff was back into action by this point. It flew to Fang Tianmeng’s side and hoisted her own its back before leaping up to join Xiao Qi.

At Xiao Qi’s cry, the battle-weary blue-eyes wyrm perked its head up in understanding. Blue light shined from it as it shrunk in size and leapt up as well into the air as if to escape.

The remaining enemies were startled by their actions—were they trying to escape?!

As the enemies were starting to think that, a tremendous red ‘sun’ almost five hundred meters in size descended down onto the area, shining red in light. In the next moment, the ‘sun’ grew larger in size to become a mountain to crush the area!

Under the horrified enemies on the ground, the tremendous

mountain descended onto the earth and touched down!!

Higher up in the sky, Bai Yunfei's person trembled just slightly from where he was in the grip of Xiao Qi. As he pressed his hand downwards, he gave the people down below a disturbing smile of mirthful joy.

“You’ll all die here!!”

Chapter 597: Outside the Illusionary Array

Practically a kilometer in size and length, the Cataclysmic Seal covered the entire area of the illusionary array almost. Even from the outside of the array, a scorching red light could be seen radiating in the sky, and some of the houses were starting to turn dark and burn from the heat.

“What’s...what’s going on!?”

Five figures stood in the skies over several people who were mortally wounded, but not quite yet dead. At the present moment, none of the people there had been able to snap back to reality after the Soul Kings were killed. All they could do was stand there in shock without really an idea on what to do.

And then in the next moment, a giant mountain crashed down onto the area!

All of the Soul Exalts felt the blood drain away from their faces at the sight. They turned, ready to run away from the area when...

“Roarrr!!!!”

An earth-shaking roar was transmitted through the area, reverberating through the heads of everyone there and shaking their souls. Everyone grunted in pain as their souls were struck, and some of those who were extremely weak were killed straight away!

The permafrost mastiff was using its soul attack!!

The Cataclysmic Seal slammed into the ground the next moment, squishing the Soul Exalts in the air and on the ground without any further resistance!

“Boom!!!”

It was a completely bone-chilling sight. An object as large as a mountain had dropped onto the ground and squashed everyone, a

few of them screaming in pain as they were squished. Then came the shaking of the earth in which the entirety of Baishan City felt.

There had been ten people left in the area when the Cataclysmic Seal fell, and after it did, not a single one of them was left!

.....

Not much time had passed since Bai Yunfei entered the illusionary array and started battling.

Outside the barrier.

Just roughly three hundred meters away, there were two parties of people watching.

Of the two parties, one of them had a middle-aged man leading eight figures. Each one of them wore golden robes and the one in front floated in the air without the assistance of elemental energy, meaning he was a Soul King.

Of the eleven, the one at the front was the lord-mayor of Baishan City and early-stage Soul King. The eight people behind him were all Soul Exalts.

The other party had only a single person, but he stood in between them and the array.

That person was currently observing the array in front of him, sensing the chaotic energy flowing from within with a sense of urgency.

“Lu Fang!! What is the meaning of this?! What has the Cao done, and why are you stopping us?! If there is a battle within the city, do you wish to make the entire empire your enemy by stopping us?!”

The one he was talking to was the black-robed figure standing fifty meters in front of them.

The frail-looking middle-aged man smiled. “Lord Zhang, I have no wish to make the empire or its officials my enemy. But this is a

personal grievance of the Cao and will soon resolve itself. I only wish to spare lord Zhang a few headaches and invite that you wait a moment.”

“What kind of grievance is this?! What is going on in there—why has the entire Cao mobilized themselves? Who are the people they are fighting?”

“Hehe, please forgive this one for his lack of knowledge, but this one knows not. It is always hard to tell what problems might exist in the world of soul cultivators, lord Zhang.”

“You—!”

Zhang Mo was fuming with anger, but he did nothing. While he was the lord-mayor, he couldn’t be too overbearing while in the presence of others. This person in front of him was a rather well known traveling soul cultivator with an ill reputation. He liked to kill more often than not and was an early-stage Soul King. Despite that, he was a cut above the rest and stood even a good chance of victory when fighting against a mid-stage Soul King.

All things considered, Zhang Mo couldn’t afford to start a fight. This was Baishan City, and a fight here would affect the lives of the commoners here no matter if he won or lost.

He had been one of the first to arrive here when he felt the fluctuations from the other parts of the city. But before he could go in to investigate, Lu Fang came forward to stop him.

During that time, several people managed to make their way into the array...

Things were hazy, but Zhang Mo could distinctly feel the auras of three Soul Kings in there! He was unsettled. Whatever it was that was happening between the Cao, it was something huge and he was really curious on the specifics of this fight.

Prior to his arrival, he had orders to the other Soul Exalts to quarantined the area and prevent the commoners from getting too

close to this area. There were a few people that fled from within the Cao, but they were just servants or guests. Many of the commoners living nearby the Cao were relocated, meaning that there was practically no one within three kilometers of the Cao except for the parties directly involved.

As he waited with the others outside, Zhang Mo stared incessantly at the illusionary array. He could feel one aura start to fade while another spike of elemental energy led him to worry and feel even more curious.

Just...what kind of fight was taking place in there?

In front of him, Lu Fang was starting to look much more tense now compared to his previously relaxed version. The longer time went by, the more tense he became. “What’s going on...how did so many people die?! We’re getting close to the allotted time, if they take any longer, then they’re going to show up. We can’t escape with them here!”

The thoughts of the two parties had the same desires, but for contrasting reasons. Time slowly trickled by before a huge spike in energy led to everyone looking in surprise.

“Wha—what’s going on?! How did one more Soul King appeared?! What happened inside now?!”

Both parties thought this time in unison. And then a second incident caused them to look surprised, but this time, it was because of the area to the north of the illusionary array!

The two parties turned their heads, Zhang Mo with suspicion and Lu Fang with a rather unsightly amount of concern.

To the north of the illusionary array a dark green of light was speeding towards the city. In one second, it was already several kilometers closer to them. In another moment, two figures stepped out from a warped piece of space!

Teleportation!

One of the new figures wore a gray robe dirty with time and grime. His hair was disheveled as if he had been traveling for a long time. He was rather short in stature and was forty years of age. But the most distinguishing detail to the man was the very long sword tied to his back!

Chapter 598: A Single Slash!

This man's hair was disheveled, and his entire person was quite in need of a bath. There was a long sword on his back that made it very easy to distinguish him. This was the man Bai Yunfei met back on Back Mountain, the assistance chairman to Tianhun Academy with a nickname that physically hurt almost—the 'Invincible Swordsman' Wu Dijian!

He came to a stop relatively close to the illusionary array and spat out two goblets of sandy spit. Shaking his disheveled hair to reveal a sharp pair of eyes, he scanned the area before noticing Zhang Mo and his group.

"Hey. You there, who are you?" He pointed to Zhang Mo.

Zhang Mo and Lu Fang both looked a little perplexed. They knew that this person was a very strong one, but the fact that he was acting like this made him seem a little cheap. Zhang Mo had a suspicious look on his face, but he cupped his hands together in greeting to ask, "This one is the lord-mayor of Baishan City, Zhang Mo. Might this one ask if you are senior Wu of Tianhun Academy?"

As the ruler of a city, he was a man of the Tianhun School. Furthermore, Baishan City wasn't that far away, so the matters and people of Tianhun Academy wasn't unknown to him. Wu Dijian was an especially well known figure, and although he had never seen Wu Dijian before, his title of 'Invincible Swordsman' combined with the especially long sword on his back made him very easy to pick out.

Wu Dijian nodded. "I am he. Are you the city's ruler? Good. Let me ask you then. Does the house of Cao exist here? Where are they?"

He pointed to the giant illusionary array next. "And what is this?"

“The house of Cao?” Zhang Mo repeated, his heart beating slightly. What was the Invincible Swordsman wanting to do with the Cao?! “Senior Wu, the Cao live within the illusionary array here. A battle broke out here roughly minutes ago when I discovered it, and the illusionary array covers the entirety of the house of Cao’s territory. I was on my way to investigate the interior when I was stopped by this man.”

He pointed to Lu Fang.

“What? The Cao is in this place?!” Wu Dijian asked. He wasn’t aware of the finer details of whatever was happening since he only just came here. The only thing he could sense was the influx of energy going on from within the array, but he just never thought that the Cao would be in that array of all place.s

But in that case, then...

“Boom!!” There was another explosion as a surge of elemental energy flew out with such a great amount that it was made noticeable to the people outside the array.

“This is...Bai Yunfei’s aura!” Wu Dijian announced.

Wu Dijian’s face hardened at the familiar aura of Bai Yunfei. His eyes turned frosty as he flew at once towards the illusionary array!

“You—hold on...!”

Lu Fang had been startled as well by the burst of elemental fire, but when Wu Dijian made to enter the array, Lu Fang instinctively came forward to stop him.

A murderous glare from Wu Dijian aimed itself at the man. Unsheathing the sword from his back, he spoke, “You’ve kidnapped a student of my academy, you’ve ambushed an instructor of my academy, and now you hinder his aid...All enemies will...die!!”

The air around everyone changed the moment the sword was taken out. Wu Dijian’s eyes had a gleam in them that made them

seem more like swords than eyes as he stared down Lu Fang, who shivered. A sharp aura like that made his own soul shiver with the possible threat of death!

“No!!”

The blood bled away from Lu Fang’s face as he realized his mistake. Golden light burst out from his body and into the skies. A giant golden ray of light gathered around Lu Fang as he prepared to launch it forward to try and cut down Wu Dijian!

Zhang Mo, who had been quiet up until this point, started. This move of Lu Fang would probably hit Wu Dijian or be blocked by him, but the streets below would be destroyed! As the lord-mayor of Baishan City, there was no way he could permit such damage happen to his city. And so in a burst of orange light, he flew forward to stop this attack.

But in that moment...

“Whoosh!!”

There was a blur of light as a person flew past Lu Fang, the latter immediately freezing up as if to stand still where he was in the air.

One second later.

“Pcht!!”

A spurt of blood and a head popped up into the air!!

“Boom!!”

The golden energy around Lu Fang’s body exploded, smashing his body into pieces!

Wu Dijian appeared at the edge of the explosion as if he was an apparition of some sort. There was a clinking sound, but his right hand was empty, almost making it look like he hadn’t even used his sword to begin with.

A single stroke was all it took!!

Instant kill! This was the truest example of what it meant to kill instantly!!

A mid-stage Soul King like Lu Fang had been killed without even offering a smidgen of resistance!

This was the strength of the assistant chairman. The strength of the ‘Invincible Swordsman’!

Wu Dijian didn’t even look back at his handiwork. It was an act that required very little of him, and he had still other matters to take to. Like lightning, Wu Dijian was already just twenty meters away from the illusionary array.

At that moment, his eyes widened before he launched himself to the left. In the same time he did, a crimson red streak of light shot out from the illusionary array in front of him and was caught by Wu Dijian’s hand!

It was the Fire-tipped Spear!

A moment ago, Bai Yunfei had used the +13 additional effect to launch the Fire-tipped Spear to perforate the lightning-type Soul King. Having done its job, the spear continued onwards through the barrier and into the hands of Wu Dijian.

He stared at the spear in his hands in surprise. “I know this...this is Bai Yunfei’s soul armament!

“Tch, was I too late?!” Wu Dijian hissed, continuing into the array with the spear in hand.

He crossed into the array without much resistance. It wouldn’t do much for someone of his strength, but the moment he entered, Wu Dijian was met with a furious wave of heat. He also heard a howl, and then...a powerful aura had been wiped out!

“The mid-stage Soul King is...dead?!”

Wu Dijian’s eyes widened. He was met with a complete wasteland the moment he entered the illusionary array along with five

strange pitch-black blades of nothing disappear into the world and a disembodied body fall to the ground. Like the other Soul Exalts, he stood there in shock.

Before he could even have a proper grasp on the situation, he felt the space around him darken in light. Looking up, he saw a gigantic mountain of an object come crashing down onto the ground!

Eyes widening, Wu Dijian had a hint of alarm in his eyes, “Wha—what’s all this?!”

Chapter 599: Prevention

The advent of the gigantic object up in the skies scared Wu Dijian greatly, but he was quick to retreat out of range before it could hurt him.

As he was moving, Wu Dijian was suddenly met with a tremendous roar. It was the mastiff using its soul attack. Though it affected all of the Soul Exalts there into motionless, the soul attack wasn't very strong on him. He only narrowed his eyes before cancelling out its effects to escape in a black streak of dark light.

Outside the array, Zhang Mo and his group only watched when Wu Dijian entered. Then when he came back out looking a little startled, they all looked surprised.

And then what they saw next would then be burned into their memories forever....

A giant 'mountain' on fire came extending out from the range of the array before slamming down into the ground!

"Boom!!!!"

Even though they were all up in the air, the entire group could practically feel the earth shake when the object crashed into the ground. The tremors had been as if the entirety of Baishan City had been shaken to its very foundations before the gigantic mountain disappeared from sight. There was a faint streak of red light when it disappeared, and then.

And then.

The area where Cao manor once stood was no more!

For one entire kilometer wide and several hundreds long, there was a crater about a hundred meters deep!!

Echoes of the mountain falling to the ground was heard for a while before the city returned to an unearthly silence with

everyone standing there wide-eyed at the hole that had just opened up....

“Gulp....”

One of the late-stage Soul Exalts behind Zhang Mo couldn't stay silent any longer. “Am....am I dreaming?” He cried out, “Can someone tell me what in the world just happened?”

No one replied to him. Like him, everyone had the same question on their mind as well.

The illusionary matrix in front of them slowly faded away to reveal the area within. Standing above the crater were three soulbeasts and two humans.

When Wu Dijian saw the two, he flew forward immediately.

.....

Wu Dijian felt his heart beat faster when he first saw the ‘mountain’, but it didn’t take long for him to regain his courage. He had heard before that Bai Yunfei had a soul armament capable of growing in size, but today was the very first time he actually saw it in action, or that it could even grow to that size. Once it returned to Bai Yunfei’s side however, Wu Dijian immediately tossed away any suspicions he had to get close to Bai Yunfei.

“Bai Yunfei, are you alright?!”

He half-spoke half-asked.

But when he got fifty meters within Bai Yunfei, the man suddenly glared at him with still crimson-red eyes from his perch on Xiao Qi’s back. Despite the heavy wounds he sustained from his battle with blood spilling from them, Bai Yunfei pointed his right finger at Wu Dijian and spat, “Die!!”

A giant blade made from fire materialized over his right arm before jettisoning towards Wu Dijian, who raised an eyebrow. Waving his left hand, he scattered the blade to pieces, “Bai Yunfei,

what's wrong with you?!"

But Bai Yunfei didn't respond and clutched at the sky with his right hand. Wu Dijian only felt the Fire-tipped Spear in his hand tremble slightly before it shined a brilliant red. Like heated iron, the spear grew red and forced Wu Dijian to drop the spear. It floated where it dropped for a moment before reorienting its point to his throat.

“Again?!”

A strangled cry came from Wu Dijian before his right hand glowed green. Slapping the spear away from him, he sent the spear back towards Bai Yunfei.

At the same time, Xiao Qi, the blue-eyes wyrm, and the permafrost mastiff readied themselves to fight again.

The strangeness of the situation made Wu Dijian frown when he gave each of them a better look. “What kind of person and soulbeasts are they! They’re all nearly dead and yet they’re still willing to fight....”

Before they could attack him, Wu Dijian cried out, “Bai Yunfei!! It’s me, Wu Dijian!! Have you gone crazy?! I’m on your side! The enemies are dead, hurry up and snap out of it!”

He was even attempting to communicate with Bai Yunfei through their soul, but even then, he wasn’t getting any reaction. All he saw was Bai Yunfei rasp heavily under his breath as he got ready to ‘fight’ for his life again.

“Tch!!”

Wu Dijian clicked his tongue. It seemed he’d have to have Bai Yunfei stop by force. Eyeing Xiao Qi and the other two soulbeasts, he spoke. “You three! Stand down! Can’t you see Bai Yunfei’s in great danger right now?! If he goes on, he’ll die! You’re all injured as well, hurry up and treat your wounds, or do you really mean to fight me?!”

He gave Xiao Qi a pensive look, “I’ll knock Bai Yunfei unconscious. Act accordingly and don’t act against!”

Both Xiao Qi and the blue-eyes wyrm recognized Wu Dijian and both relaxed by a bit. The two of them hesitated a bit though at first before calming down. With a faint chirp, it crooned its head to look at Bai Yunfei in concern and worry.

Wu Dijian sighed in relief himself. Flashing over to Bai Yunfei’s side, he dodged the spear and pressed his right hand to Bai Yunfei’s head. A flash of light exuded from Wu Dijian’s eyes before Bai Yunfei went rigid for a moment and slumped over into his arms.

Moving Bai Yunfei to the side, Wu Dijian spoke to Xiao Qi. “Hurry up and heal your wounds. Any later and you won’t have a life to heal.”

The prismatic light around Xiao Qi’s body dimmed a bit to show the blood flowing from its body. It had only been with the mid-heaven tier Wind and Lightning Feathers that Xiao Qi was able to block and endure the attack from the lightning-type Soul King meant for Bai Yunfei. Shooting five Spatial Edges took up the rest of his energy, so it was fortunate that it was able to kill the Soul King after that and filled its body with some extra energy to carry Bai Yunfei into the air after that.

It was as if a boulder had been lifted off their shoulders. With a final nod to Wu Dijian, Xiao Qi wrapped its wings to itself to float in midair. Soaking in a strange energy, it looked like it was trying to use that energy to relight itself....

With only a strange look at Xiao Qi, Wu Dijian looked to the permafrost mastiff next and took Fang Tianmeng from it. The mastiff slowly drifted back down to the ground in a bulb of white light as it began to treat its own wounds.

All things considered, the blue-eyes wyrm was relatively unharmed. It didn’t have any serious wounds and was only battle-weary. Floating to Xiao Qi’s side like a protective guardian, the

blue-eyes wyrm waited for it while every so often glancing in Bai Yunfei's direction.

Fang Tianmeng was floating by Wu Dijian's side in a bubble of green while Wu Dijian looked over Bai Yunfei's wounds for anything major.

At the same time, his eyes flashed suddenly as he looked up to the north.

There was nothing within eyesight of the direction he was looking at.

He stared off into the distance for two seconds before looking away in suspicion....

Chapter 600: The Masterminds Behind the Scenes

As Wu Dijian transmitted his soulforce into Bai Yunfei, Wu Dijian's eyebrows were narrowed together in thought. Zhang Mo didn't say anything when he came over in fear of disturbing him. Instead, he ordered several people to deal with the aftermath of the ruins below while he stood off to the side in case he was needed.

He knew now that the person in Wu Dijian's hands was the very same person that had caused this commotion with the Cao. And now that the Cao was destroyed, it was natural as the lord-mayor of Baishan City that he'd want to inquire Bai Yunfei about what exactly happened.

The night skies in this part of the city only grew quieter while people gathered on the outskirts from all over the city to gossip about.

About a minute later, Bai Yunfei was healed just enough for him to look up at Wu Dijian a little absent-mindedly, "You're finally here..."

Several streaks of light came forth from the north.

Just a dozen seconds later, the streaks of light came to a stop inside of Baishan City not too far away from Wu Dijian.

The light faded away, revealing six figures!

Zhang Mo looked surprised at first, but then when he saw just who it was, he immediately flew up to greet them as respectfully as he could, "The lord-mayor of Baishan City, Zhang Mo, pays his respects to the First and Fourth Princes...."

The two figures on left and right was the fourth prince Wu Yang and the first prince Wu Ren!!

Behind the two was a calmly elder with white hair. Zhang Mo didn't know who this elder was, but his very person commandeered respect. He was there clearly to protect the two princes and was without a doubt extremely strong.

A person from the left side disappeared from the group as Zhang Mo was speaking to appear by Wu Dijian and Bai Yunfei's side, "Yunfei!! What happened to you!?"

This person was Zheng Kai!

Behind him was his older brother, Zheng Cheng and another forty year old middle-aged man, Zheng Shisong, their second uncle.

Aside from Zheng Kai and Wu Yang, everyone here were Soul Kings!

When Bai Yunfei left the Capital to rush over to Baishan City, Zheng Kai immediately ran back to Zheng manor to report on the matter. While it was an ordinary student that disappeared, Bai Yunfei leaving for Baishan City took immediate notice within the manor. They moved without delay and had even Zheng Shisong and Zheng Cheng coming forward to lend a hand.

As for Wu Yang and Wu Ren, Wu Yang tried to leverage his power as a member of the Royal Family to help the search for Fang Tianmeng. He coincidentally came across Wu Ren during this time who took the matter to personal interest after hearing about it. With a Soul King for additional help, the three of them set off for Baishan City.

These two groups met up conveniently with one another right outside the Capital before they all rushed over.

As for Wu Dijian. He was asked by Mo Wanxia when she came to her grandfather for help. As it just so happened, Wu Dijian didn't have anything planned in mind and decided to help out. He was the first to leave and beat Zheng Kai and the others by a sizeable

amount of time.

Zhang Mo took it upon himself to report to the matter to Wu Ren while Zheng Kai and Wu Dijian looked over him. The water-type Soul King, Zheng Shisong, began to treat Bai Yunfei's in a bubble of elemental water after that.

.....

At the same time to the easter side of Baishan City, there stood a large mountain.

This mountain was tall enough to pierce the clouds just enough to have mist gather at the peak. But even from there, Baishan City could be seen there.

Several people were standing on the peak of this mountain!

The mist covered their figures just enough so that no one would be able to tell who they were unless they were within ten meters of them.

Standing at the very front was a young man in white. The mist obscured his facial appearances, but the dignified aura from the man was very noticeable still. He had his hands clasped behind his back as he stared down at the commotions happening in Baishan City with better eyesight than many thought would be possible.

Behind him stood two other men. On the right was an elderly person who had a faint black wisp around his person, making him look extra sinisterly. On the left was a tall person cloaked in a red mantle. He looked extremely menacing and bone-chilling.

The space nearby them twisted inwards before an elder wearing black stepped out from it.

“Young master, Wu Dijian from Tianhun Academy has appeared. With so many experts there, I....” He bowed his head to the young man.

“No matter.” The young man smiled. “You did well in returning.

There's no forcing the issue forward like this.”

He sighed after that and looked off into the distance. “I never imagined that Bai Yunfei would grow to such an extent like this. He wasn’t even a Soul Exalt several years ago, and now....even a Soul King can’t kill him. It’s amazing, really....”

The black-robed one to the right sneered, “Hmph! Didn’t you say the person who might’ve escaped back then? The Nephrite Throne has to be in his hands then, that’d explain his sudden growth spike.”

“Perhaps...” The young man spoke. “But it’d still be a considerably large increase even with the Nephrite Throne in mind.”

“This person is far too dangerous....I had believed that he’d die here today. Even with a trap like this, he was still able to escape. How unexpected.”

“We took the time to think of this plan and had even a Soul King work for us, only for it to fail....”

Though the young man spoke as though it was a pain things happened like this, his facial expressions didn’t denote any of those ‘pained’ emotions. What was surprising was the fact that the Soul King they had to fight Bai Yunfei had been one of their ‘debtors’!

“If we let this Bai Yunfei continue to grow, he’ll only be a threat to us. As a student of the Crafting School, it remains to be seen if he returns their school back to its former glory. It took us plenty of time and effort to deal such a blow to them twenty years ago, we can’t allow them to rise back up just like that....we should try to go after Bai Yunfei again in the future.....”

The young man thought to himself for a moment before turning to the people on his left. “Xue Wei, how are things with Gui Nu?”

The one known as ‘Xue Wei’ thought for a moment before speaking in a cold voice, “Gui Wei told me a month before that Gui

Nu's training in the Bloodsoul Dark Arts is reaching a critical moment. He needs to find 'prey' from all over the place, but it won't be long before he becomes a Soul King. In the case that happens, even mid-stage or late-stage Soul Kings will find him to be a hard opponent."

"Oh? Is that right?" The young man remarked, "Haha, how unexpected. It was only a whim beforehand, but it seems we've got ourselves a decent slave if he can train in the Bloodsoul Dark Arts that quickly. A Soul Ancestor with talent like that is only seen once every several hundred years....

"We can have him do the deed himself next time then. I told him before after all, he can take revenge himself if he has the power...."

The young man gave one last look to Baishan City before speaking to the others, "Let's go then."

Turning around in the sky, the young man and the others quickly disappeared beyond the white mist.

Table of Contents

Upgrade Specialist in Another World

Synopsis

Copyright

Chapter 501: Retreat (Fourth)

Chapter 502: Xing QiuHong's Space Ring (Fifth)

Chapter 503: Battling a Soul King! (Sixth)

Chapter 504: Struggle! (Seventh)

Chapter 505: Cutting a Soul King! (Eighth)

Chapter 506: Improvement in Strength (Ninth)

Chapter 507: Equipment Grade: Low Divine! (Tenth)

Chapter 508: Unraveling the Seal

Chapter 509: Soul Sentinel Scarf, a Regalia With a Soul!

Chapter 510: The Second Lifebound Armament! (End of Book 4)

Book 5 - Turmoil in the Capital

Chapter 511: A Sudden Event Outside the Capital

Chapter 512: A Battle Hidden Behind the Illusionary Barrier!

Chapter 513: Lending a Hand

Chapter 514: Meeting Zheng Kai

Chapter 515: Four Lords of the Capital

Chapter 516: Friends Well Worth Having

Chapter 517: Illusion Stone

Chapter 518: The Person He Needs to See

Chapter 519: Tianhun Academy

Chapter 520: Mo Huangkong

Chapter 521: Classes?!

Chapter 522: Mo Wanxia

Chapter 523: Knockdown Via Brick

Chapter 524: Intervention of an Instructor

Chapter 525: Here Comes Trouble

Chapter 526: The Second Prince, Wu Zhuo

Chapter 527: Preparing for Class

Chapter 528: First Day of Class

Chapter 529: Materials Warehouse

Chapter 530: Challenge From An Academy Instructor

Chapter 531: Only Defending Never Attacking

[Chapter 532: Rebound](#)

[Chapter 533: Assigning Homework Before Class](#)

[Chapter 534: Soft Aurinium Ore](#)

[Chapter 535: Armaments That Change the World](#)

[Chapter 536: Crafting a Heaven-tier Soul Armament](#)

[Chapter 537: Upgrade +1](#)

[Chapter 538: A Change!](#)

[Chapter 539: Critical Glove](#)

[Chapter 540: Heading Outside to Relax](#)

[Chapter 541: Casino Jin](#)

[Chapter 542: Fortune](#)

[Chapter 543: Another 'Challenge'?!](#)

[Chapter 544: Gambling With Heaven-tiers](#)

[Chapter 545: Losing Badly Hurts](#)

[Chapter 546: Uncle Dan Teng](#)

[Chapter 547: Ambush!!](#)

[Chapter 548: A Desperate Situation](#)

[Chapter 549: Damage to the Soul!](#)

[Chapter 550: Retreat!](#)

[Chapter 551: Stop!!](#)

[Chapter 552: Escaped!!](#)

[Chapter 553: Recuperating](#)

[Chapter 554: Ruminations](#)

[Chapter 555: The Lightning-type Ye Ming](#)

[Chapter 556: The Students of the Crafting Class](#)

[Chapter 557: Dig a Hole!](#)

[Chapter 558: Unrivalled Swordsman](#)

[Chapter 559: The Earth-type Instructor, Xiao Nan](#)

[Chapter 560: How Unfortunate....](#)

[Chapter 561: Mysterious Pattern](#)

[Chapter 562: The First Prince, Wu Ren](#)

[Chapter 563: The Good Intentions of the First Prince \(First\)](#)

[Chapter 564: Underground Ring \(Second\)](#)

[Chapter 565: Cowardice \(Third\)](#)

[Chapter 566: The Young Master Visiting From Baishan City \(Fourth\)](#)

[Chapter 567: Losing Emotional Control!! \(Fifth\)](#)

[Chapter 568: Beastlike](#)

[Chapter 569: The Side-effects of Having One's Soul Damaged](#)

[Chapter 570: The Dedication of Ye Ming](#)

[Chapter 571: A Crafting Class of Ten](#)
[Chapter 572: Training Forest](#)
[Chapter 573: Shen Yirou](#)
[Chapter 574: Concern](#)
[Chapter 575: Soothing Heart Teahouse](#)
[Chapter 576: Soul Consolidating Tea](#)
[Chapter 577: A Teacher's Criticisms](#)
[Chapter 578: Events That Led to Fighting](#)
[Chapter 579: Apologize](#)
[Chapter 580: An Especially Special Way of Teaching \(First\)](#)
[Chapter 581: The Disappearance of Fang Tianmeng! \(Second\)](#)
[Chapter 582: Intimidating the House of Xue \(Third\)](#)
[Chapter 583: The Whereabouts of Fang Tianmeng \(Fourth\)](#)
[Chapter 584: Rushing to Baishan City \(Fourth\)](#)
[Chapter 585: Trapped!!](#)
[Chapter 586: A Soul King Appears!](#)
[Chapter 587: And a Second \(First\)](#)
[Chapter 588: How Despicable!! \(Second\)](#)
[Chapter 589: A Soul Attack?! \(Third\)](#)
[Chapter 590: Berserk Mode and a Slaughter!! \(Fourth\)](#)
[Chapter 591: The Escalation of Strength, and Transformation?! \(Fifth\)](#)
[Chapter 592: False Soul King Realm!](#)
[Chapter 593: Battling a Soul King](#)
[Chapter 594: The Strongest Dual Dragon Burst](#)
[Chapter 595: Thrown!!](#)
[Chapter 596: The End](#)
[Chapter 597: Outside the Illusionary Array](#)
[Chapter 598: A Single Slash!](#)
[Chapter 599: Prevention](#)
[Chapter 600: The Masterminds Behind the Scenes](#)